
Taaltoeren

language guide language



toerisme
vlaanderen

Engels voor gidsen en reisleiders



Taaltoeren

language. g^{uide} language

Achiel Boeykens
Jan Van Steen



toerisme
vlaanderen

Engels voor gidsen en reisleiders



Colofon

Verantwoordelijk uitgever:

Toerisme Vlaanderen

Projectcoördinatie:

Katrien Van Ginderachter, Toerisme Vlaanderen

Inhoudelijke coördinatie:

Paul Marchal

Auteurs:

Duits

Dr. Lodewijk De Wilde

Paul Marchal

Engels

Achiel Boeykens

Jan Van Steen

Frans

Christine Demeunynck

Etienne Hauttekeete

Paul Marchal

Spaans

Pablo Castaño Sequeros

Patricia Muñoz Tavira

Italiaans

Mia Ratinckx

Eva Wiertz

Tiziana Palermi (hoofdstuk 11)

Giovanni Bevilacqua (taaladvies)

Adviseurs :

Karin Van Hecke

Jeannine Ruymaekers, KMSKA

Joke Dieryckx

Nicole Raes

Vormgeving:

Magelaan cvba – www.magelaan.be

Eerste uitgave 2008

Tweede herziene uitgave 2009

Deze syllabus werd ontwikkeld in opdracht van Toerisme Vlaanderen en wordt gebruikt als didactisch materiaal in het kader van de taalopleiding voor gidsen en reisleiders.

De syllabus kan gratis worden gedownload voor eigen gebruik door erkende gidsen en reisleiders via onze website www.toerismevlaanderen.be/taaltoeren.

Verantwoordelijke uitgever

Jos Vercruyse, waarnemend administrateur-generaal, Toerisme Vlaanderen, Grasmarkt 61, 1000 Brussel

© 2009 Toerisme Vlaanderen

Voor het gebruik van deze syllabus is voorafgaande toestemming van de verantwoordelijke uitgever noodzakelijk.



Denk aan het milieu vooraleer u deze syllabus afdrukt!

Voorwoord

Beste taalliefhebber

Sinds 2005 bieden verschillende centra in Vlaanderen de opleiding tot gids en reisleader aan. Het is een opleiding in het Nederlands die focust op de voor een gids en reisleader noodzakelijke kennis en vaardigheden. De klemtoon ligt hierbij onder andere op interculturele communicatie. Een dialoog tussen culturen is pas echt mogelijk als je de taal van de ander beheerst. Toerisme Vlaanderen en het Departement Onderwijs en Vorming werkten daarom in 2006 een opleidingsprofiel taal voor gidsen en reisleaders uit. In januari 2007 startte Toerisme Vlaanderen met de ontwikkeling van taalsyllabi geënt op dit profiel. Daartoe werden taalgroepen voor Frans, Engels, Duits, Spaans en Italiaans opgericht. Deze groepen werden aangestuurd door Paul Marchal, vertaler - tolk, leerkracht en gids. Hij coördineerde het ambitieuze plan om dertien hoofdstukken te schrijven over al wat Vlaanderen rijk is. Voor elk 'Vlaams' thema werd aansluiting gezocht bij een buitenlands voorbeeld. De syllabi, die op deze manier werden ontwikkeld, zijn in eerste instantie bedoeld voor docenten en cursisten van deze taalopleiding. Door Toerisme Vlaanderen erkende gidsen en reisleaders kunnen ook op zelfstandige basis met dit materiaal aan de slag.

Toerisme Vlaanderen is fier u deze taalsyllabi te mogen voorstellen. Speciale dank gaat uit naar de coördinator en de taaldocenten voor het schitterende werk dat ze hebben geleverd, een groot deel daarvan in hun vrije tijd.

Taalonderwijs en toerisme blijven constant in evolutie. Het zal erop aankomen deze syllabi permanent af te stemmen op de toeristische realiteit en in de opleidingen gebruik te maken van actuele en aangepaste didactische werkvormen.

Veel aangename en leerrijke taaltoeren!

Jos Vercauteren
Waarnemend administrateur-generaal
Toerisme Vlaanderen

Contents

1. English is tough stuff	7
1. A piece of cake?	7
2. Beware of false friends!	10
3. Divided by a common language (AmE – BrE)	19
4. Dangerous lookalikes	23
2. Belgium and Flanders	27
1. Portrait of Belgium and Flanders	27
2. Belgians in the world: two sides of a coin...	32
3. History of Flanders and Belgium	37
1. Introduction: History of Belgium	37
2. I Fiamminghi	38
3. Roman and Frankish Period (57 BC – AD 843)	41
4. The Middle Ages.	50
5. The Burgundian Netherlands	61
6. The Spanish period: 16th and 17th centuries	64
7. The Austrian Habsburgs (1713 – 1794)	71
8. Belgium annexed to France (1794 – 1814)	73
9. The United Kingdom of the Netherlands (1815 – 1830)	75
10. The Kingdom of Belgium (1830 -)	76
11. A short history...	82
12. Belgian history: sites	85
Extra: Belgium, battlefield of Europe	86
4. Flanders fits you	97
1. Portrait of a dynamic region in the Belgian federal state	97
2. Separatists and unionists	101
3. Liège (Luik, Lüttich) is a city on the river Meuse (Maas)	104
5. Towns and cities	107
1. For starters	107
2. Townscapes	111
3. The origin of towns	115
4. The origin of Ghent	121
6. Civil architecture	129
1. From Romanesque to Art Nouveau	129
2. Belfries, chimes of freedom	130
3. Guildhouses or guildhalls	133
4. Town halls	137
5. Cloth halls	139
7. The Tower of London	
8. The House of Rubens	149
9. Museums	153
10. Art Nouveau: organic buildings	155
7. Religious architecture	159
1. From Merovingian to Romanesque	159
2. “In my Father’s House are many rooms.”	171
3. Western monasticism	175
4. Beguinages and almshouses	183
5. Gothic master builders	189
6. Stained-glass windows	191
7. Miscellaneous aspects of religion	193
8. Sacred to three religions: the Dome of the Rock	195

8. Highlights of Flemish art throughout the ages	197
1. Masters at their arts	197
2. The Flemish Primitives	200
3. Manuscript illumination	203
4. Altars , altarpieces and retables	211
5. Altarpiece of the last Supper (Dieric Bouts 1464-1467/68)	212
6. Relics, reliquaries and shrines	214
7. Sculpture	218
8. Luxury arts: tapestries	226
9. Renaissance painting in the Netherlands	228
10. Pieter Paul Rubens (1577 – 1640)	230
11. Nineteenth and twentieth century painting	234
9. Iconography	241
1. The Mérode Altarpiece ...	241
2. It crossed my mind ...	243
3. Apostles	245
4. Saint Symbology	247
5. Symbols	254
6. Symbols, attributes, emblems ...	259
10. Cultural spectrum	261
1. Flemish culture in general	261
11. Geography and nature	269
1. Geographical description of Belgium and Flanders	269
2. Flanders mud	271
3. Nature and natural history	273
4. National Botanic Garden	275
5. The Royal Greenhouses of Laeken, a City of Glass	276
6. The Castle of Belœil	278
7. Ignace Schops wins prestigious Goldman Prize 2008	280
8. Common trees	283
9. “Water, water, everywhere” (S.T. Coleridge)	286
10. Big in Belgium	291
11. Off the beaten path ... cycling	293
12. Belgian economy	295
1. Belgian economy	295
2. Flanders’ economy, science and technology	298
3. Antwerp, European Main Port	301
4. Demography	303
5. Social Security in Belgium	305
13. Guiding and tourleading on a daily basis	307
1. How to be a tour guide	307
2. Complaints and resolutions in the hotel industry	309
3. Special forms of tourism	311
4. The job of a tourleader in the course of a trip	314
Appendix	321
1. Vocabulary of civil architecture	321
2. Vocabulary of religious architecture	332
3. A Short History of Western monasticism	342
4. Glossary	346
Bibliography	351

Inleiding

Deze taalsyllabi werden in eerste instantie ontwikkeld voor docenten en cursisten die de taalopleidingen geven en volgen.

Wie zich inschrijft voor deze opleiding, hoeft geen gids of reisleader te zijn. Wel gaan we ervan uit dat de cursist minstens het niveau richtgraad twee bereikt heeft. Dit houdt in dat hij zich vlot kan behelpen in concrete situaties waarbij de verstaanbaarheid primeert. De opleiding voorziet een verdieping in het vakjargon van gidsen en reisleaders op richtgraad 3. De focus ligt hierbij op correct en genuanceerd taalgebruik. Een niveautest bij inschrijving is dus noodzakelijk.

Er werden syllabi ontwikkeld voor Frans, Duits, Engels, Spaans en Italiaans. De inhoud ervan werd zoveel mogelijk afgestemd op het curriculum van de basisopleiding voor gidsen en reisleaders. Geschiedenis, kunst en cultuur, natuur en landschap komen allemaal aan bod. Het resultaat is 13 hoofdstukken die voor elke taal dezelfde zijn. De uitwerking van de hoofdstukken is echter per taal anders. Dit heeft vooral te maken met het beschikbare materiaal. Bijvoorbeeld: een tekst over de verbanden tussen de Vlaamse en Spaanse geschiedenis is niet in elke taalversie voorhanden. Het team dat de syllabi ontwikkelde, gaf er de voorkeur aan authentieke teksten te selecteren in plaats van gebruik te maken van vertalingen. Het uitgangspunt voor de keuze van de thema's per hoofdstuk is de Nederlandstalige gids die in Vlaanderen een groep anderstaligen begeleidt. In elk hoofdstuk wordt echter ook de link gelegd met reisleiding. Voor Italiaans bijvoorbeeld wordt bij de bespreking van de Vlaamse kunststeden naar overeenkomsten gezocht met de Italiaanse kunststeden. Gidsen in een vreemde taal veronderstelt ook dat de cursist zich inleeft in de cultuur van de andere. Daarom gaan we in de gekozen topics ook op zoek naar raakvlakken tussen de eigen cultuur en die van de taalgroep.

Deze syllabi bevatten de meest essentiële woordenschat voor een gids en reisleader. Dit neemt niet weg dat elke docent eigen accenten legt naargelang van de doelgroep. Wellicht zal het thema kunst en cultuur nog meer gewicht krijgen tijdens de opleiding als de cursisten grotendeels actief zijn als gidsen van onze kunststeden.

De oefeningen in de syllabi zijn gericht op de vier vaardigheden: spreken, luisteren, lezen en schrijven. Het ligt echter voor de hand dat de klemtoon voornamelijk moet liggen op spreek- en luistervaardigheden. Uit de evaluatie van de pilootprojecten Duits en Engels die tijdens het schooljaar 2007-2008 liepen, blijkt eveneens dat de cursisten, meestal gidsen, vooral nood hebben aan mondelinge taalvaardigheid.

De taalopleidingen en de hiervoor ontwikkelde syllabi zijn voor Toerisme Vlaanderen een instrument om de taalvaardigheid van gidsen en reisleaders te stimuleren en te professionaliseren. Erkende gidsen en reisleaders kunnen ook op individuele basis met de syllabi aan de slag. Dit initiatief smaakt echter naar meer. De elektronische vertaling van dit materiaal behoort tot de mogelijkheden. Ook uitdieping van bepaalde thema's voor specifieke doelgroepen is een optie. Denken we maar aan natuurgidsen die een vakjargon hanteren dat nog onvoldoende werd uitgewerkt. Mogelijkheden te over. Een evaluatie van het gebruik van de syllabi zal uitwijzen welke ontwikkelingen in de toekomst wenselijk en haalbaar zijn. Dit traject willen we echter verder zetten samen met u. We kijken dan ook uit naar uw feedback en staan open voor elke suggestie.

Katrien Van Ginderachter
Diensthoofd Toeristische Vorming

File 1

English is tough stuff

1. A piece of cake?

1.1. Why is English the lingua franca?

Multi-national personnel at North Atlantic Treaty Organization headquarters near Paris found English to be an easy language ... until they tried to pronounce it. To help them discard an array of accents, the verses below were devised. After trying them, a Frenchman said he'd prefer six months at hard labor to reading six lines aloud. Try them yourself.

*Dearest creature in creation,
Study English pronunciation.
I will teach you in my verse
Sounds like corpse, corps, horse, and worse.
I will keep you, Suzy, busy,
Make your head with heat grow dizzy.
Tear in eye, your dress will tear.
So shall I! Oh hear my prayer.*

*Just compare heart, beard, and heard,
Dies and diet, lord and word,
Sword and sward, retain and Britain.
(Mind the latter, how it's written.)
Now I surely will not plague you
With such words as plaque and ague.
But be careful how you speak:
Say break and steak, but bleak and streak;
Cloven, oven, how and low,
Script, receipt, show, poem, and toe.*

*Hear me say, devoid of trickery,
Daughter, laughter, and Terpsichore,
Typhoid, measles, topsails, aisles,
Exiles, similes, and reviles;
Scholar, vicar, and cigar,
Solar, mica, war and far;
One, anemone, Balmoral,
Kitchen, lichen, laundry, laurel;
Gertrude, German, wind and mind,
Scene, Melpomene, mankind.*



1.2. Each student selects and prepares one stanza for oral presentation.
(<http://www.unique.cc/ron/estuff.htm>)

1.3. Ode to the spelling checker

*Eye have a spelling checker
It came with my pea sea.
It plainly marques four my revue
Miss steaks eye kin not sea.*

*Eye strike a quay and type a word
And weight for it two say
Weather eye am wrong our write;
It shows me strait a weigh.*

*As soon as a mist ache is maid
It nose bee fore two long
And eye can put the error rite;
Its rare lea ever wrong.*

*Eye have run this poem threw it.
I am shore your pleased two no
Its letter perfect awl the weigh;
My checker tolled me saw.*



1.4. Right the correct spelling in the *write*- hand column.

1.5. Structural words.

Your, you're (you are) and **yours**

- friends tell me the most charming person they know.
- At the end of letter just write " truly".
- When sixteen you think you don't need parents any longer.

It's (it is) and **its**

- no use crying over spilt milk.
- In Belgium every village used to have own brewery.
- The Plantyn Museum and lovely garden are on the World Heritage list.

There, they're (they are) and **their**

- Are you sure friends told you they know what doing?
- Once you're you will appreciate hospitality.
- Is anybody going to listen to story?

There's (there is) and **theirs**

- a brand new shopping-mall in town.
- They won't get far with that old car of

To and **too**

- You're not old to go the disco.
- I spoke your brother but I'd like to have a word with you
- You talk much.

Whose and **who's** (who is)

- to blame for the company's bad results?
- A widower is a man wife has died.
- that girl hair is died orange?

Then and **than**

- Flanders is more densely populated Wallonia.
- He arrived at the airport and realized he had forgotten his passport.
- Beer is more refreshing wine. With this heat, why don't we have one ?

Of and **off**

- After a delay of two hours the plane finally took
- Belgians are economically much better than five years ago.
- We disapprove any form violence.

2. Beware of false friends!

2.1. Some examples of false friends and confusing word pairs or expressions

False friends are pairs of words in two languages or dialects that look and/or sound similar but differ in meaning. So, we can say that the English word **actual** is a false friend (for speakers of Dutch). It doesn't usually mean "actueel", it means *real, realistic, relevant*. Hence, **actually** means *really*.

E.g. Actually, it was quite cheap.

It was quite cheap, really.

Here are some more examples:

- He thought that the repairs to his car would cost 1000 euros, but the **actual** cost was a lot less. (= the *real* cost)
- The **actual** figures. (= the *real, realistic* figures)
- The **actual** HP of a motor. (= "effectieve paardekracht")

The Dutch word "actueel" is translated by words like *alive, topical, current*, etc

- Macbeth is still very much *alive*.
- A *topical* subject. (= "een actueel onderwerp")
- *Current Affairs*.

Now, have a look at a typical example of **confusing word pairs** or **expressions**:

We use **according to** when we want to say that our information comes from sbd or sth else.

E.g. According to Billy, the hurricane will hit the coast some time this evening.

According to the time table the plane arrived 20 minutes ago.

In my opinion is used when you give your own opinion (or as a synonym of according to)

Here's a test : Correct or not ?

According to me , it's another car that caused the accident.

In my opinion, it's ...

According to John, Labour is going to win the elections.

In John's opinion, Labour ...

According to my view, Labour ...

According to my opinion, Labour ...

2.2. Fill in the correct word

1. agenda – calendar – diary

- a. Anne Frank wrote her when she and her family were hiding from the Nazis in Amsterdam during World War II.
- b. The Gregorian has been used in the West since 1582 , when Pope Gregory XIII introduced it.
- c. What's on the for tomorrow's meeting ?

2. among (amongst) – between

- a. To preserve their power the Counts of Flanders sometimes had to choose the devil and the deep blue sea.
- b. The Romans built roads their camps and trading posts.
- c. In the feudal system the king divided land his faithful knights.

3. anniversary – birthday – memorial service

- a. Don't forget to congratulate Darlene on her 30th
We'll bake her a cake.
- b. Today we celebrate the centennial of the Revolution.
- c. On 11 November there will be a to commemorate the end of the Great War.

4. appliance – apparatus – device

- a. A is a general word for any man-made object used for doing work, and is often used when there is no particular word or when you don't know that word. E.g. This is a(n) for torturing people.
- b. Nowadays lots of electric(al) are used in the kitchen.
- c. Deep sea divers have special breathing (= a set of equipment, machines, tools, etc).

5. bank – bench

- a. When judge Dunville retired from the in 2003, he spent his afternoons on a in the park, reading his newspaper.
- b. Maybe it's best to keep your savings on a account.
- c. The of the Scheldt are ideal for cycling aficionados.

6. base – basis

- a. Under the rule of the Counts of Flanders, Ghent became an important power.....
- b. Many languages have Latin as their
- c. The hallmark is printed on the of the cup.
- d. There's no scientific for this theory of yours. (= not literal)

7. bath – bathe

- a. If you in England you swim in the sea or in a river, for pleasure. In the USA you have a when you

8. bend – angle – corner

- a. A right is an of 90 degrees.
- b. The bookshop you're looking for is just around the
- c. Traffic sign : dangerous ahead.
- d. Holland is so low that you could get the s flying out of it in a plane. ("caissonziekte")

9. beside – besides (= in addition (to)) – except

- a. being the Count of Flanders, Baldwin V was also made regent for the French king.
- b. If you want a clear view, come and sit the (bus) driver.

c. I don't know a lot about this monument, that it may have been built to honour the Roman goddess Minerva.

10. born – borne

a. The American Memorial at Bastogne commemorates the American 101st Air division, commanded by General 'Nuts' MacAuliffe.

b. Two Carolingian Mayors of the Palace were in Heristal. Two others were in Jupille-sur-Meuse.

11. borrow – lend – hire – rent – let

a. Some Crusaders who were taken prisoner had to money to pay for their ransom.
(you money from sbd)

b. Peter his brother a few thousand euros last year. (you money to sbd)

c. In BrE you things for just a short time and the owner them out.
In BrE you things for a longer period and the owner them (out).

In AmE you all of these things and the owner them out.

In AmE you (= employ) people, but in BrE you can only people for a particular purpose, not for a long period.

(Longman Dictionary of English Language and Culture)

12. brand – label – make – (hallmark)

Brand and *make* can have a similar meaning (the product of a particular company or maker), but *brand* is usually for small or inexpensive things.

a. Leonidas is still the leader in Belgian chocolates.

b. What of toothpaste do you use?

c. What of computer did you buy?

d. Skinheads often buy the Lonsdale

e. In this shop you can buyed silver.

f. Fascination with detail (= painstaking attention to detail) is one of the of Flemish Primitive painting.

13. brave – good – well

a. Be a boy and lend me a hand?!

b. I don't feel I think I'm going to be sick. (= an adverb)

c. John the Fearless was given this surname for being so (courageous, stout-hearted)

14. character (has more than one meaning)

- a. Richard Coeur de Lion and John Lackland were brothers but had very different
- b. If you know your Robin Hood, you know that he was probably only a from a book or story.
- c. The Rosetta Stone has three different writing systems : Greek letters, Egyptian (letters) and ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics.

15. channel – canal

- a. In Bruges, the cobbled streets and overgrown still retain their medieval appearance.
- b. Under the English (called “La Manche” by the French) lies the Chunnel.

16. corn – maize

- a. In BrE can be any of various grain plants and its produce/harvest, such as barley, oats and especially wheat.
- b. In AmE and AustrE is a synonym for or Indian (AmE).

17. chips – crisps – French fries

- a. English people usually call them, but in a restaurant you may hear the word, which is also the AmE word.
- b., on the other hand, are thin slices of potato cooked in very hot fat, dried and sold in packets.

18. concrete

The word *concrete* usually means “beton”. Sometimes it means “concreet”. Check out the word stress!

- a. John wants to make us a proposal.
- b. Reinforced is extremely strong.

19. council(lor) – counsel(lor)

- a. The of a community hold their meetings in the chamber or hall.
- b. Emperor Charles V took from the assembled nobles.
- c. The judge asked the for the defence to come forward and explain.
- d. Have you thought about seeing a marriage

20. customer – client – patient – guest

- a. Doctors have
- b. Shopkeepers have
- c. Banks, lawyers, notaries, etc, have (they pay for professional advice).
- d. Hotels have
- e. Could I borrow your pen? – Be my

2.3. Another bunch ...

21. dramatic - tragic

- a. Mary of Burgundy died after a accident.
- b. After a rescue at sea , most of the passengers were saved.

22. desert – dessert

- a. It's nice to have an ice-cream for in the
- b. Having something for pudding means you eat it for

23. earth – soil – ground – land

- a. Before the Battle of the Golden Spurs the Flemings ate a handful of
- b. No trespassing, you're on private !
- c. Magellan was the first to travel around
- d. The soldiers assembled on the parade

24. edible - eatable

- a. After a year in Holland, all he longed for was an meal.
- b. Our ancestors' diet consisted of roots and mushrooms.

25. economical - economic

- a. The situation of the country looks bleak.
- b. The Dutch are said to be

26. fabricate - manufacture

- a. The philosophy and technology of was revolutionized in the 1980s.
- b. It turned out their alibi was entirely

27. fabric - factory

- a. The origin of the lies in 17th–18th century Europe.
- b. Their delicate made Flemish tapestries so expensive.

28. floor - bottom – ground

- a. The treasure was hidden on the of a well.
- b. The entire complained about the noise.
- c. Before you sow your lawn, you have to level the

29. storey - story

- a. At the end of the all children were fast asleep.
- b. On «Sweater Day» (dikke truiendag), two Flemish ministers climbed the stairs to the 12th to their office in the Ferraris building.

30. good – well

- a. After a day out in the open, they slept
- b. For some people looks mean everything.

31. habit - custom

- a. Wedding vary in every culture.
- b. Poking your nose is a bad

32. hall – lobby

- a. We agreed to meet in the hotel
- b. On the market place, we admire the 15th century city.....

33. harbour – port – haven

- a. The refugees found a safe in a church.
- b. Antwerp is the major Belgian
- c. The word originally means protection.

34. illegal – illegitimate

- a. Some of Emperor Charles’ children were born out of wedlock; they were
- b. The police is not supposed to condone operations.

35. implement - apply

- a. His 17-year- old- son will for college next year.
- b. After a law is voted it takes some time before it is actually

36. institute – institution

- a. MIT stands for Massachusetts of technology.
- b. Persons who are destitute, disabled, or mentally ill are taken care of in an

37. isolate – insulate

- a. Better is the best way to cut down oil consumption.
- b. The explorer Livingstone lived from the civilized world till he met Stanley.

38. lane – avenue

- a. The most beautiful are lined with trees.
- b. If you want to turn left after the next traffic-lights, get in lane now.

39. petrol – petroleum - gas – natural gas – crude oil

- a. Unrefined oil is also called
- b. The price of Brent is a benchmark for the oil industry.
- c. The British go to a station to fill up their car.
- d. In many oil fields most of the is still burnt.
- e. Americans still prefer instead of diesel.

40. physician – surgeon – doctor - GP

- a. The transplanted the new liver.
- b. A working in public health focuses on diagnosing and improving the health of communities.
- c. In Britain a gets a monthly wage from the Health Service
- d. A person who has earned the highest academic degree may call himself

2.4. And now to the finish

41. remember – remind – recall

- a. That song them of the good times they had together.
- b. Please me to your parents. (Doe ze de groeten).
- c. The student couldn't the exact date of the Battle of the Golden Spurs.
- d. The wedding of Charles the Bold and Margaret of York is in a pageant that takes place every five years in Bruges.

42. retire – withdraw (OAP).

- a. People who have are called OAPs (Old Age Pensioners) in Britain.
- b. This credit card allows you to 500 euros a day from cash dispensers.

43. ride – drive

- a. Oh, how much fun it is to in a one-horsed open sleigh.
- b. Where did you learn to?
- c. The old lady enjoyed taking a in a taxi, now and then.

44. rare

- a. Sparrows have become in the Flemish countryside.
- b. How would you like your steak?, please, certainly not medium or well-done.
(The Dutch word “raar” can be translated by *odd, queer, strange*, etc.)

45. salad – lettuce

- a. For lunch they chose a ham and tomato
- b. For a mixed you would need, cucumbers, tomatoes, peppers etc.

46. sensible – sensitive

- a. Ladies, when walking in those Flemish cobbled streets, be, don't wear high-heeled shoes.
- b. This is a suntan oil for a highly skin.

47. strange – foreign – stranger – foreigner – asylum seeker (refugee) – fugitive

- a. Mr. De Gucht is the present federal minister of Affairs
- b. In Brussels are housed in het Klein Kasteeltje.
- c. The was caught by the police only one day after he had escaped from prison
- d. To some of our local customs must seem

48. slim

- a. It's terrible to see how some young girls starve themselves nearly to death to remain

The Dutch word “slim” can be translated by *clever, smart, intelligent, cunning*, etc.

49. stream – river – brook – ditch – current

- a. The Scheldt, the Lys and the Yser are the three main in Flanders.
- b. The Lys was called “the Golden,” because its water was ideal for rooting flax.
- c. In the Polders (reclaimed land) the allotments are separated (and drained) by
- d. At Groeninghe there was merely a between the two armies.
- e. The swimmers had to give up: the in the English Channel was too strong.

50. terrible – terrific

- a. A fire destroyed major parts of a Brussels department store in the sixties.
- b. When George IV learnt Wellington had won the Battle of Waterloo, he may very well have said: “”.

51. vest – coat – jacket

- a. A is part of underwear, you generally put it on when it is cold.

- b. Some restaurants/nightclubs request gentlemen to wear a tie and a
- c. They can leave their in the cloakroom.

52. warehouse – department store – supermarket – mall

- a. In many parts the 19th century have been converted to trendy blocks of flats and offices.
- b. The oldest of Flanders (GB) was founded in Antwerp.
- c. Many families see going to a as a great day out: shops, restaurants and entertainment for the kids.
- d. such as Delhaize nowadays sell stamps.

53. wonder – wander

- a. The boys' coats got lost because they had off the main track in the woods.
- b. She what all the fuss is about.

54. vacancies /vacation(s) / holidays

- a. Look! We could have a chance to spend the night here. The sign of this B&B says: “”.
- b. As a child I spent all my summer on the Belgian coast.
- c. In the US factories, offices, schools etc. close down for the annual

3. Divided by a common language (AmE – BrE)



3.1. You ain't heard nothing yet

Is the Atlantic the only thing that divides the UK and US? As President Bush visits Tony Blair he may discover subtle but important differences between our two nations' diplomatic language.



Language doesn't appear to be President Bush's strongest suit. His struggle to find the right words of regret during the China spy plane crisis are credited with prolonging the stand-off.

The Texan's boasts of his bilingual abilities were bruised on his last European visit, when his grasp of Español failed to prevent him mispronouncing the name of the Spanish premier Jose Maria Aznar. But in a land which

shares his mother tongue, surely the President should find a firmer linguistic *footing*?

George Bernard Shaw's observation that the US and the UK are "two nations divided by a common language" is perhaps more accurate than many Britons might suspect.

All Grecian to me



"That's a great scheme, Tony"

Broaching such delicate subjects as the Kyoto treaty, the "son of star wars", or the "European army" could leave Mr Bush with the nagging doubt the British are replying to him in Grecian.

The gulf between American and British English is more pronounced than a mere difference of pronunciations, says Professor Larry Selinker, an American linguistics expert at London's Birkbeck College.

"We don't have the same language. We use the same words, but they are often used in different ways. You say one thing, but we mean another."

Take the word "scheme", for example. On both sides of the Atlantic, "to scheme" suggests *nefarious* plotting. However, Britons would have no moral objections to going along with "a scheme", while law-abiding Americans would still be horrified by the word's shady connotations.

Despite this, when President Bush and Prime Minister Tony Blair sit down they are unlikely to seek the aid of interpreters to unpick the nuances of each other's

words. This may put the American at a disadvantage.

The reach of US popular culture has given the average Briton a handle on the accents and *vagaries* of American English. Professor Selinker points out that when Hollywood "talkies" first hit the UK, cinema goers had no idea what the actors were saying.



"Cats and dogs? Where?"

You ain't heard nothing yet

Anne Robinson's Weakest Link efforts notwithstanding, the flow of British culture to the US has been modest in comparison. "Blair will have to modify his language to be understood," says Professor Selinker.

Peter Jay, former British ambassador to the US, says such linguistic differences shouldn't be overstated.

"There occasionally may be misunderstandings, but that is also true of any two human beings."

But for a foreigner to *fathom the subtleties* of British English can take a lifetime. And it is not just slang and *colloquialisms* which differ between English-speaking nations, formal language also has its pitfalls.

Professor Selinker says he was initially at a loss to understand why the

agendas for meetings began with apologies: "What did I have to apologise for?"

To "table" a motion in a British boardroom will see it discussed. In America, "tabling" something will see it *put firmly on the back burner*.

While "slating" someone in America refers to them being favourably nominated for office, to receive a "slating" in the UK is to be on the business end of a severe *scolding*.

Arguably, if you think the differences between Washington and Whitehall are merely cosmetic, then (to quote President Bush) you're "underestimating".

<http://news.bbc.co.uk/>

3.2. Vocabulary

footing: secure placement of the feet in standing or moving.

to broach: to bring up (a subject) for discussion or debate.

nefarious: infamous (berucht) by way of being extremely wicked.

vagaries: extravagant or erratic notion or action.

fathom the subtleties: penetrate to the meaning or nature of; comprehend

colloquialisms: informal expressions

put on the back burner: in a position of low priority

business end: part of a weapon or tool, usually at the front, that inflicts damage or performs work.

scolding: a harsh or sharp reprimand.

3.3 Comprehension

Why are the Americans at a disadvantage when it comes to understanding the nuances of British English?

3.4 A night on the town ...

Jack (American) and John (Brit) work for the same company. While Jack is visiting the London headquarters, John takes his colleague out at night. This is John's account of what happened...

"First we went to the city centre and visited some pubs. We had a few pints, but then Jack wanted some heavier stuff. We started drinking whisky. Jack obviously wasn't used to drinking spirits because all of a sudden he disappeared. After a while the publican warned me there was something wrong with Jack. He had been sick in the toilet and complained of a headache. He desperately needed some pills, so I took him to a chemist's.

After a while he claimed he was alright, and hungry as a wolf. Unfortunately the chips shops were closed, so I bought him some biscuits and crisps. He looked a little better now, but I insisted on taking him to his hotel. Although his room was on the ground floor, Jack dragged me into the lift for a nightcap in his room. Eventually, I managed to get him into his room, out of his jacket and trousers and into his bed. Thinking I had planned a quiet night in the cinema"

Give Jack's account of what happened. In the box you find some useful vocabulary.

Drugstore bathroom downtown elevator scotch movies first floor bar coat pants drink
cookies and chips

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3.5 Transport and travel(l)ing

Match the corresponding American words with their British equivalent.

BRITISH	AMERICAN
1. suitcase	a. overpass
2. roundabout	b. fender
3. motorway	c. subway
4. crossroads	d. trailer
5. puncture	e. intersection
6. mudguard	f. trucker
7. petrol	g. motor
8. give way	h. yield
9. bonnet	i. traffic circle
10. boot	j. windshield
11. engine	k. vacation
12. flyover	l. hood
13. car park	m. blow out
14. railway	n. gas
15. pavement	o. bags
16. underground	p. trunk
17. caravan	q. parking lot
18. lorry driver	r. railroad
19. windscreen	s. sidewalk
20. holiday	t. highway, freeway

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20

3.6. Pronunciation

Next to accent Americans stress some words differently. Examples:

American	British	American	British
<u>l</u> aboratory	labor <u>a</u> tory	ad <u>a</u> vertisement [ai]	ad <u>v</u> ertisement [i]
<u>a</u> ddress	ad <u>a</u> dress	secret <u>a</u> ry	secret <u>a</u> ry

Make a list of the most common words. Use the following useful links.

<http://www.peak.org/~jeremy/dictionary/chapters/title.php>

<http://www.scit.wlv.ac.uk/~jphb/american.html>

<http://esl.about.com/library/vocabulary/blbritam.htm> (INTERACTIEF)

<http://esl.about.com/gi/dynamic/offsite.htm?site=http://www.peak.org/%7Ejeremy/dictionary/dict.html>
(dictionary)

<http://eleaston.com/world-eng.html> (English around the world)

<http://www.uta.fi/FAST/US1/REF/usgbdiff.html>

<http://www.ncia.com/~slarsson/USUK.html>

<http://english2american.com/dictionary/a.html>

<http://www.manythings.org/listen/americanbritish.html> (audio & text!!!!)

4. Dangerous lookalikes

4.1. Study the list of frequently used lexical words

2. LEXICAL WORDS

Accept and except

- They don't accept credit cards.
- Everybody was present except you.

Advice and advise

- They don't listen to my advice.
- He advised me to be on time.

At least and at last

- You need to be at least eighteen to be entitled to vote.
- After two hours , at last she arrived.

Belief and believe

- She had no great belief in her teacher.
- Please, believe me.

Big, large, great and tall

- Mummy, I'm so hungry. Can I have a big meal. (informal, conversational)
- Sir Henry was feeling decidedly sleepy after a large meal.
- Napoleon wasn't a tall man, but he was a great man and a great strategist.
- How tall is your brother. The cathedral has the tallest tower in the country.

Breath and breathe

- How long can you hold your breath?
- Advice of a centenarian: simply keep breathing in and out.

Dead and death

- He is dead. (adjective)
- Death comes when you least expect it.

Economic and economical

- Economic problems are the major cause for poverty in the Third World.
- I bought myself a more economical car.

Life and live

- Life is too short to waste any time.
- Will man ever live to be 150 ?

Little, short and small

- You're a very nasty little boy. (small + emotion like affection, contempt)
- That short boy and his tall brother make a very funny couple. (opposite of "tall")
- Could I have a small pint, please? We have three sizes: small, medium, large.

Loose and lose

- A dangerous animal has got loose.
- Win or lose that's the question.

Meaning and opinion

- Tell me the meaning of that sign.
- In my opinion, they've got it all wrong.

Possible/bly and eventually

- We will certainly visit the souks and possibly the archaeological museum.
- We were delayed by a traffic accident and eventually missed our plane.

Practice and practise

- Practice makes perfect.
- He is practising day and night for the piano contest.

Price and prize

- That's the price you have to pay.
- Maeterlinck won the Nobel Prize for literature

Proof and prove

- What proof is there that he killed her ?
- Can you prove he is guilty?

Quiet and quite

- After he retired he chose for a quiet life in the countryside.
 - a That was quite a difference with the hectic career he had pursued.

Relief and relieve

- To our relief the missing children were safe and sound.
- With your gifts we will relieve distress among the tsunami victims.

Rise and raise

- All MP's rise when the king enters Parliament.
- Fund raising is very important in a volunteers organization.

Social and sociable

- Belgium has one of the best social security systems in Europe.
- Some celebrities turn out to be quite sociable people.

Teach and learn

- Could you teach me how to swim?
- They say you learn from your mistakes.

Thought and taught

- The thought that she was cheating on me made me mad.
- After he graduated , he taught English for five years in Birma.

Through and true

- If you walk through the rain you'll catch a cold.
- It's true that most visitors come to Belgium for our delicious food.

Want and won't

- I don't want a new pair of shoes. I prefer my old ones.
- I'll give in, but she won't. (will not)



4.2. Complete the sentences with the appropriate words from the list

1. It's t that one can l one's hair under stress.
2. I t there was a screw l somewhere, but they double-checked and it seemed all right.
3. My granddad was q a famous painter. Now he l a q life in the country.
4. Everybody t the criminal was guilty (behave) his lawyer.
5. We can give you little a in this matter e that you must be prepared for the worst.
6. All animals must b because they cannot l without oxygen.
7. D was the high p he paid for the dangerous life he led: he died at the age of twenty-three.
8. He was afraid that he would l his way because he had no compass.
9. He didn't b anymore and a last tremor went t his body: he was d !
10. What's the p of this car? What! 10,000 euros? I w spend so much money on a car!
11. Take my a and don't a any money from him: he's a dangerous criminal.
12. Although he won the Nobel P, he still remains the s chap he used to be.
13. Some politicians claim that our country needs e changes in order to stay competitive.
14. He didn't understand the m of the words, so e he looked them up in a dictionary.
15. If our government doesn't learn to be more e, it will have to b more and more money.

File 2

Belgium and Flanders

1. Portrait of Belgium and Flanders

DVD "Belgium at first sight" (Inbel)



1.1. Introduction

1.1.1. Watch chapter 'mood cut' twice. What images do you recognize? Name them.

(With the pause button your teacher can show individual images)

1.1.2. What images are related to:

- means of transport
- politics
- monuments
- museums
- music
- sports
- gastronomy
- everyday life

1.1.3 In your opinion, do these items represent Belgium? Were some subjects neglected, overlooked? Name them.

1.2. Welcome

This chapter deals with 'location' and 'political structure' of the country

1.2.1. Listening for gist (general comprehension) Complete the following structure:

- Geography (surface): km²
- Political structure
 - three languages three C
 - Brussels
 - federal state with C of R and S

- Federal government
- parliaments of Communities and R

Conclusion:

- Is the king merely a symbolic figure?

1.2.2. Second viewing.

Watch the chapter a second time and illustrate the structure with examples from the DVD

Pay attention to the following expressions

- exploring Belgium
- living, working and doing business
- Belgium, a complicated story
- the federal government enforces the laws
- autonomy within certain jurisdictions
- the Belgian model
- the king : head of the executive power and symbol of the country' s unity



1.3. Living in Belgium

1.3.1. Listening for gist.

What subjects are dealt with in this chapter? Cross out if not mentioned. Put the keywords in the right order.

Belgian design – protected monuments – architecture – youth policy – crafts – music – festivals – fashion – nude beaches – sports / sporting events – literary prizes – religion – diamonds – chocolates - arts – gastronomy

Pay attention to the following words and expressions/collocations

- economic and strategic crossroads of Western Europe
- amazing backdrop of stately buildings
- passionate builders of cathedrals and cities
- visual arts
- a centre for comics
- on the same wavelength as the anonymous miniaturists in the Middle Ages
- take a stubborn and original view of its environment

- an extravagant meal
- fusion cuisine: open and creative
- classic regional specialities

- the very best violinists, pianists and singers perform in the Queen Elisabeth Competition
- countless musical ensembles, operatic societies and soloists bring out our cultural wealth to every corner of the world
- a huge number of festivals lure a highly critical audience to Belgian stages
- the sheer choice is immense

- each city has its typical festivals, street markets, parades and processions
- the sporting landscape is varied
- cycling is a genuine passion
- Belgian cycling classics are legendary
- they take place on steep hills and bumpy cobblestones
- we play host to a number of sporting events like the Memorial Van Damme and the Spa Francorchamps Grand Prix
- in the creation of luxury items we show an unwavering attention for quality and an eye for detail
- jewelry designers derive their inspiration from the world centre for the diamond in Antwerp
- equally famous, the other jewel the Belgian chocolate

1.3.2. Second listening (listening for lexis)

Watch this chapter a second time and complete the structure with examples from the DVD

- architecture
- art
- gastronomy
- music
- festivals
- sports and sporting events
- fashion
- Belgian design
- luxury items (diamonds and chocolates)



1.4. Working in Belgium

This chapter deals with transport, industry and education

1.4.1. General comprehension. Complete the following expressions from the DVD

- Belgium is a k..... in Europe's network of transport routes
- the communication network b..... out the r..... for the Belgian landscape
- by land or sea, by r..... or a.....
- seaports, i..... ports, an intricate network of r..... and m.....
- Belgium sets the tone on a European l.....
- traditional heavy industry ; c..... e..... technology
- the result: a subtle balance of tradition, know how, c..... and innovation
- a broad knowledge b..... with u..... prestige
- another ace in our hand is the quality of our e..... system
- the driving forces are e..... and i.....
- Belgian expertise is top-class in the fields of biotechnology, a..... and f.....
s.....
- Belgium is one of the world's largest exporters p..... c.....

1.4.2. Global understanding. Answer the following questions.

1. What characterizes the Belgian communications network?
What historical background do we have to take into account in this respect?
2. In what respect does Belgium set the tone in Europe?
Use the following words in your answer
Innovation – eager to learn – agriculture – transfer of knowledge – research – broad technological base – cutting edge technology - food safety
3. What is the counterpart of traditional heavy industry?
4. What important economic values do teachers and professors instill in their students?
5. What characteristics lead to highly schooled employees and employers?
6. In what fields is Belgian expertise top class world wide?

1.5. Belgium in the world

1.5.1. Comprehension questions.

1. Name a few internationally renowned events that took place in Belgium.
2. It's not a coincidence that some international institutions have their headquarters in Belgium.
Name some.
3. Explain why Brussels – from a historic perspective – was a good choice?



1.6. Free speaking exercises

1.6.1. From one subject to another. Complete the structure with information from the DVD or your personal knowledge.

- Location
- Inhabitants
- Languages
- Capital
- Federal and regional
- Kingdom
- Geography and landscape
- Economy and cutting edge technology
- Education system
- Transport and communication
- History
- Culture (in every aspect): ancient and modern art, gastronomy, pop-music, fashion ...)
- Tourist attractions

1.6.2. Your teacher shows you short extracts (1', 1'30"). Comment what you saw.

1.6.3. Conversation

1. Stereotypes.

- the British are said to be strict and conservative; they wear bowler hats and carry umbrellas; they respect discipline in public life (queueing) and like understatement
- the French wear a beret; they eat baguettes and like wine and garlic
- the Germans are fat and eat sausages with sauerkraut, they drink lots of beer, drive big cars
- the Swiss are very rich (banking); they produce the best watches and eat cheese fondue

What stereotype would apply to the Belgians, the Flemings, the Walloons, the inhabitants of Brussels ... What common characteristics do all Belgians share?

2. Compare expressions of “Belgian nationalism” with our neighbour countries.

3. Some people call our lifestyle “Burgundian”. Explain. Do you agree?

4. “Belgians are born with a brick in their stomach”. Stereotype or true?

5. In his book “The ugliest country in the world” architect R. Braem criticized Belgian urbanization. Seen from the air, is Belgium really ugly?

<http://www.vlaamsparlement.be/vp/engels.html> (brochure)

6. Most countries use a national symbol to promote tourism (Eiffel tower, Tower Bridge, Brandenburg Gate) We don't have a typical symbol. Your suggestions, please. (serious or not)

7. What do most foreigners identify Belgium with?

8. Brussels is among others capital of the EU, European headquarter of NATO etc. Is this international orientation visible in the city?

1.7. Combination exercise



1.7.1. Writing assignment

Draw a portrait of Belgium, Flanders, your region ... Your text (20 lines) is meant to convince foreigners a visit is worth while. (e.g. Think of 5 attractions)



1.7.2. Prepare a welcome speech for the group you will show around today in your city. Take into account: age, nationality, profession, purpose of the visit ... Draw a short portrait of the city, give an outline of your tour or today's programme.

2. Belgians in the world: two sides of a coin...

2.1. King Leopold II and the Congo

Until the middle of the 19th century, the Congo was on the edge of unexplored Africa, as Europeans seldom ventured into its interior. The rainforest, swamps and attendant malaria, and other diseases such as sleeping sickness made it a difficult environment for European exploration and exploitation. Imperialists were at first reluctant to colonize the area in the absence of obvious economic benefits. King Leopold managed to secure it in 1885 through his private efforts, ruling the state personally until its annexation by the government of Belgium in 1908. Other powers vied with Leopold for the land when natural resources, first rubber, and then copper and other minerals in the upper Lualaba River basin, were discovered.



Leopold II in Kinshasa

The Congo Free State was established as a neutral independent sovereignty without reference to its inhabitants save a few autocratic chiefs. In 1876 Leopold II, King of the Belgians organized the International African Association with the cooperation of the leading African explorers and the support of several European governments for the promotion of African exploration and colonization. In 1877, *Henry Morton Stanley* called attention to the Congo region and was sent there by the association, the expense being defrayed by Leopold. Through corrupt treaties with native chiefs, rights were acquired to a great area along the Congo, and military posts were established. The treaties were extremely one-sided in favor of Leopold. In some cases chiefs not only handed over their lands, but also promised to help provide workers for forced labor.

On April 22, 1884, the United States government, having decided that the cessions by the native chiefs were lawful, recognized the International Association of the Congo as a sovereign independent state, under the title of the Congo Free State, and this example was followed by Austria-Hungary, France, Germany, the United Kingdom, Italy, the Netherlands, Portugal, Russia, Spain, and Sweden. *The international conference on African affairs, which met at*

Berlin, 1884–85, determined the status of the Congo Free State. The diplomats put on a humanitarian façade by condemning the slave trade, prohibiting the sale of alcoholic beverages and firearms in certain regions, and by expressing concern for missionary activities. More importantly, the diplomats in Berlin laid down the rules of competition by which the great powers were to be guided in seeking colonies. They also agreed that the area along the Congo River was to be administered by Leopold II of Belgium as a neutral area, known as the Congo Free State, in which trade and navigation were to be free.

Leopold ran up high debts with his Congo investments before salvation came with the beginning of the worldwide rubber boom in the 1890s. Prices went up at a fevered pitch throughout the decade as industries discovered new uses for rubber in tires, hoses, tubing, insulation for telegraph and telephone cables and wiring, and so on. By the late 1890s, wild rubber had far surpassed ivory as the main source of revenue from the Congo Free State. The peak year was 1903, with rubber fetching the highest price and concessionary companies raking in the highest profits. However, as competition from other areas of rubber cultivation mounted, Leopold's private rule was left increasingly vulnerable to international scrutiny, especially from Britain. Joseph Conrad's novel *Heart of Darkness* was released in 1902. Based on his brief experience as a steamer captain on the Congo ten years before, Conrad's

novel encapsulated the public's growing concerns about what was happening in the Congo. On November 15, 1908, The Parliament of Belgium annexed the Congo Free State and took over its administration.

Leopold II is remembered today by many Belgians as the «Builder King» (Koning-Bouwer in Dutch, le Roi-Bâtisseur in French) because he commissioned a great number of buildings and urban projects, mainly in Brussels, Ostend and Antwerp. These buildings include the Royal Glasshouses in the grounds of the Palace at Laken, the Japanese Tower, the Chinese Pavilion, the Musée du Congo (now called the Royal Museum for Central Africa), and their surrounding park in Tervuren, the Cinquantenaire in Brussels, and the Antwerp train station hall. These were all built using the profits from the Congo. In 1900, he created the Royal Trust, by which means he donated most of his property to the Belgian nation.

<http://en.wikipedia.org>

2.2. How is it said in the text?

1. Europeans seldom **risked to go** into its interior.
2. Other powers **rivaled** with Leopold.
3. The Congo Free State was established as an **independent state**
4. The costs were **paid** by Leopold.
5. The **territories surrendered** by the native chiefs were lawful.
6. The sale of alcoholic **drinks** was prohibited.
7. Leopold was **to govern** the area along the Congo River.
8. Competition from other areas **rose**.
9. Conrad's novel briefly **summarized** the public's concern.
10. Leopold **placed the order** for a great many buildings.



2.3. Comprehension questions

1. Why did it take so long before Europeans ventured into “the heart of Africa”?
2. How did Leopold succeed in creating the Congo Free State?
3. Why was the Conference of Berlin so important. Explain : the humanitarian façade.
4. Initially, Leopold's undertaking wasn't a success. When did the turnaround come? Was it long-lived?
5. Leopold's legacy is highly controversial. Give the “Belgian” and the international view.



2.4. Speaking

1. Find more information about Leopold and present a balanced account of his life.
2. The film script for *Apocalypse Now* (F.F. Coppola) was based on *Heart of Darkness* with Marlon Brando playing Kurtz, a company manager embodying the evils of imperialism. What can you find about Conrad's most famous work?

Ruth Slade, *King Leopold's Congo* (1962)

A. Hochschild, *King Leopold's Ghost* (1998)

<http://www.answers.com/topic/heart-of-darkness>

2.5. Joseph de Veuster aka Blessed Damien of Molokai



Statue of Damian (US Capitol)

Father Damien was born Joseph de Veuster in Tremeloo, Belgium, on January 3, 1840. The son of well-to-do parents, he entered the Sacred Hearts Congregation at Louvain in January 1859 and five years later was ordained a priest in the Cathedral of Our Lady of Peace in Honolulu.

He served at several parishes on the island of Oahu just as the kingdom faced a public health crisis. Native Hawaiians became afflicted by diseases inadvertently introduced to the Hawaiian Islands by foreign traders and sailors. Thousands died of influenza, syphilis and other ailments which had never before affected Hawaiians. This included the plight of leprosy, today called Hansen's disease. Fearful of its spread, King Kamehameha V segregated the lepers of the kingdom and moved them to a settlement colony on the north side of the island of Molokai. The Royal Board of Health provided them with supplies and food but did not yet have the resources to offer proper healthcare.

In 1865, Father Damien was assigned to the Catholic Mission in North Kohala on the island of Hawai'i. While Msgr. Louis Maigret, vicar apostolic, believed that the lepers at the very least needed a priest to minister to their needs, he realized that this assignment could potentially be a death sentence. After prayerful thought, Damien asked Msgr. Maigret for permission to go to Moloka'i.

On May 10, 1873, Father Damien traveled with Bishop Maigret and a ship-load of lepers to Molokai. After two days Damien was willing to devote the rest of his life to the leper settlement. The bishop replied that he could stay as long as his devotion dictated. Father Damien accomplished amaz-

ing feats while residing on Molokai. Six chapels were built by 1875. He constructed a home for boys and later a home for girls. He bandaged wounds, made coffins, dug graves, heard confessions, and said Mass every morning. In December 1884, Father Damien noticed severe blisters on his feet without the presence of pain. As he suspected, the disease was leprosy.

Father Damien died peacefully on April 15, 1889, on Molokai after sixteen years of undaunted dedication.

The bronze statue is based on photographs taken of Father Damien near the end of his life, with the scars of his disease visible on his face and his right arm in a sling beneath his cloak. His broad-brimmed hat was traditionally worn by missionaries. His right hand holds a cane.

Damien was honored with the title of The Greatest Belgian throughout Belgian history in polling conducted by the Flemish public broadcasting service, VRT.

Mahatma Gandhi offered his own defense of Damien's life and work. Gandhi claimed Damien to have been an inspiration for his social campaigns in India that led to the freedom of his people and secured aid for those that needed it. Gandhi was quoted in M.S. Mehendale's 1971 account called *Gandhi Looks at Leprosy* as saying, «The political and journalistic world can boast of very few heroes who compare with Father Damien of Moloka'i. It is worthwhile to look for the sources of such heroism.»

<http://www.aoc.gov/cc/art/nsh/damien.cfm>

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Father_Damien



2.6. Speaking

Make a presentation on one of the following Belgian adventurers with international reputation: Godfrey of Bouillon, William of Rubruck, Pedro de Gante, Ferdinand Verbiest, Adrien de Gerlache.

2.7. Oral exercise: preparing a trip

As a tour guide on an intercontinental trip it's useful to inform the members of your group about the country you're going to visit. About a month before the departure you plan a meeting where you:

1. present general information on the country and the places you will visit
2. give practical information: luggage, what to wear, travel documents, money, health ...
3. give the time of departure and arrival of the return flight. Set a precise meeting time and place at Zaventem airport

Example: trip to Sri Lanka

- Population: 20.000.000
- Electrical Plugs : 230V 50Hz
- Languages Spoken Official: Sinhalese, Tamil
- Time Zones: GMT/UTC +5.5
- Country Dialing Code: +94
- Weights & Measures: Metric
- Entry & VISA Formalities: For nationals of most countries, visas are issued on arrival for 30 days.
- What to wear:cotton garments are the ideal as Sri Lanka is a tropical island. However, viscose/cotton mixed garments are commonly worn. Light clothing is recommended in the lowland areas and light woolen clothing is suitable in the hill country. A sun hat and sun glasses may help to escape the heat during day time.
- Currency: Sri Lanka follows decimal currency system in Rupees (Rs.) and cents (Cts.) with 100 cents equal to a rupee. Currency notes are available in the denominations of Rs. 2,10,20,50,100,200, 500 and 1000. Coins are issued in values of Cts.1,2,5,10,25,50 and Rs.1,2,5 and 10. Exchange:Foreign currency can be changed at authorised exchanges, banks and hotels.
- Credit/Debit Cards and ATMs: MasterCard and Visa are widely accepted. American Express is also often accepted. Major cities have ATMs, although not all will accept international cards.The tourist board urges caution when paying by credit card due to the potential for fraud.
- Traveller's Cheques:The rate of exchange for traveller's cheques can be better than the rate of exchange for cash. To avoid additional exchange rate charges, travellers are advised to take traveller's cheques in US Dollars or Pounds Sterling.
- Banking Hours: Mon-Sat 0900-1300. Some city banks close at 1500, whilst some even have night bank facilities.
- Exchange Rate Indicators : €1.00 = LKR 159.2 (Jan. 2008)
- Postal Services: Sri Lanka has both regular government post offices which exist in every village (at least at sub post office level) and agency post offices (privately run post offices) in most big towns. For more information contact, the Central Mail Exchange.
- Tipping: A 10% service charge is added to most restaurant and hotel bills. Tipping is a customary way to show appreciation for almost all services and small amounts are sufficient, otherwise 10% of the amount due is standard. There is no need to tip taxi drivers.
- Entering Places of Worship: Visitors to Buddhist temples are advised to be properly clad covering the body in full. Briefs, shorts, bear backs and bare shoulders are against accepted norms. When entering Buddhist and Hindu shrines footwear and headgear should be removed.
- Food and Drink: Sri Lankan food is renowned for it's spiciness and hot taste. Throughout the trip you'll be warned by proud Sri Lankans that you'll find the food too hot for your poor sensitive foreign mouths to handle.

But in fact I've eaten plenty of hotter curries in Britain, and certainly in southeast Asia. I find most food here is much milder than you're led to expect - particularly if you're staying at tourist hotels which deliberately go easy on the spices. All water should be regarded as being potentially contaminated. Water used for drinking, brushing teeth or making ice should have first been boiled or otherwise sterilised. Bottled water and a variety of mineral waters are available at most hotels. Unpasteurised milk should be boiled. Powdered or tinned milk is available and is advised. Pasteurised and sterilised milk is available in some hotels and shops. Avoid dairy products made with unboiled milk. Only eat well-cooked meat and fish. Vegetables should be cooked and fruit peeled.

- **Vaccinations:** Vaccinations against Japanese B encephalitis, tuberculosis and hepatitis B are sometimes recommended.
- **Health Care:** Treatment is free at government hospitals and dispensaries; 24-hour treatment is available at Colombo National Hospital. Some hotels also have doctors.

File 3

History of Flanders and Belgium

1. Introduction: History of Belgium



Over the past two millennia, the area that is now known as Belgium has seen significant demographic, political and cultural upheavals. The first well-documented population move was the **(1) verovering** of the region by the Roman Republic in the 1st century BC, followed in the 5th century by the Germanic Franks. The Franks **(2) vestigden** the Merovingian kingdom, which became the Carolingian Empire in the 8th century. During the **(3) middeleeuwen**, the Low Countries were split into many small **(4) feodale** states. Most of them were united in the course of the 14th and 15th centuries by the house of Burgundy as the Burgundian Netherlands. These states **(5) verkregen** a degree of autonomy in the 15th century and were thereafter named the Seventeen Provinces.

The history of Belgium can be distinguished from that of the Low Countries from the 16th century. The Eighty Years' War (1568–1648) **(6) verdeelde** the Seventeen Provinces into the United Provinces in the north and the Southern Netherlands in the south. The southern provinces were **(7) bestuurd** successively by the Spanish and the Austrian Habsburgs. Until **(8) onafhankelijkheid**, the Southern Netherlands were sought after by numerous French **(9) veroveraars** and were the theatre of most Franco-Spanish and Franco-Austrian wars during the 17th and 18th centuries. Following the Campaigns of 1794 in the French Revolutionary Wars, the Low Countries - including **(10) grondgebied** that were never under Habsburg rule, such as the Bishopric of Liège - were overrun by France, ending Spanish-Austrian rule in the region. The **(11) hereniging** of the Low Countries as the United Kingdom of the Netherlands occurred at the end of the French **(12) Keizerrijk** in 1815.

The 1830 Belgian Revolution led to the **(13) vestiging** of an independent, Catholic and neutral Belgium under a provisional government and a national congress. Since the installation of Leopold I as king in 1831, Belgium has been a constitutional monarchy and **(14) parlementaire** democratie. Between independence and World War II, the democratic system evolved from an **(15) oligarchie** characterised by two main parties, the Catholics and the Liberals, to a universal **(16) kies** system that has included a third party, the Labour Party, and a strong role for the **(17) vakbonden**. Originally, French, which was the adopted language of the nobility and the bourgeoisie, was the official language. The country has since developed a bilingual Dutch-French system.

The Berlin Conference of 1885 agreed to hand over Congo to King Leopold II as his private possession, called the Congo Free State. In 1908, it was **(18) overgedragen** to Belgium as a colony, henceforth called the Belgian Congo. Belgium's neutrality was violated in 1914, when Germany invaded Belgium as part of the Schlieffen Plan. The former German colonies Ruanda-Urundi - now called Rwanda and Burundi - were occupied by the Belgian Congo in 1916. They were **(19) onder mandaat stellen** in 1924 to Belgium by the League of Nations. Belgium

was again invaded by Germany in 1940 during the blitzkrieg offensive. The country was occupied until the winter of 1944-45 when it was liberated by allied troops. The Belgian Congo gained its independence in 1960 during the Congo Crisis, and Ruanda-Urundi became independent in 1962.

After World War II, Belgium **(20) lid worden** NATO and, together with the Netherlands and Luxembourg, formed the Benelux group of nations. Belgium is also one of the six **(21) stichtende leden** of the 1951 established European Coal and Steel Community, and the 1957 established European Economic Community and European Atomic Energy Community. Belgium **(22) is gastland** the headquarters of NATO and a major part of the European Union's institutions and administrations, including the European Commission, the Council of the European Union and the extraordinary and committee sessions of the European Parliament, as well as parts of its administration. During the 20th century, and in particular since World War II, the history of Belgium has been increasingly dominated by the autonomy of its two main **(23) gemeenschappen**. This period saw a rise in intercommunal tensions, and the unity of the Belgian state has come **(24) "ter discussie"**. Through constitutional reforms in the 1970s and 1980s, regionalisation of the unitary state had led to the establishment of a **(25) op drie niveaus** system of federalism, linguistic-community and regional governments, a compromise designed to minimise linguistic tensions. Nowadays, these federal entities uphold more legislative power than the national bicameral parliament, whereas national government still controls nearly all taxation, over 80% of the finances of the community and region governments, and 100% of the social security.

http://www.k12academics.com/belgium_history.htm

Translate the words between brackets

1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25

2. I Fiamminghi

Decavele, J., *Vlaanderen*, Gent: Snoeck-Ducaju & zoon

In all Western languages the words Flanders and Flemish have a positive connotation. *Fiammingho*, *flamenco*, *flamend*, *Flemish*, *flämisch* are pointers to aristocratic and artistic refinement. Throughout the world they conjure up the triumphs of Flemish art and culture, the grand history of cities such as Bruges, Ghent, Lille, Tournai, Antwerp and Brussels. The world's principal museums from the Ermitage to the Prado, from the Louvre to the National Gallery, from the Kunsthistorisches Museum in Vienna to the Alte Pinakothek in Munich and the New York Metropolitan Museum, all consider their Flemish Masters as their greatest treasures.

In the Florence Uffizi, Hugo van der Goes' *Portinari* altarpiece and Botticelli's *Primavera* face one another. It

could be purely accidental and merely the result of the Museum's new chronological display, but to the spectator they appear to form a bridge between the Mediterranean and the northern temperament, the two focal points on the artistic map of the Middle Ages, Flanders and Italy. This bridge was a great deal more than symbolic, considering that the Flemish altarpiece was commissioned by a Florentine, after whom it was named, and was painted in Ghent when Van der Goes was dean of the painters' guild. Flanders and Italy were the first regions in medieval Europe where large cities came into being.

Amid the conglomerate of principalities and seigneuries that, from the 9th century, had come into existence in the "Low Countries by the Sea", the county of Flanders knew the most spectacular growth. Etymologically, the word "Flanders" means "flooded land" which was an apt description of the Flemish coastal areas for until the year 800 they were submerged twice daily by the sea. The name of the coastal area later came to cover the entire county, ruled by Baldwin II the Bald (879-918) After the chaotic period of the Norse invasions, he and his successors succeeded in securing power over the entire area, establishing law and order to an extent hitherto unknown in Western Europe. Thus they created the right conditions for unprecedented economic and urban development.



Portinari Altarpiece (Hugo van der Goes)

The County of Flanders remained the richest and most powerful heartland of the Netherlands, up to the reign of the Burgundian dukes and even the 16th century Italian and Spanish documents referred to *Fiandra* and *Flandres* as covering the whole of the Netherlands. During that period students and artists from all parts of the Netherlands, when they worked in Rome, Padua and other Italian cities, were called *Fiamminghi*, even if they came from Brabant, Holland, Hainaut or Utrecht. Even those from the principality of Liège were *Fiamminghi* in Italian eyes. The Italian author Guicciardini wrote in 1567: "Virtually all over Europe, the Netherlands are commonly called *Flandra*, so that the name of a part is given to the whole, because of the power and the wealth of the region".

After 1500, the word "Flemish" is gradually adopted as a term indicating the Netherlandic language, also outside the County of Flanders, and from the 18th century it is frequently used to mean all Netherlandic-speaking inhabitants of the Austrian Netherlands. One of the rules of the Theresian College in Brussels (1777) decreed: "the Flemings will learn French and in exchange the Walloons and the French will familiarize themselves with Flemish".

In the 19th century, however, the decline of the language in the Southern Netherlands, as a result of French taking pride of place, caused "Flemish" to be associated with linguistic poverty. Flemish increasingly became a collective noun for the dialects spoken in what had then become Belgium – the local patois of Brabant, East Flanders, West Flanders or Limburg. The concept of "Flanders" was at the heart of a patriotic movement which sought to re-establish a sense of Flemish nationhood through study of the national language, reappraisal of the past and development of the arts. Terms as "Flemish Movement", "Flemish people", "Flemish literature" gained general currency. On the other hand the coining of the name "Wallonia" in 1844 came to indicate the bi-national character of the country.

As in the course of the 20th century the standard or "cultured" Netherlandic (Dutch) language, both in spoken and written form, gained ground on the regional dialects the use of the term "Flemish" was often felt to be discriminatory. Only in 1930 the Ghent university became the first institution of higher education with Netherlandic (Dutch) as the vernacular language. In the ensuing years, the equality between Flanders and Wallonia was officially established when public administration, schools and courts became unilingual. Army units were split along language lines and the central administration was reformed.

In 1962 the southern border of Flanders, which had hitherto fluctuated with the results of language counts undertaken every ten years, was fixed by law. In 1973 the term “Flemish” (language spoken in the northern part of Belgium) was abolished by law and replaced by “Netherlandic” (Dutch). The picture is complicated by the fact that in the Anglo-Saxon world “Dutch” is used to refer to the language of Holland.

The Flemings, six million Europeans living in a narrow strip of land in the south of the Low Countries, now have their own parliament and government in the federal Belgian state (1993). Rather than the language, the works of the northern Rembrandt and the southern Rubens may show us how Flanders and Holland went their separate ways after the year 1600. The Golden Age of the Dutch Republic was characterized by a freedom which in those days was quite exceptional. It was the creation of a brand new and ambitious citizenry, mirrored in the works of the painter who created the “Nightwatch”. In the South, under the Counter Reformation and the absolute Spanish monarchy, church and nobility found their supreme expression in Rubens.

In the beginning of the 21st century Belgium consists of two ethnical groups, Flemings and Walloons fundamentally different from each other and eager to underline those differences.

2.1. Vocabulary

How is it said in the text?

an indication for	
bring to mind	
a piece of artwork placed above and behind an altar	
to place an order for	
exactly suitable	
dictate	
the highest or most important position	
a new evaluation	
standard native language of a country	
follow as a consequence	
until this time	

2.2. Comprehension questions

1. What does the anecdote about the Portinari altarpiece in the Uffizi illustrate?
2. What is the origin of the word “Flanders”? Illustrate how the meaning gradually changed.
3. Explain the different meanings of the word “Flemish”. (language, nation)
4. Give the different connotations of the words “Flemish”, “Dutch” and “Netherlandic”.

3. Roman and Frankish Period (57 BC – AD 843)

3.1. “...horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae...”

The history of Belgium begins several decades before the birth of Christ. Between 57 and 50 BC, the region of northern Gaul lying in the Scheldt and Meuse valleys was conquered by Julius Caesar. At that time the territory now known as “Belgium” was inhabited by Gallo-Celtic tribes, the Belgae. Caesar recorded that these Belgae fought with great valour against his forces in 58 BC. They lost, however, and the Romans remained in the region. In 15 BC these conquered lands became the imperial province of Gallia Belgica. “Belgium” flourished under the Pax Romana of provincial rule for 400 years.

During the 3rd C AD, the power of Rome started to weaken and the Germanic Franks began to move into the region. When the West(ern) Roman Empire collapsed in the 5th C, the power vacuum was filled by the Franks. They made Tournai the centre of their empire and helped spread Christianity throughout western Europe.

The most famous of these Frankish kings was Charlemagne (Charles the Great). He was born in Liège in 742 and reigned from AD 768 to AD 814. His empire extended from Denmark to the Mediterranean and from the Elbe to the Atlantic. For services to Christianity and, in particular, for restoring papal lands in Italy, he was crowned Holy Roman Emperor by the Pope on Christmas Day AD 800.

Charlemagne’s successors, however, could not retain control over such an enormous territory. So, after the death of Charlemagne’s son, Louis the Pious, the Frankish Empire was divided into three by the Treaty of Verdun in AD 843. The three grandsons of Charles the Great were each given a part:

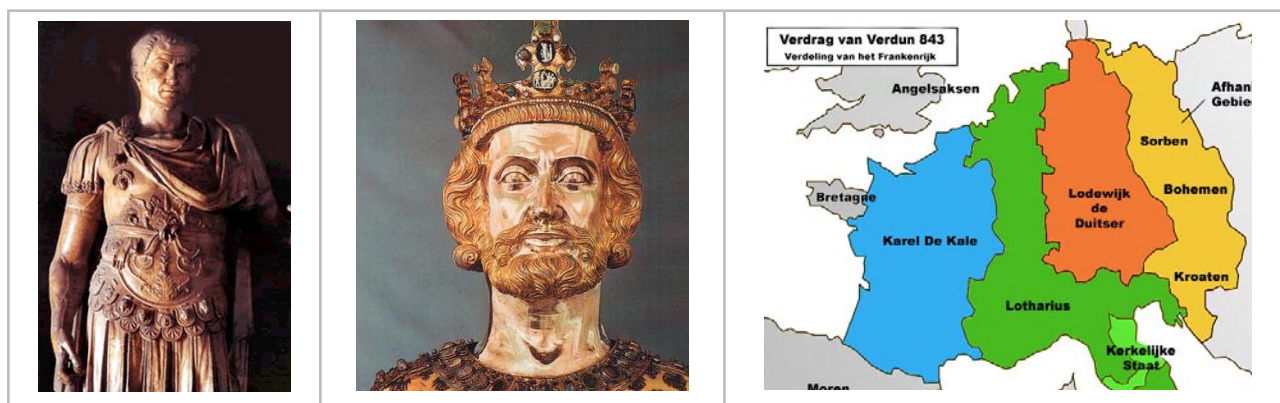
- Charles the Bald was crowned king of the West Frankish Kingdom or West Francia, which later became France. This included the region west of the Scheldt (Flanders).
- Since Lothair (Lothar) was the eldest son, he was given the central (and most important) portion of the empire, the Middle Frankish Kingdom. It comprised the region east of the Scheldt (i.e. the rest of “Belgium”) and those regions which later became the Low Countries, Lorraine, Alsace, Burgundy, Provence and Italy.
- Louis the German received the eastern part which was called the East(ern) Frankish Kingdom or East Francia. Later, this became the Holy Roman Empire, and much later, today’s Germany.

Adapted from:

- Blyth, D., *Belgium*, 9th edition. London: A1C Black, 2000 (Blue Guide)

- Müller, K., *Belgium*, Singapore: APA Publications (HK) Ltd, 1992 (Insight Guide)

Tip: <http://users.telenet.be/leopold.winckelmans/caesar.htm> (België, Gallië en Germanië in de geschriften van Caesar)



Julius Caesar

Charlemagne

Treaty of Verdun

3.1.1. Vocabulary. Complete the chart.

<i>Location</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>people</i>
Gaul	Gallic/Gaulish	the Gauls
x	BUT Gallo-Roman	.....
x	Gallo-Celtic	.....
x	..... (pronunciation!)	the Celts
Germania	.....	the Germanic people(s)
Rome	Roman	the Romans
the Frankish kingdom / realm	.....	the Franks
Burgundy	.....	the Burgundians
.....	Lorraine	the Lorrainers / Lorrainians
Provence	Provençal	the Provençals / -çaux
Alsace	.....	the Alsatians
the Merovingian kingdom/realm	Merovingian	.....
the Carolingian kingdom/realm	.....	the Carolingians
	= Carlovingian	=
the Low Countries	x	x

3.1.2. Vocabulary. How is it said in the text?

- = great bravery or courage
- = to be successful and be well
- = to rule
- = present-day
- = somebody who succeeds somebody else
- = this is
- = to keep from losing
- = to consist of (parts)

3.2. The Roman Occupation.

Match a name from the box with one of the following information bits. When you have completed this exercise you will have a chronological chart of the Roman and Frankish Period. However, a timeline of the Frankish rulers is difficult since the realm was, according to old Germanic practice, frequently divided among the sons of a leader upon his death and then eventually reunited. (This scheme is meant to be a guideline for further study. Students can pick any item from this exercise for individual and class work (assignments, presentations, papers).

..... An area of western Europe in Roman times which included France, Belgium, the southern part of the Netherlands, southwest(ern) Germany and part of northern Italy.

..... A conglomeration of Gallo-Celtic tribes in the northern part of Gaul.

....., in his book '*De Bello Gallico*', wrote about the Belgians: "...horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae...'

..... An exact copy of his statue, under the name of Vercingetorix, can be found at the town of St Denis near Paris.

....., later Germania Secunda, was a Roman province covering the east of today's Belgium. The capital was

Belgica Prima was a Roman province covering the southern tip of today's Belgium, with as its capital.

Gallia Belgica, later, was a Roman province covering the west of today's Belgium with as its capital.

..... The border(s) of the Roman Empire, following the river and guarded by Roman fortresses. Beyond stretched the endless and ominous Germanic forest.

..... The peace that was established by Roman rule in the countries of the Roman Empire (cf. Pax Britannica, Pax Americana).

..... (military roads) were already being constructed at an early stage for two main reasons. They made it possible for the Roman army to move fast in order to keep the Pax Romana, and they were essential for transporting and trading goods.



Roman "limes" with ...



Hadrian's Wall

Those brave Belgians.

Julius Caesar had difficulties with the troublesome 'Belgae', a group of Gauls living to the north of the Seine and the Marne. In his *De Bello Gallico* he called the Belgae the bravest amongst the Gauls. Gaul was divided into 3 parts, including Gallia Belgica. The Latin name 'Belgae' is derived from the Greek 'pelasgos', which means 'seamen'. The Greek word is derived from the Celtic 'peleg' and a part of this word 'ach' or 'eg' can be translated as 'brotherhood'. The 'Belgae' were several related 'tribes of seamen'. The word 'Belg' is related to the word 'balg', something that can grow. This refers more particularly to the swollen head of the Belgians. The Belgae had terrific products, such as horses, ham and oil lamps, much sought after.

Those old Belgae are not related to the current Belgians. Gallia Belgica was situated in the north; the Ijssel, the Rhine and the Seine were the borders. After the fall of Rome, the adjective 'Belgica' almost disappeared completely. The humanists used the word to refer to the Low Countries (Belgium and the Netherlands). During the United Kingdom of the Netherlands (1815-1830), the name 'Belgique' was used to distinguish from the detested inhabitants from the north. In Dutch the name was translated into "België" in analogy to "Italië, Perzië..."

The Belgian flag has three colours, black, yellow and red. Black refers to the mourning for the victims. Yellow is wealth and the glorious country. Red is the blood of the battlefield.

3.3. The Frankish Period.

Same exercise as 3.2.

Aachen/Aken/Aix-la-Chapelle - Battle of Poitiers - Battle of Soissons - Charlemagne - Charles Martel - Childeric I - Clovis - founding father - the Franks - Heristal/Herstal - Jupille-sur-Meuse - Mayors of the Palace - Meroveus - the Merovingians - Pepin I of Landen - real founder - Salian - stained glass window - Tournai/Doornik

- A loose federation of several Germanic barbarian tribes, such as the Salians, Sicambri, etc.
- The first dynasty of Frankish kings. They made their capital in the 5th C.
- Chlodio The leader of the dominant Frankish tribe who started the dynasty of the Frankish Merovingian kings.
- (Roman name) or Merovech (Germanic name), the son of Chlodio. The dynasty of the Merovingian kings was named after him.
- The son of Meroveus and father of Clovis. He was put on the shield at Tournai, the Frankish way of proclaiming a king (cf Asterix).
- The first Frankish king to be baptised in AD 498 (afterwards they all had a glass of champagne). He defeated the Romans in the
He moved his power base from Tournai/Doornik to Reims and Paris.
- Austrasia If you want to know more about how the Frankish kingdom was divided after the death of
and Neustria Clovis, then you should go to the cathedral at Tournai. The whole Shakespearean story is
illustrated in the glass panes of the of the south transept.

The Carolingians The second dynasty of Frankish kings. At first, they were (administrators or “hofmeiers”) at the court of the Merovingian kings. Gradually they took over the power from these kings.

..... Mayor of the Palace at the court of the Merovingian king Dagobert, who was only a child when he became king.

Pepin II of Heristal, also known as Pepin the Younger. He was the grandson of Pepin I and was born in, which was a favourite residence of the Carolingians

..... The third Mayor of the Palace. He was the illegitimate son of Pepin II. In 732 he stopped the invasion of the Arabs at the He became ruler in effect, if not in name, of all the Frankish lands. He lies buried in the Saint Denis Basilica near Paris.

Pepin III the Short The son of Charles Martel. He became Mayor of the Palace in 741, but in 751 he deposed the last Merovingian king, Childeric III, and had himself crowned king of the Franks. So, he is the of the Carolingian Dynasty. After his death, he was buried in the Saint Denis Basilica next to his wife, Bertrud(a) with the Big Feet.

..... Like his father, Pepin III, he was born in and made the capital of his empire. The Carolingian Dynasty was named after him. By reforming the Frankish Empire and dividing it into counties, he created the feudal system from which the mighty counts of Flanders arose. He is considered to be the of Europe.



The Merovingian King Childeric I



The Christening of Clovis



The armies of France and Burgundy with Charles Martel in prayer, by illuminator Loyset Liédet



Pepin the Short



Golden bees and ...



signet ring of Childeric

3.3.1. Comprehension.

1. Give the names of the four main power bases of the Frankish kings in chronological order.

.....
..... and
.....

2. Two other residences of the Frankish kings were:

.....

3. Another name for Charlemagne was

4. Can you link the English “mayor” and the French “maire” to a Dutch word?

.....



3.3.2. Make a short presentation on the historical sites and museums where we can still see the traces of the Germanic people(s), the Romans and the Franks.

- the Gallo-Roman museums at Tongeren and Velzeke.
- the Gallo-Roman burial mounds or ‘tumuli’ at Tienen.
- the excavations at Petegem, residence of Charles the Bald.
- (Germanic) place names.
- the Roman aqueduct (spelled –e-) at Tongeren.
- the Palatine Chapel at Aachen.
- Hadrian’s wall
- Bath
- etc ...

3.3.3. Latin Quotes.

Here are some famous Latin quotes, most of which can also be found in the Asterix comic strips. Usually people don’t have a clue what they mean, but it’s much more fun when you do. Match a Latin quote with its translation/ interpretation

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Alea iacta est (Julius Caesar) | a. Make haste slowly. |
| 2. Anno Domini | b. What soberness conceals, drunkenness reveals / The truth is in wine. |
| 3. Audaces fortuna iuvat (Vergil) | c. There is danger in delay. |
| 4. Carpe diem (Horace) | d. Now it is time to drink. |
| 5. Cogito ergo sum (Descartes) | e. Fortune favours the brave. |
| 6. Cum grano salis (Pliny the Elder) | f. The die is cast (= the decision or action has been taken and cannot be changed). |
| 7. De facto | g. I think, therefore I am. |
| 8. Diem perdidit (Titus) | h. In the year of our Lord. |
| 9. Dura lex, sed lex | i. I came, I saw, I conquered. |
| 10. Errare humanum est (Seneca) | j. (to take sth) with a pinch of salt. |
| 11. Festina lente (Augustus Caesar) | k. The law is harsh, but it’s the law. |
| 12. In vino veritas | l. Seize the day. / Gather your rosebuds while you may. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 13. In virtute sunt multi ascensus (Cicero) | m. Thus passes away/departs the glory of the world. |
| 14. Lupus est homo homini (Plautus) | n. In actual fact / In reality. |
| 15. Mens sana in corpore sano (Seneca) | o. Hail Caesar, those (who are) about to die salute you. |
| 16. (Ave Caesar) morituri te salutant (Horace) | p. Vanity of vanities, all is vanity. |
| 17. Nunc est bibendum (Horace) | q. To err is human (to forgive divine). |
| 18. O tempora, o mores (Cicero) | r. I have lost the day (in the context that he had done no good deed that day). |
| 19. Periculum in mora (Livy) | s. There are many degrees in excellence. |
| 20. Quo vadis? (Cicero) | t. Oh, the times! Oh, the customs/morals! |
| 21. Quod erat demonstrandum (Thomas Moore) | u. Where are you going? |
| 22. Sic transit Gloria mundi (*) | v. A sound mind in a healthy body. |
| 23. Vanitas vanitatum et omnia vanitas (Bible) | w. Which is what we were trying to prove (announcing the end of an argument). |
| 24. Veni vidi vici (Julius Caesar) | x. Man is a wolf to man. |

(*) the introductory words of a medieval hymn used at the inauguration of a newly elected pope

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24

3.3.4. Latin in English.

Complete the sentences with these words, expressions of Latin origin.

am/AM - bona fide - curriculum vitae - e.g. - ego - formula - i.e. (id est) - persona non grata - placebo - pm/PM - postmortem - status quo - veto - vice versa

- Beer will only be served to adults, people over 18.
- The showed that John Doe had been shot in the back of the head.
- The government is not in favour of changes in the tax laws; they want to maintain a (= the state of things as they are)
- The lobby is strictly off limits to non-..... guests. (= sincere, honest, to be trusted)
- Belgium has the most fantastic cities, Ghent, Bruges, Tournai, etc
- The journalist was declared and thrown out of the country.
- Pete had an excellent alibi. He had been fishing with Jake between 6 and 5
- $E=mc^2$ is Albert Einstein's most famous
- A instead of the real medicine often cures the patient just as well.
- The Americans have never really trusted the Russians and (= and the Russians have never trusted the Americans).
- Mike's is as big as Mount Everest on a clear day.

12. The Russians the Chinese proposal to send troops into Kashmir. (= refuse to allow to be carried out)
13. All applications must be in writing and a enclosed.

3.3.5. Roman numerals. Complete the chart and fill in the other words:

I	unus	1
.....	quinque	5
.....	decem	10
L	quingenta	.....
.....	centum	.....
D	quingenti	.....
.....	.....	1000

Notes:

- The big difference between the Roman and the Arabic numerals used today is that the Romans didn't have a symbol for
- Placing a smaller number in front of a larger number indicates
E.g. IV = / IX =
- Large numbers were indicated by putting a horizontal line above a base numeral to indicate multiplication by 1,000.
E.g. 5,000 =
1,000,000 =
- There are several mnemonics that can be useful in remembering the Roman numeral system:
 - Little **C**ats **D**rink **M**ilk - **L**azy **C**ows **D**on't **M**oo - for 50 / 100 / 500 / 1000
 - A longer mnemonic helps to remember the order of Roman numerals from large to small:
My **D**ear **C**at **L**oves **X**tra **V**itamins **I**ntensely

Practise:

Rewrite in Arabic numerals:	Write in Roman numerals:
XXXI =	1302 =
XXIV =	1066 =
XL =	830 =
XC =	1830 =
CCCLXIX =	1958 =
CD =	1960 =
CDXLVIII =	1990 =
MCMXCVII =	2000 =

Assignment: Find more information on **chronograms**



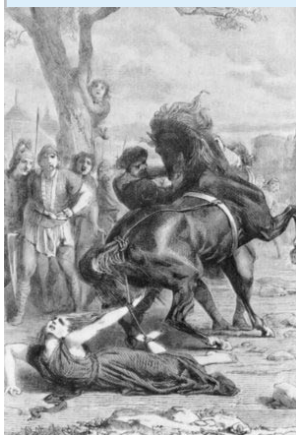
Chronogram at the village church of Spalbeek

3.3.6. A Frankish royal tomb.

In 1653 the tomb of the Frankish king Childeric I, who died in 481, was discovered at Tournai. It contained the Treasure of Childeric, his sword and other relics, including the 'golden bees'. Find more information.

A Merovingian Queen, Witch and Valkyrie.

According to a 13th C text, mentioned in Godefroid Kurth's *'Histoire poétique des Mérovingiens'* (1893), the Milky Way or Galaxy was called 'Brunelstraet' in Dutch or 'Road of Brunhilde'. This Brunhilde ('Brunehault') was a Frankish-Merovingian queen from the 6th C, married to Sigebert.



Brunhilde being dragged by a wild horse

A Shakespearean Drama:

Sigebert and his brother Chilpéric were the sons of Clotaire and grandsons of Clovis. At their father's death, the Frankish realm was divided between Sigebert (who was given Austrasia in the east) and Chilpéric (who received Neustria to the west). The brothers married Brunhilde and Galswinthe, the daughters of the king of the Visigoths. Shortly after her arrival Galswinthe was murdered by Chilpéric's mistress, Frédégonde. Determined to avenge her sister, Brunhilde urged her husband Sigebert to go to war. He won and Chilpéric fled to Tournai. Frédégonde, however, would not accept defeat and armed Chilpéric's soldiers with poisoned daggers. They stabbed Sigebert to death, but Brunhilde and her son Childebert managed to escape. As regent for her son, she came into further conflict with the nobles and her brothers-in-law. After the death of Childebert and of her two grandsons, she herself was killed in a ghastly way by Chlotarius, son of the woman who had been responsible for her sister's strangulation. A lively account of these dangerous times can be found in the writings of Bishop Gregorius of Tours.

Afterwards, this ill-fated woman's turbulent life gave rise to numerous folklore legends which gradually changed her into a witch with demoni(a)c powers. In Wallonia and the north of France, roads, ruins, burial mounds, etc carried her name. The straight Roman roads, of which people later thought that they could not have been built by human hands, were attributed to the Merovingian witch, who made them in order to go from place to place and carry out her evil plans. The Brunhilde menhir at Hollain is one of the few remaining standing stones that were named after her. Local belief has it that this was the spot where the wild horse, which dragged Brunhilde to her death, dropped down. Some historians claim that the Valkyrie Brynhilde from the Icelandic sagas derived her name from this Frankish queen. (See also *The Song of the Nibelungs*)

(Inspired by and translated from Huet, L., *Mijn België*, Amsterdam/Antwerpen: Uitgeverij Atlas, 2004)

4. The Middle Ages.

4.1. The Feudal Period.

Fill in the blanks and choose from the five boxes.

Godfrey of Bouillon
Philip the Bold
William the Conqueror
Philip IV the Fair
Matilda
Jacques de Chatillon
Alfred the Great
Edward III

Westrozebeke
Bruges
Ypres
Woeringen
Ghent
Holland
Friesland
England

convents
beguinages
belfries
Relic of the Holy Blood
stronghold
Holy Sepulchre
wool
charter

trade unions
vassals
Crusaders' widows
governor
regent
representative

feudally
clothmaking
independent
confusing
present(-day)
strategic

County of Flanders

During the 9th and 10th C the Vikings appeared, raiding and settling. Feudalism developed as a defence against these invaders from the North. In Flanders (and Hainaut), the powerful Counts of Flanders emerged at this time. Although nominally of the Kings of France, the counts took over more and more land and became virtually by the middle of the 11th C.



The royal signet of Baldwin Iron Arm

- The first Count of Flanders was Baldwin I Iron Arm (ruled from 864 to 879), who carried off and married a daughter of Charles the Bald, Judith, who had already been the wife of two English princes. Around 867, he built his great castle at Baldwin II the Bald (879 – 918), a child of this marriage, built the walls of and , and married a daughter of England's

- The importance of Flanders in 11th C Europe is demonstrated by the fact that in 1060 Baldwin V of Lille (1037 – 1067) was made for the French king Philip I, who was considered too young to become king. The daughter of Baldwin V, , shared the English throne with Baldwin's son, Baldwin VI of Mons (1067 – 1071) married the widow of the Count of Hainaut, thus becoming ruler of that province, too. The son of this marriage, Robert I the Frisian (1071 – 1093), also ruled over and

• In the 11th C the county was enlarged by the marshlands of 'The Four Trades' (de Vier Ambachten) and, beyond the Scheldt, by the Land of Aalst. This meant that the County of Flanders was dependent on two realms; the largest part, Crown Flanders, belonged to France while the rest, designated as Imperial Flanders, depended on Germany. It was not a large area but, in northwest Europe, it was of great importance. It covered what is now the provinces of West and East Flanders, Zeeland Flanders (Zeeuwsch Vlaanderen) and the northern part of the French Département du Nord, the region stretching from Dunkirk to beyond Lille.



Robert II of Jerusalem

Godfrey of Bouillon

Christ leading the Crusaders

- At the end of the 11th C Pope Urban II called upon the Christian knights of the West to free Jerusalem and the from the infidels. The Counts of Flanders answered this call, took part in the Crusades and became even more famous:
 - Robert II of Jerusalem (1093 – 1111) joined on the First Crusade, acquiring the title 'Lance and Sword of Christendom'.
 - Thierry/ Derrick/ Dietrich of Alsace (1128 – 1168) took part in the Second Crusade and brought back with him the
 - His son, Philip of Alsace (1168 – 1191) was a hero of the Third Crusade.
 - Baldwin IX, Count of Flanders and Hainaut (1195 – 1205) led the Fourth Crusade and became Byzantine Emperor of Constantinople as Baldwin I of Constantinople.



Joanna of Constantinople



Margaretha of Constantinople

- When the daughter of Baldwin IX, Joanna of Constantinople (1205 – 1244), died, her sister, Margaretha II of Constantinople (1244 – 1278), became Countess of Flanders and Hainaut. Both sisters founded several in Flanders for single women and Joanna also founded important like the Bijloke in Ghent.

As feudalism waned in the 12th and 13th C the towns of Flanders such as Ghent, Bruges and Ypres achieved an astonishing economic prosperity and civic dignity, surpassed only by a few Italian cities. Importing most of their wool from, the Flemish towns became the principal markets of northwest Europe and maintained an almost complete independence from France. The Flemish towns expressed their liberty by construct-



Beguinage Ten Wijngaerde (Bruges)

ing tall _____, which were practical as well as symbolic, serving as watch-towers with warning bells, refuges, meeting-places and jails. The autonomy of towns, won and preserved only through great struggle and sacrifice, was the ancestor of today's still fiercely defended local government of communes.

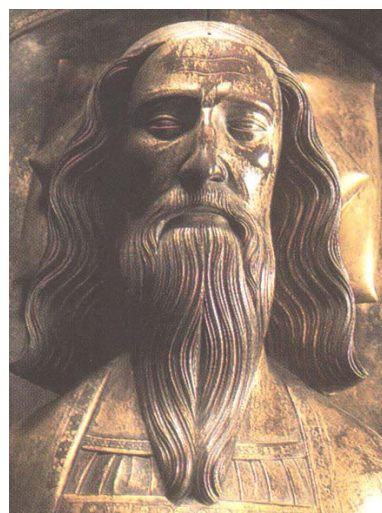
But at the end of the 13th C, _____, king of France, and his nobles were determined to reassert their authority. They wanted to regain their privileges and break the power of Count Guy of Flanders, of Dampierre (1252 – 1305). To protect himself the count of Flanders had entered an alliance with England. The French king, however, managed to break this alliance, annexed Flanders (in 1300), put Guy ("Gwijde") of Dampierre in prison and sent _____, a French nobleman, into Flanders to rule as _____. Although the Flemish towns revolted and routed the French nobility at the Battle of the Golden Spurs in 1302, by 1322 the francophile Count Louis I of Flanders and Nevers (1322 – 1346), great-grandson of Guy of Dampierre, had succeeded in reducing Flanders to being virtually a French province.

Local rivalries, the jealousies of the guilds (protective associations which may be regarded as the ancestors of the _____), the tyranny of the urban oligarchy over the country people and, later, changing trade routes and the emigration of many weavers to England all combined to bring about a long period of instability. Here is a brief summary of some of these _____ events:

1338 Jacob of Artevelde, of Ghent allied the Flemish towns with England's _____ during the opening stages of the Hundred Years War.



Jacob of Artevelde



Edward III of England



John I the Victorious,
Duke of Brabant

1346 Louis II of Male (1346 – 1384) became Count of Flanders. Like his father, Louis of Nevers, he supported the French kings, which brought him into conflict with the mercantile towns.

1382 Philip of Artevelde (son of Jacob) defeated Louis of Male and took Bruges, but later the same year was defeated and killed by the French at the Battle of _____, near Ypres.

1384 Death of Louis II of Male; His daughter and heiress, Margaret of Flanders, who had married Philip of Valois, Duke of Burgundy, became Countess of Flanders as Margaret III of Male, of Burgundy (1384–1405), married to _____ of Burgundy.

Duchy of Brabant

With the Treaty of Meerssen (870) Louis the German acquired the Dutch territories of his brother Lothair. This became the Duchy of Lower-Lorraine, a part of the German Empire, later the Holy Roman Empire. For a long time, the development of the principalities of Brabant, Limburg, Namur and Liège, in the German fiefs/feoffs east of the Scheldt, progressed at a slow pace. But, in the 11th and 12th C the Counts of Leuven enlarged their territory and became the Dukes of Brabant. Eventually their duchy covered the present-day provinces of Dutch and Flemish Brabant, the province of Antwerp and part of Limburg (which at that time was not the same as today's Limburg). Inside the Duchy, the city and seignery of Mechlin (Mechelen) remained an enclave with a certain degree of independence, until the end of the 18th C. Here are some of the important events in Brabant.

- In 1085, Henry III, Count of Leuven and Brussels, became Landgrave of Brabant
- On Pentecost 13 May 1106, the Holy Roman Emperor Henry V appointed Godfrey I the Bearded, the Courageous or the Great, Landgrave of Brabant and Count of Brussels and Leuven/Louvain as Duke of Lower Lorraine/Lotharingia. Thus, Godfrey I became the of the German Emperor in the territory between the North Sea, the Scheldt and the Rhine. At the same time he was also appointed Margrave of Antwerp.
- Henry I, the Warrior (1183/1184 – 1235) was the first real Duke of Brabant and succeeded his father, Godfrey III, the Valiant as Duke of Lower Lorraine.
- John I of Brabant, also called John I the Victorious won the Battle of and came to reign over the Duchy of Limburg.
- In 1355, at the death of her father John III the Triumphant, of Brabant, daughter Joanna (Jeanne), Duchess of Brabant and her husband, Wenceslas of Luxembourg, became rulers of Brabant and Limburg. In 1356 they were forced to sign the Joyous Entry/Entrance, a declaration of rights that became a form of for Brabant.

Prince Bishopric of Liège



Perron Liège

Besides the County of Flanders and the Duchy of Brabant, there was a third territory which became a powerful state in the (late) Middle Ages, the Prince Bishopric of Liège/Luik. Like Brabant, it was a part of the Holy Roman Empire. Its territory included most of the present Belgian provinces of Liège and Limburg and some enclaves in other parts of Belgium and the Netherlands. Since it was situated between the French and German Empire, the Prince Bishopric was of great importance. Here are some of the highlights:

- Already a centre of learning in the 9th C, Liège enjoyed a golden age under the vigorous Bishop Notger, who was appointed in 972. Having raised the see to a position of real territorial power, he was nominated Prince Bishop by Otto I. This title was passed on to his successors for almost 800 years. The principality covered two-thirds of present-day Wallonia.
- The history of Liège is rife with quarrels between prince bishops, municipal authorities, wealthy merchants, landed gentry and tradespeople. In 1198, Prince Bishop Albert de Cuyck granted his people a charter, giving them more rights and freedom.
- It was only the threat of invasion that brought an end to the squabbles, as in 1213, when the people of Liège defeated Duke Henry II of Brabant and again, in 1343, when the people supported Prince Bishop Adolphe de la Marck against Brabant. In return they demanded and were granted the representative Council of XII.
- The County of Loon, which came into being in the 11th C, growing from the fortress of Borgloon, largely coincided with the province of Limburg. In 1366, the Bishop of Liège bought all rights to the

territory from the last Count of Loon, incorporating this Netherlandic area into the Princely Bishopric. Until the end of the 18th C this poorly developed area remained under the shadow of Liège.

Adapted from: - Blyth, D., *Belgium*, 9th edition. London: A1C Black, 2000 (Blue Guide)
 - Decavele, J., *Vlaanderen*, Gent: Snoeck-Ducaju & Zoon

Tip: <http://agiasofia.com/emperors/fall1204.html> (great website, great tune)

4.1.1. Comprehension.

1. From which three 'states' did present-day Belgium develop?
2. Did these three 'states' have the same size and shape as their namesakes of today?
3. Can you illustrate the importance and fame of the County of Flanders with examples from the text?
4. How did France react to the growing independence of Flanders in the 13th C?
5. The 14th C was a period of instability for the County of Flanders. Which reasons for this are mentioned in the text?
6. Why is 1106 such an important date in the history of the Duchy of Brabant?
7. Was the seigneurie of Mechlin completely ruled by the Duchy of Brabant?
8. Why was the Prince Bishopric of Liège of such great strategic importance?
9. For how long did the Prince Bishopric of Liège exist?
10. What do you know about the County of Loon?

4.1.2. Vocabulary. Look at the examples and complete the chart.

king & queen	kingdom/realm
emperor & empress	empire
count & .....	.....
duke & .....	.....
..... gentry (landadel)	landed estate / landed property
..... nobility	
prince & .....	..... / principedom
prince bishop /
	princely /
	s.....
seigneur / seignior (AmE)	..... / ..... (AmE)
..... / liege man	fief /

These do not appear in the text, they just complete the chart:

baron &	barony
..... /marquess § marquise	marquisate
viscount & .....	.....

4.1.3. Vocabulary. Look at the examples and complete the chart.



Bernard of Clairvaux

king	palace / castle
farmer	farm(house)
beguine	.....
monk	.....

nun	.....

missionary	.....
merchant	..... town
	trading town
	Hansa / Hanseatic town
refugee	.....

Notes:

- One English word for 'graaf' is 'count'. But there are two other words which have a translation in English: 'margrave'/'margravine' ('markgraaf/-gravin')
'landgrave'/'landgravine' ('landgraaf/-gravin')
- Another English word for 'graaf', however, is 'earl'
- The word 'see' is also used in: the Holy See / the See of Rome (de Heilige Stoel)
the Apostolic See (de Apostolische Stoel)
- The lord of a 'liegeman' or 'vassal' is a (.....)
- A 'baronet' is lower in rank than a baron but higher than a knight.
- A 'priory' is a Christian religious house or group of monks/nuns living together, which is smaller and less important than an abbey.
- When 'Hansa' is spelled 'Hanse' then we mean the Hanseatic League and not the town.
- Make sure that you know the meaning of the words and pronunciation.
E.g. What's the English word for 'burggraaf'?
How do you translate 'seigneurie'?
What's the difference in pronunciation between 'marquess' and 'marquise'?

4.1.4. Vocabulary. Find the words (from the text) for these definitions or vice versa.

- = a strongly defended place or position ('bolwerk', 'bastion', 'vesting').
Also figuratively used: e.g. The old London pubs are among the
last of male privilege.
- = the area governed by a bishop.
- = a domain or dominion ('heerlijkheid', landgoed) belonging to a seigneur/
seignior (AmE) ('landheer').
- / = an area governed by a vassal or liege man for his liege (lord).
- = a part of a country or a group of people of a separate race or nation,
which is completely surrounded by another.
- = a large religious house or building in which monks or nuns live.
- = a small religious house in which monks or nuns live.
- an abbot or abbess =
- a prior or prioress =
- = a person who governs in place of a king or ruling queen who is ill, absent or
still a child. (Have we ever had a (prince) regent?)
- = a person who represents the king or queen because they are somewhere else.
- = sbd who does not follow one's own religion; an unbeliever
(used especially in former times by Christians and Muslims of each other).

4.1.5. Vocabulary. Match a multi-word verb/phrasal verb from the text with its meaning.

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 1. carry off | a. be the same as; to cover the same area as (but also: to happen at the same time or during the same period) |
| 2. call upon | b. originate |
| 3. take part in | c. give to another person |
| 4. succeed in | d. abduct; kidnap |
| 5. bring about | e. ask somebody to do sth, especially formally; ask for help |
| 6. pass on to | f. participate |
| 7. coincide with | g. be full of (something bad) |

Do the same for these two **verbal expressions** which are used in the text.

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| 8. be rife with | h. cause to happen; create |
| 9. come into being | i. manage |

Harba lorifa

John I the Victorious, Duke of Brabant, has gone down in history as a magnificent and exemplary knight, a hero to his contemporaries. His Latin name was Jan Primus (or Cambrinus), and even today this name is still being used as a brand of beer or the name of some of the best pubs in Belgium, not to mention the champion Belgian draught horse Gambrinus du Fosteau.

When John I received word that his sister, Maria of Brabant, who was married to the French king Philip III, had been (falsely!) accused of witchcraft by one of her husband's ministers, he challenged him to a duel, killed him and hanged his body from the gallows at Montfaucon.

Like a true knight he also had a soft spot since he is believed to be the author of the love poem '*An Early Morning in the Month of May*', which features the intriguing words of "harba lorifa"

Scholars claim that this expression is derived from Provençal poetry and that it should read "herba flors fa" or "l'herbe fait des fleurs" (= the grass is blooming), the standard cry to warn adulterous lovers when the husband was near.

Others say that 'harba' is the oldest known name for Brabant and 'lorifa' refers to the 'l'oriflamme', a golden standard or flag.

In 1947 the song of '*Duke John of Brabant*' was composed and taught in schools all over Flanders. And so it is that John I has been singing 'harba lorifa' for a very long time...

(Adapted from Huet, L., *Mijn België*)



4.1.6. Assignments.

1. Choose a historical figure from the feudal period and write an 'inspired' text like the one on John I of Brabant. E.g. the robber baron (robber knight, actually) Guillaume de la Marck, surnamed 'le Sanglier des Ardennes' (the Wild Boar of the Ardennes), who appears in Sir Walter Scott's '*Quentin Durward*', the only Waverley novel that is not set in the Scottish Highlands or England, but in Belgium.
2. Sark (together with Jersey, Guernsey and Alderney) is one of the Channel Islands between England and France. It is politically part of the UK but it also has its own parliament. It is considered to be the last feudal state in Europe, with a 'seigneur' at its head. The parliament of Sark has 52 MPs, 40 'tenants' (= landowners) and 12 'concierges', who don't own land. Find out more about the problems that have arisen between Sark and the European Union.
3. When and how did feudalism arise? Why? How did this feudal system work? Different levels of lordship and vassaldom? Give an example and use names. When and why did feudalism wane? Traces of the feudal system? Etc.
4. Check Wikipedia ('Counts of Flanders') for a chronological list of the Counts of Flanders, from Baldwin Iron Arm (who ruled from 864 to 879) to Margaret of Male (1384 – 1405). Don't use a family tree since this will be too complicated. If necessary, adapt the list so that everything is on one page and see to it that the right-hand side of the page is a blank. Fill in these items on the right-hand side, linking them to the Counts of Flanders on the left:
 - the Vikings
 - Feudalism
 - the Crusades (1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, etc)
 - the Hundred Years War
 - the Black Death
 - the Battle of the Golden Spurs

- the Battle of Westrozebeke
- etc

Alternative: Do the same for the Dukes of Brabant, from Henry III of Leuven (who ruled from 1085/1086 to 1095) to Philip of Saint-Pol, Duke of Brabant between 1427 and 1430.

Alternative: Do the same for the Prince Bishops of Liège.

These lists can be used as the starting point for more assignments and presentations.

5. Do a presentation or write a paper on the Vikings.
 - Where did they come from?
 - When did they start their raids?
 - Where did they go? Where did they settle? Only in Europe?
 - Are there any traces left of these Vikings?
 - What is the link with feudalism?
 - The Normans, Normandy and William of Normandy.
 - Etc
6. The Crusades: Why and when? – Pope Urban II, the role of and promises by the Church – the Church of the Holy Sepulchre – Godfrey of Bouillon and the castle of Bouillon – dangerous journey – the leaders of the Crusades – massacres – symbols and relics – Peter the Hermit – the 1st Crusade, the 2nd Crusade, ... - the Peasants' Crusade – the Children's Crusade – the Counts of Flanders – Bernard of Clairveaux – the Jews – the Seljuks – Saladin – Baldwin IV the Leper – a timeline – traces and witnesses of the Crusades – Jihad – the Franks – Richard Coeur de Lion – the Order of the Knights Templar – ransom money – Constantinople - etc.
7. Make a list of interesting films or books (fiction, non-fiction, travel books) that deal with the Crusades. E.g. Ridley Scott's *'Kingdom of Heaven'* ; *'El Cid'* ; *'In De Schaduw van het Kruis'* by Jan Leyers; etc.
8. The Hundred Years War: When and why did it start? – How long did it last? – What were the parties involved? – Some of the battles – Consequences for the rest of Europe and Flanders in particular – the Black Prince – Joan of Arc – The Battle of Agincourt – Jacob van Artevelde and Edward III – wool – traces – Etc.
9. It has been alleged that the Black Death inspired one of the most enduring nursery rhymes in the English language. As with all nursery rhymes, there are many variations. In England it usually goes like this:



Black Death, a miniature

In England it usually goes like this:

Ring a ring o' roses
 A pocketful of posies
 Ashes ashes (or: Ah-tishoo ah-tishoo)
 We all fall down

For interpretations of this nursery rhyme you can check Wikipedia (Black Death), which also offers information on the Black Death in literature: e.g. a poignant eye-witness account by Agnolo di Tura; Edgar Allan Poe's short story *'The Masque of the Red Death'*, which is set in an unnamed country during a fictional plague that bears strong resemblance to the Black Death.

Find more information on the Black Death: What? – When? – Where? – How? – Consequences in Europe and Flanders/Belgium – How did the Church react? – Any interesting books on this subject? – Articles? – Films? – Traces – Etc.

10. Situate the Holy Roman Empire on a map of present-day Europe and find extra information.
11. Probably the most famous charter is the Magna Charta Libertatum in which the English king John Lackland was forced to concede to the demands of his noble vassals. Find more information on this and other charters like the Joyous Entry of Joanna of Brabant.

12. Explain the name 'Middle Ages': Where does it come from? – What does it mean? – Was it one uninterrupted period? – Early and Late Middle Ages – When did they begin and finish? – How do we look back on them? – Etc.



4.2. Christianisation and the monastic period (After: Blue Guide, Wikipedia)



Saint-Amand

In order to devalorize some pagan cults venerating animals of the forest, this miniature tells how St Amand, bishop of Maastricht and evangelist, constrained the bear, which devoured the mule, to carry his luggage.

After Clovis converted to Christianity (496), Christian scholars, mostly Irish monks, preached Christianity to the populace and started a wave of conversion. One of the great Christian apostles of Flanders was Saint Amand or Amandus (c. 584 – 675) After a pilgrimage to Rome, he was consecrated in France as a missionary bishop in 628. At the request of Clotaire II, he began first to evangelize the pagan inhabitants of Ghent, later extending his field of operations across Flanders. Initially he had little success, suffering persecution, and undergoing great hardship but achieving nothing, until the miracle of bringing back to life a hanged criminal changed the feelings of the people, after which he had many converts.

Under his supervision monasteries were established at Ghent and Mont Blandin, the first in Belgium. The monastery at Ghent was funded, and then joined, by the future Saint Bavo, who was inspired by Amand's preaching. In about 649 Amand, according to some authorities, served briefly as Bishop of Maastricht, and to others, of Tongeren or Liège.

At about this time he established contact with the family of Pepin of Landen, and helped Saint Gertrude and her mother Itta to establish the famous monastery at Nivelles. Thirty years before he had gone into the Basque country to preach, with little success; the inhabitants now asked him to return, and although he was by this time seventy years old, he undertook the work of evangelizing them, in which he seems to have been successful. Returning home, he founded several more monasteries, particularly in Belgium. He died in his monastery of Elnon (later Saint-Amand, near Tournai) at the age of ninety.

The 10th century saw the start of the monastic age proper. This received impetus from the Lateran Synod of 1059, which urged the clergy to live together as communities. During the First Crusade Count Robert II (1093 – 1110) was famous for his exploits and Godfrey of Bouillon played a leading role in the capture of Jerusalem. He was proclaimed king, but refused the crown, adopting instead the title of Defender of the Holy Sepulchre.

Count Baldwin X of Flanders (1172 – 1206) led the Fourth Crusade and in 1204 became Baldwin I, the first Latin Emperor of Constantinople. His daughters, the countesses Margaret and Joanna founded several beguinages in Flanders for single women and crusaders' widows.

The monastic movement flourished in this region in the 13th and 14th centuries, exercising a considerable influence on social, commercial and artistic life. The religious houses taught agriculture to the peasants, functioned as commercial concerns, worked mines developed forges and became skilled in metalwork. Their orders for church furnishings provided work for skilled craftsmen. Many of the monks were artists of genius, responsible for delicately illuminated manuscripts, metalwork, painting and sculpture. But the wars fought in this region led to the ruin of many religious houses.



4.2.1. Match the underlined words with the correct synonym / definition

1.	a force that moves something along
2.	a furnace or hearth where metals are heated or wrought; a smithy.
3.	a chamber that is used as a grave
4.	to oppress or harass with ill-treatment, especially because of race, religion, gender,
5.	to deliver a sermon
6.	furniture, appliances, and other movable articles in a home or other building.
7.	to adorn with ornamental designs, miniatures, or lettering in brilliant colors or precious metals.
8.	to persuade or induce to adopt a particular religion, faith, or belief
9.	a place where persons under religious vows of seclusion live.
10	military expedition undertaken by European Christians in the 11th, 12th, and 13th centuries
11.	a person who believes in no god
12.	collection of small houses surrounded by a wall and occupied by a community of Beguines.
13.	people appointed to carry on religious work.
14.	to announce officially and publicly
15.	one who has been converted, especially from one religion or belief to another
16.	brilliant act or deed, feat
17.	suffering

4.2.2. Fill in the grid

VERB	PERSON	NOUN
		conversion
	pilgrim	
		mission
to persecute		
	monk	
		preaching / sermon
to evangelize		
	clergyman	
to crusade		
	beguine	

5. The Burgundian Netherlands

(Adapted from Blue Guide and Wikipedia)

- Philip II, the Bold (1364–1404)
- John, the Fearless (1404–1419)
- Philip III, the Good (1419–1467)
- Charles I, the Bold (1467–1477)
- Mary of Burgundy (1477–1482)



In 1477, the territory of the Duchy of Burgundy was annexed by France. In the same year, Mary married Archduke Maximilian of Austria, giving the Habsburgs control of the remainder of the Burgundian Inheritance. Although the Duchy of Burgundy itself remained in the hands of France, the Habsburgs remained in control of the other parts of the Burgundian inheritance, notably the Low Countries and the Free County of Burgundy in the Holy Roman Empire, until the late 18th century, when the Austrian Netherlands were lost to the French Republic.

In the history of the Low Countries, the Burgundian Netherlands refers to the period when the dukes of Burgundy ruled the area, as well as Luxembourg and northern France from 1384 to 1477.

A fair share (but not most) of these territories were inherited by the Burgundian dukes, a younger branch of the French royal house of Valois in 1384, upon the death of Louis de Mâle, count of Flanders. His heiress, Margaret III of Flanders had married Philip the Bold (1342–1404), the first of the Valois dukes of Burgundy, who thus inherited the counties of Flanders, Artois, Rethel, Burgundy, and Nevers. Together they initiated an era of Burgundian governance in the Low Countries.

In 1419 Duke Philip the Good (grandson of Philip the Bold) succeeded to the countship of Flanders. Ruling until 1467, he consolidated Burgundian power. The Burgundian territories were expanded with the county of Namur in 1421, the duchies of Brabant and Limburg in 1430, the counties of Hainaut, Holland and Zeeland in 1432, the duchy of Luxembourg in 1441 and the duchy of Guelders in 1473.

Philip the Good was determined to assert monarchical authority. In 1438 he forced Bruges to surrender many of its privileges and in 1453, after an unsuccessful revolt, Ghent suffered the same fate. At the same time Philip tried to foster the towns' economic prosperity, amongst other things prohibiting the import of English cloth and encouraging the Antwerp fairs. In 1430, in Bruges, he established the Order of the Golden Fleece, partly in compliment to the Flanders wool-weavers and partly in glorification of his own house and court. In 1465 he summoned representatives of all the provinces (States) to a States General in Brussels.

Philip was succeeded in 1467 by his son Charles the Bold. He imposed absolute rule on Liège, acquired Alsace and by marrying Margaret of York, cemented his alliance with her brother Edward IV of England. Disappointed in his efforts to be declared king, he undertook a disastrous campaign in Lorraine and was killed at Nancy in 1477, leaving his lands in turmoil. The duchy of Burgundy reverted to the French crown (Salic Law)

His successor, his daughter Mary, held virtually a prisoner in Flanders, was forced to sign the Great Privilege, a charter conferring far-reaching rights on the provinces. In the same year she married Maximilian of Austria. Thus the Burgundian federation in the Netherlands, created by Philip the Good, passed to the Habsburgs.

5.1. Combine the events in the box with the correct duke (see pictures)



Philip the Bold



Philip the Good



Charles the Bold



Mary's tomb effigy in the Church of Our Lady, Bruges

assert monarchical authority – Order of the Golden Fleece – absolute rule – Louis de Mâle – cement an alliance – Margaret of York – foster economic prosperity – Great Privilege – States General – Edward IV – Habsburgs – Margaret III of Flanders – surrender privileges – Nancy

1. Philip the Bold	
2. Philip the Good	
3. Charles the Bold	
4. Mary of Burgundy	

5.2. The Golden Fleece.



Neck Chain of a Knight of the Order of the Golden Fleece, shown in the Schatzkammer in Vienna, Austria.

Neck Chain of the Herald of the Order.

In the year 1430, three days after his wedding with the Infanta Isabella of Portugal, Philip the Good, Duke of Burgundy established the Order of the Golden Fleece, in Bruges. He did it "Out of respect for God and for the advancement of the Christian Faith". His major objective, however, was to tighten the bonds between his vassals, friendly foreign princes and himself, settling any disputes that rose between the knights through the order. It was modelled on the *English Order of the Garter* but dedicated to the blessed Virgin and Saint Andrew. The order took as its symbol a golden fleece. This may refer to the great wealth obtained from the wool trade or it may indicate a connection with Jason and his voyage to Argo, bringing back the sacred Golden Fleece from the edge of the known world.

Like the Order of the Garter, the Order of the Golden Fleece was restricted to a limited number of knights, described as chevaliers and companions, initially 24, but increased to 30 in 1433 and 50 in 1516, plus the sovereign. Noteworthy is that at the time of Charles V, both his opponents, Francis I of France (1515) and Henry VIII of England (1505) were members of an order with Charles V as its sovereign.

The Order of the Golden Fleece received some privileges unusual to any order of knighthood:

- The sovereign undertook to consult the order before going to war.
- All disputes between the knights were to be settled by the order.
- At each Chapter the deeds of each knight were held in review, punishments and admonitions were dealt out to offenders and to this the sovereign was expressly subject. During these gatherings, church services alternated with festivities, political matters were discussed and new knights elected. Unlike the Order of the Garter the Golden Fleece under the Burgundians never established a permanent seat, although such had been originally intended. The Chapters were held wherever The Order's Sovereign was then installed.

On their appointment all knights received the chain of the Order and a copy of the written statutes, which precisely described the duties and obligations of membership. The name of the Order and its badge, a pendant sheep's fleece made of gold, was a new device for the House of Burgundy. It was intended to represent the fleece sought by Jason and the Argonauts, a heroic legend which paralleled the Arthurian origins of the Order of the Garter.

The badge was to be suspended from a collar adapted from an earlier livery badge to that of a fire steel resembling the Lombard B for Burgundy, throwing off flames and used to form the link of the collar of the Order with the Fleece suspended below. Twenty-eight fire steels alternated with pairs of rings always in gold. The statutes required that the collar was not to be enriched with jewels, to give all the knights equality. The front of the central link was to bear the motto *Pretium Laborum Non Viie* ('Not a bad reward for Labour) and on the reverse the motto *Non Aliud* (I will have no other). Non-royal knights of the Golden Fleece were not allowed to belong to any other order of knighthood.

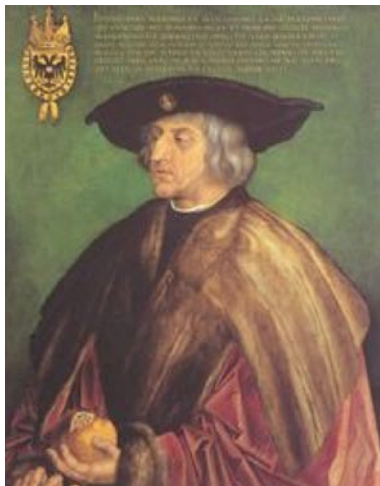
With the succession of Charles V, whose territories spanned most of continental Europe, organising Chapters became impractical. The Golden Fleece came to be an élite society or companionship of sovereigns, princes and great nobles whose statutory duties became largely nominal by the middle of the 16th century.

When Emperor Charles abdicated the Spanish crowns and Sovereignty of the Netherlands to his son Philip in 1555, he had already resigned the title of Duke of Burgundy and the Chiefship and Sovereignty of the Golden Fleece three days earlier. Although the Treasure of the Order continued to be maintained at Bruges until the end of the 18th century, the real seat of the Order moved to Spain with the succession of King Philip II, to remain there until the death of the last Spanish Habsburg, Charles II in 1700.

He was succeeded by Philip of Anjou, a Bourbon. There followed a dispute between the houses of Habsburg and Bourbon, which resulted in the division of the Order into Spanish and Austrian branches. Members of the Spanish branch: Juan Carlos 1 King of Spain, Constantine II of Greece, Akihito Emperor of Japan, Beatrix Queen of the Netherlands, Elizabeth II Queen of the United Kingdom and Albert II, King of Belgium.

6. The Spanish period: 16th and 17th century

6.1. The House of Habsburg.



Maximilian of Austria

After the marriage of Maximilian I with Mary, heiress of Burgundy (the Low Countries) and the marriage of his son Philip the Handsome with Juana, heiress of Spain and its newly-founded empire, Charles V inherited Spain, Southern Italy, Austria and the Low Countries. In 1580 his son Philip II inherited Portugal and its colonies, thus ruling over an empire where «the sun does not set».

Under Maximilian II, the Habsburgs first acquired the land upon which would later be erected the Schönbrunn Palace: the Habsburgs' summer palace in Vienna and one of the most enduring symbols of the dynasty.

After the April 21, 1521 assignment of the Austrian lands to Ferdinand I from his brother Emperor Charles V (also King Charles I of Spain) (1516-1556), the dynasty split into one Austrian and one Spanish branch. The Austrian Habsburgs held (after 1556) the title of Holy Roman Emperor, as well as the Habsburg Hereditary Lands and the Kingdoms of Bohemia and Hungary, while the Spanish Habsburgs ruled over the Spanish kingdoms, the Netherlands, the Habsburgs' Italian possessions, and, for a time, Portugal. Hungary, nominally under Habsburg kingship from 1526 but mostly under Ottoman Turkish occupation for 150 years, was reconquered in 1683-1699.

The Spanish Habsburgs died out in 1700 (prompting the War of the Spanish Succession), as did the Austrian Habsburgs in 1740 (prompting the War of the Austrian Succession). However, the heiress of the last Austrian Habsburg (Maria Theresa) had married Francis Stephan, Duke of Lorraine, (both of them were great-grandchildren of Habsburg Emperor Ferdinand III, but from different empresses) and their descendants carried on the Habsburg tradition from Vienna under the dynastic name Habsburg-Lorraine.

6.1.1. Fill in the missing words.

zealous	regent	grievances
declare of age	governor	abdicated
heretics	relinquish	subdued
sprawling	appointed	dominions
decreed		

When Mary died in 1482, **Maximilian** became regent. He made peace with France and (1) the whole of the Netherlands. Following his election to Holy Roman Emperor in 1494, Maximilian handed the Netherlands to his son, Philip the Handsome. When Philip died in 1506, the Burgundian lands passed to his six-year-old son Charles, for whom his aunt, **Margaret of Austria** acted as a (2).

From 1513 to 1519 England's Henry VIII occupied Tournai in the course of his war with France. The States General Charles (3) in 1515. He became king of Spain the following year and Holy Roman Emperor in 1519. Ruling as **Charles V** (Charles Quint) he succeeded to all the Habsburg (4). Although he (5) the Austrian territories to his brother, he still held Spain, Sardinia, Naples, Sicily and Milan, Burgundy and the Habsburg lands in Alsace and the Netherlands, which he extended to include Friesland, Utrecht and Groningen.

In 1530 he (6) his sister, **Mary of Hungary**, as (7) of the Netherlands. This region had now become reduced to a small corner of a (8) empire. Heavy taxes were imposed to finance wars of the absent ruler. Ghent rebelled in 1540, but the rebellion was firmly put down by Charles in person. He annulled the city's privileges and imposed a huge fine on the citizens. Charles' reign saw the rapid spread of Protestantism, particularly in the northern Netherlands, despite severe persecution such as under the Edict of Blood which (9) death for all convicted of heresy. Charles (10) in 1555 in favour of his son **Philip II of Spain**.

Philip, married to Queen Mary of Scotland, was a (11) Catholic who ruthlessly persecuted (12), introduced the Jesuits into the Netherlands, and built several Spanish garrisons. This fuelled opposition and stimulated the spread of Protestantism. Much of the opposition sprang from religious and social (13), but the nobles had more selfish reactions to rebel as they were resentful of the increasing centralization of power into Spanish hands and the loss of their power of patronage under Philip's plan for the reorganization of the Church. Philip's reign also saw the separation of the North from the South (i.e. what would become modern Holland and Belgium) and the emergence of the House of Orange.

6.1.2. Charles V.

- 1500** Born in Ghent as the eldest child of Philip the Handsome and Joan, daughter of the very catholic Spanish kings. Later she was called “the mad”.
- 1501** At the age of one he becomes a member of the Order of the Golden Fleece.
- 1506** Death of father Philip the Handsome at the age of 28. Charles inherits the Burgundian territories, most notably the Low Countries and Franche-Comté. Until 1517 Charles will be educated by his aunt, Margaret of Austria, who, as Charles is a minor, assumes the regency. Eminent artists and philosophers are invited to the Court in Malines (Albrecht Dürer, Erasmus, Thomas More and also Adrianus of Utrecht, who later in history will become Pope of Rome). He was brought up to speak French, Dutch, Spanish and some German. He was said to speak Spanish to God, Italian to women, French to men, and German to his horse.
- 1515** Grandfather Emperor Maximilian of Austria pronounces the emancipation of Charles in the Magna Aula of the palace in Brussels. Charles tells his people: “Be good and loyal subjects and I shall be a good prince to you”.
- 1516** On the death of his grandfather Ferdinand II of Aragon, Charles succeeds to the throne of Spain. He inherits Aragon, Navarre, Naples, Sicily and Sardinia. With the Castilian crown he also gains Granada and the Spanish possessions in the New World. He is crowned in the Brussels Cathedral.
- 1519** After the death of his grandfather, Emperor Maximilian of Austria he inherits the Habsburg possessions in Austria. With the financial help of the Fuggers (he successfully bribes all the German princes to cast their votes for him) Charles of Spain, king of the Netherlands is elected Holy Roman Emperor and takes the name Charles V. The actual imperial coronation takes place in the Aachen Cathedral (Dom) in 1520.
- 1521** During the Diet of Worms, as Holy Roman Emperor, he condemns Luther as a heretic and outlaws him and his followers. In Ghent hundreds of protestant books are burnt in presence of the emperor.
- 1525** Charles defeats Francis I of France at the battle of Pavia. The French king is kept captive for a year after which he signs the humiliating Treaty in Madrid in 1526 in which he had to cede Burgundy to Charles. He has to give up all claims to Flanders, Artois, Tournai and to renounce all claims to Italy. Once released Francis declares the Treaty of Madrid null and void.
- 1526** He marries Isabelle, daughter of Emmanuel 1 of Portugal. Three children will be born, within wedlock, amongst them the eldest son, later to become the next king as Philip II.
- 1527** The Vatican, by the Treaty of Cognac, allies with Rome and Venice to assist the French against Charles V. They never expected the devastating action against the challenge to his growing power: 15.000 unpaid, starving and leaderless German mercenaries sack Rome and the Vatican, loot, burn, rape en spoil the paintings by writing graffiti on them. Charles virtually imprisons the pope and keeps him from annulling the marriage of Henry VIII and Catherine of Aragon (Charles’s aunt).
- 1530** Charles is crowned Holy Roman Emperor, this time by the pope himself, in Bologna. He was the last emperor to receive a papal coronation.
- 1532** Charles signs the Peace of Nuremberg with the protestant German princes, who are granted freedom of worship in return of military aid against the Ottoman Turks.
- 1535** 60 000 allied troops led by Charles V win a spectacular victory, taking the city of Tunis, capturing the bulk of Barbarossa’s fleet of 80 galleys.
- 1539** Charles V reaches a truce with the German protestants at Frankfurt. He puts down a rebellion in Ghent and strips the town of its privileges. The townspeople had refused to pay taxes to finance the war with France and had called in vain on the French king for help.
- 1540** After the rebellion of 1539 Charles demands the aldermen and leaders in Ghent to come and beg his pardon with nooses around their necks. About 20 of them are executed.
- 1546** Council in Trent to discuss the Catholic doctrine and reform of the church in the face of Lutheran ideas.



Emperor Charles wishes to reconcile the Lutherans who are dividing Germany by reforming the church's practices, possibly even permitting the clergy to marry.

- 1554 Philip of Spain receives the kingdoms of Naples and Sicily and the duchy of Milan from his father.
- 1555 Charles V abdicates in the Coudenberg palace in Brussels. The sovereignty goes to his son, Philip.
- 1556 Charles V hands over his remaining Spanish dominions in the Old and the New World to his son Philip. Charles signs the empire to his brother Ferdinand and retires to a remote monastery at Yuste. As king of Spain he is succeeded by his son Philip.
- 1558 After three years of solitude Charles dies.

(Chronicle of the World- Ed. Dorling Kindersley, London.) (Members' periodicals West-Vlaamse Gidsenkring Brugge.)

6.1.3. Reconstruct Charles' life with the help of the words in the box

Null and void	.....
The diet of	.....
Wedlock	.....
To renounce	.....
Galleys	.....
Adhere	.....
The emancipation	.....
Truce	.....
Devastating	.....
To assume	.....
Adamant	.....

Aula magna



Coudenberg Palace, Brussels

After 1430 when Brabant was annexed by inheritance to Burgundy, Philip the Good built new wings for the palace, embellished the park, and built the *Aula Magna*, the gigantic room for royal receptions and other pageantry. The first regular meetings of the States-General, composed of delegates from the middle class, clergy and nobility of the Burgundian Netherlands, were held there in 1465.

It was in this room that in 1515 Margaret of Austria formally relinquished her regency over the Low Countries to Charles von Habsburg, and the future emperor Charles V became the Duke of Burgundy. It was in this same room that 40 years later Charles V abdicated in favour of his son, King Philip II of Spain. During his reign, Charles V created Bailles Square (*Baliënplein* or *Place des Bailles*) in front of the

palace, built galleries and rooms in Renaissance style and constructed the Grand Chapel in late Gothic style in memory of his parents, Philip the Handsome and Joanna of Castile. In this chapel the treasure of the Golden Fleece was kept. (Now part of the Austrian crown jewels)

6.1.4. Main events in the revolt of the Netherlands.

decapitated	reign of terror	wrecked
assassinated	stronghold	penitent
truce	high treason	suspended
plummeted	defectors	estuary
general pardon	founded	foremost
boiling pot	dragged on	



Philip II wearing the collar of the Golden Fleece

1565 saw a bad harvest. Prices greatly increased. The urban workers were hit the hardest. War in the Baltic severely affected sea trade and in August 1566 the Iconoclastic Riots took place. Churches, seen as the bastion of the rich, were (1) as were monasteries.

With the problems that he had at home as well as in the Netherlands, Philip's best policy would have been one of tolerance and reconciliation. On Philip's orders, the Duke of **Alva** marched 9,000 men from Milan to the Netherlands. They arrived in August 1567. Alva started a (2). The nobles were arrested and sent to the Council of Troubles which was nick-named the 'Council of Blood' by the locals. The most prominent persons judged by the council were the counts of Egmont and Horne, who were arrested for (3), condemned, and on June 5th 1568 (4) on the Grand Place in Brussels.

Alva needed the royal government to be financially secure so in March 1569, he forced the Estates-General to approve a 10% sales tax which was to be outside of their control. The whole country reacted against the «Tenth Penny».

In November 1573, Alva was replaced by **Don Luis de Requesens**. He had been ordered to reverse the policy of repression. He issued a (5) to all those involved in rebellion and he officially withdrew the «Tenth Penny».

In 1576, Spanish soldiers devastated Antwerp. 7,000 of the city's population were killed and a third of the city was destroyed by troops who were there to save the city from northern rebels! The north and southern armies united in the 'Pacification of Ghent' which (6) all religious issues until a time that the States General could agree on a religious settlement.



William of Orange

In February 1584, **William of Orange** was (7). His death was a very heavy blow to the resistance movement. But by 1584, the hatred of Spain had become so entrenched in the northern regions and the rebels were so well organised that they continued the struggle. Parma, however, continued his advance and Antwerp fell in August 1585. Between 1565 and 1590, the population of Antwerp (8) from 105,000 inhabitants to 40,000.

Due to the almost uninterrupted rule of the Calvinist-dominated separatists, most of the population of the Northern provinces became converted to Protestantism over the next decades. The south, under Spanish rule, remained a catholic (9). Most of its Protestants fled to the North. Spain retained a large military presence in the South, where it could also be used against France.

Parma died in 1592 and just before he died in 1598 Philip II handed the Netherlands to his daughter Isabella and her husband Archduke Albert in the hope that as independent sovereigns they might be able to regain the United Provinces. This hope (10) on the insistence that Catholicism was to be the only religion and after more years of indecisive fighting the Twelve Years' (11) was agreed on in 1609.

The archdukes profited from the truce to consolidate Catholicism, in this very much helped by the Jesuits who by then were the most influential religious power in the country. The truce was a period of intellectual and artistic brilliance, with Rubens and Moretus in Antwerp and Justus Lipsius teaching at Leuven. Many ruined abbeys were rebuilt and decorated in the 17th century Baroque style. The Archdukes' Court at Brussels became one of the (12) political and artistic centres in Europe of that time, a (13) full of people of all sorts: from artists and diplomats to (14), spies and (15) traitors, from Spanish confessors, Italian counsellors, Burgundian functionaries, English musicians, German bodyguards to the Belgian nobles.

In 1618 the Thirty Years' War broke out and in 1621 Albert and Isabella resumed their campaign against the United Provinces. The fighting (16) on until 1648 when the Peace of Münster was signed. Not only was the independence of the United Provinces recognized, Philip IV also gave in to their insistence that the Scheldt be closed. Antwerp was ruined, not to recover until the re-opening of the (17) in 1795, and commercial prosperity shifted from the South to the North.



6.1.5. Assignments

1. Make a short presentation about the following people, concepts, events related to the Eighty Years' War.

1. Calvinism
2. Iconoclasm and repression
3. Philip II
4. States General
5. Margaret of Parma
6. William of Orange
7. Wilhelmus
8. Pacification of Ghent
9. John of Austria (Don Juan)
10. Twelve Years' Truce (1609–1621)
11. Oath of Abjuration
12. Alexander Farnese
13. The Fall of Antwerp
14. Archdukes Albert and Isabella
15. Maurits of Nassau

2. Discuss the following subjects

1. What similarities do you recognize between Flanders/Belgium and Holland?
2. What differences do you distinguish?

“DOGmatic (...) is certainly a word that we English have been known to use to describe the Dutch. The word that first springs to mind to describe the Flemish - or the Belgians - is PRAGmatic”
Richard Hill in *The Art of being Belgian* Europublications, 2005

3. Why was this period crucial in our common history?

“When you have been used to dodging Spanish laws, Austrian laws, French laws, Dutch laws and most recently German laws, it is only to be expected that people will continue to try and dodge Flemish and Belgian laws. Particularly as Belgians still regard the Belgian central government as a form of foreign occupation”
Derk-Jan Eppink

7. The Austrian Habsburgs (1713 – 1794)

(Abridged from the Blue Guide)

In 1700 Charles II, the last of the Spanish Habsburgs died childless. He willed the crown of Spain and the Spanish Netherlands to Philip of Anjou, grandson of Louis XIV. Quickly seizing the opportunity, Louis forced his grandson to hand the Spanish Netherlands over to France, whereupon England and Holland, both led by William III went to war. This ended with the Treaty of Utrecht (1713) France abandoned all claim to the Spanish Netherlands, which were placed under the sovereignty of the Emperor Charles VI of Austria.

In fact the territory of the Austrian Netherlands remained independent as it had been under the Spanish since the Union of Arras. Under the Barrier Treaty (1715) though, aimed at discouraging further French attacks, the Austrian Netherlands had to accept Dutch garrisons at Namur, Termonde, Tournai, Menen and Veurne.

Charles VI died in 1740, leaving no male heir. He had wanted his daughter Maria Theresia to succeed him, but many of the powers refused to accept her. This led to the War of the Austrian Succession. The French invaded the Austrian Netherlands, defeated the Dutch and English and in the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle the country was returned to Austria.

Under the Empress Maria Theresia's enlightened and popular governor Charles of Lorraine, roads and waterways were built, agriculture modernized and industry (coal and glass) encouraged. Both Maria Theresia and Charles of Lorraine died in 1780.



Emperor Joseph II

Her son Joseph II (1780-90) appointed his sister Marie Christine as governor to the Netherlands. Joseph immediately directed his government on a new course, full speed ahead. He proceeded to attempt to realize his ideal of enlightened despotism acting on a definite system for the good of all. The spread of education, the secularisation of church lands, the reduction of the religious orders and the clergy in general to complete submission to the lay state, the issue of the Edict of Tolerance (1781) providing limited guarantee of freedom of worship were undertaken at once.

His autocratic and impatient style aroused opposition and bitterness and, encouraged by the revolution in France, in 1789 in a local uprising the Austrians were defeated at Turnhout. Within weeks the whole country was in revolt and in January 1790 the United States of Belgium was declared. Two Belgian factions faced each other: democrats who wanted a revolutionary constitution and the nobles who wanted no significant change. Anarchy followed failure

to agree and by the end of the next year the emperor Leopold II (1790-1792) subdued the country by force and dropped Joseph's reform programme.

In 1792 war broke out between revolutionary France and Austria and two years later, in June 1794, general Jourdan finally defeated the Austrians at Fleurus. Belgium was under French occupation.

The Nassau Palace

The Nassau family obtained the Duvenvoorde mansion in the Rue Montagne de la Cour through marriage in 1404. Englebert of Nassau rebuilt the house and the private Chapelle Saint George at the close of the 15th century. Destroyed and subsequently rebuilt, the Nassau mansion became the property of William III of England. Marlborough lived here in 1706. After the Coudenberg Palace burnt down in 1731, the Hôtel de Nassau became the official residence of the Austrian governors. It was almost entirely rebuilt after 1756 by Charles of Lorraine and renamed the Ancienne Cour. It was here, in 1763, that the eight-year-old Mozart performed before the governor. Charles of Lorraine's apartments, with a monumental staircase and sculpture by Laurent Delvaux have been restored. A museum in the former apartments of Charles of Lorraine is dedicated to 18th century intellectual life.



Former residence of the Austrian governors



National library (Albertina), former Nassau Palace



A prince's hobby. The workshops of Charles of Lorraine

This exhibition presents the techniques and the artistic productions from the different workshops of Charles of Lorraine. He was mostly interested in scientific inventions and had workshops built in Tervuren. The exhibition presents 150 works in total; some pieces have been preserved, others have been recreated.

Exhibition: Musée du Cinquenaire - Parc du Cinquenaire
Brussels (28 March 2007 to 2 September 2007)

7.1. Comprehension

1. What events led to the Treaty of Utrecht? What did it stipulate?
2. Describe Joseph II's enlightened despotism. How did the country react to the plans?

8. Belgium annexed to France (1794 – 1814)

After a little over a year of military occupation Belgium was formally annexed as a part of revolutionary France (Oct. 1795). The measures now pushed through, going far beyond anything proposed by Joseph II and ruthlessly enforced, did at least have the effect of modernizing the region. The Church was persecuted, religious houses disestablished, buildings were torn down and church treasures scattered. The national administration was centralised and rationalized, ancient privileges were abolished and national conscription was introduced. Local opposition led to the Peasants' Revolt in October 1798. This was brutally suppressed by the French.

The reforms continued after Napoleon assumed power in 1799, though under a more acceptable form. A modern legal system, the Code Napoleon was established, the metric system was introduced, the industry profited from the vast market of the French empire and the Church and the state became reconciled.

Perhaps the most important change was the reopening of the Scheldt which led to the revival of Antwerp. Napoleon boosted recovery of the port by constructing a new naval harbour which he described as "a pistol aimed at the heart of England".

But despite all their improvements the French remained unpopular and the occupation of the country by the allies after Napoleon's defeat at Waterloo (June 1815) was welcomed with relief.

8.1. Comprehension questions

1. What measures introduced by the French led to the Peasants' Revolt?
2. Napoleon thoroughly reformed the country.
Discuss the Code Napoleon, and some economic measures.

Additional information Peasants' Revolt

<http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/02395a.htm> (Catholic Encyclopedia) extensive account

<http://www.zum.de/whkmla/military/napwars/boerenkrijg.html> (whlmla)

8.2. The Battle of Waterloo

1. Scene of the battle



The duke of Wellington at Waterloo

Waterloo was a village of little importance until 18 June 1815 when a furious battle was fought in the fields to the South. The battle involved an estimated 140,000 troops, out of which 39,000 are thought to have died. The hospitals in Brussels were so overcrowded that the wounded had to be tended in private houses. The site of the battlefield is now a major tourist attraction, with museums, cafés and souvenir shops. Yet, there are quiet fields and isolated farmhouses nearby where you can still sense some of the atmosphere.

2. The Duchess of Richmond's Ball

A run-down street behind the City 2 shopping centre on Rue Neuve was the setting of the famous ball held by Charlotte Gordon, Duchess of Richmond, on the eve of the battle. The house where the ball took place on 15 June 1815 stood at the corner of the Rue de la Blanchisserie and the Rue des Cendres. Byron, in the stanzas in *Childe Harold* beginning "There was a sound of revelry at night" perpetuated the story that Wellington had been taken by surprise by Napoleon's advance. It seems likely that Wellington had received the news beforehand but chose to attend the ball with many of his officers so as to allay any panic in the city. Many French-speaking Belgians had fought for Napoleon and the Allies were anxious that they should not join him again. Wellington, on hearing that the French were already at Quatre Bras, is said to have calmly finished his supper before asking his host: "Have you a good map in the house?" Nothing remains of the house, not even the commemorative plaque that was once attached to a wall.

3. The Wellington Museum

The Wellington Museum in Waterloo occupies a former Brabant coaching inn. Its geographical situation and the services which it offered enabled it to accommodate a large army staff. This was why on 17 June 1815 it was chosen as the headquarters of the Duke of Wellington, commander in chief of the allied armies facing the French forces under Napoleon. The Duke stayed at this inn on 17 and 18 June 1815. This was where, on the evening of the battle, he wrote the victory report on the campaign table.

4. Lord Uxbridge's leg



Lord Uxbridge's leg

A curious monument in the museum garden was put up by Lord Uxbridge, commander of the British Cavalry in memory of his amputated leg. The monument was originally erected in the garden of a house opposite where the leg was sawn off on the kitchen table. He monument was moved here after the house (number 204) was threatened with demolition

Additional information: <http://www.waterloo.be/home/index.cfm?id=239&l=2>

9. The United Kingdom of the Netherlands (1815 – 1830)



William I

United Kingdom of the Netherlands was the unofficial name used to refer to a new unified European state created from part of the First French Empire during the *Congress of Vienna* in 1815. This state was made up of the former Dutch republic to the north, the former Austrian Netherlands to the south, and the former Prince-Bishopric of Liège. The House of Orange-Nassau came to be the monarchs of this new state. William I faced a near-impossible task in attempting to unite two countries with different religions and societies

The intention was to provide a viable state to the north of France to counterbalance potential new French ambitions in this direction. It lasted until the southern provinces seceded to form Belgium in 1830, though Belgian independence was not formally recognized by the north until 1839.

At first, William made some progress: industry flourished, Antwerp prospered and education advanced as new lay schools and universities were founded. But there was much that the people in the South found unacceptable, such as the *equality* of representation in the States General when the South's population was nearly

double that of the North, the wide range of powers assumed by a Protestant and foreign king and the insistence on Dutch as an official language. The Catholic church was also unwilling to accept the principle of religious freedom.

By 1828, the country was approaching revolution. William's continuing obstinacy and his suppression of the opposition led to the Belgian Revolution in August 1830. During the performance of Auber's opera "*La Muette de Portici*" in the old Monnaie theatre in Brussels the audience left the theatre and hoisted the flag of Brabant and a revolt broke out. When negotiations failed King William I attempted to restore the establishment order by force, but the royal army under Prince Frederick was unable to retake Brussels in bloody street fighting, September 23 to 26. The following day a provisional government was declared in Brussels.

9.1. Comprehension questions

1. What were the positive results of the Kingdom of the Netherlands?
2. What grievances ultimately led to the independence of Belgium?

10. The Kingdom of Belgium (1830 -)

10.1. Leopold I.

On 20 January 1830 the London Conference recognized Belgium as an independent and “perpetually neutral” state. The crown was accepted by Prince Leopold of Saxe-Cobourg, who became Leopold I.

However, the Dutch did not easily give way. William invaded within days of Leopold’s taking the oath and only retreated when faced by French troops, who arrived at Leopold’s request. William next refused to accept the Twenty-Four Articles which set out the terms of the separation of the two countries and he held on in the citadel of Antwerp, which he only evacuated after assaults by the French and a blockade of the Dutch ports. Only in 1839 did William finally accept defeat, the independence and neutrality of Belgium now being guaranteed by the Treaty of London.

The new Belgian constitution ensured maximum rights for the people, the king receiving only minor executive powers. Thanks to this and to the king, who was both cultured and wise, Belgium made great economic progress keeping clear of the general European disturbances of 1848.

Leopold I (1790-1865) was a son of the Duke of Saxe-Cobourg-Saalfeld and uncle of Queen Victoria, over whom he long exercised a strong influence. As a youth he saw service in the Russian army, and later he fought in the campaigns of 1813-14. After Napoleon’s defeat in 1815, Leopold entered Paris with the allied leaders. In 1816 he married Charlotte, only child of the Prince Regent and heiress presumptive to the British throne. She died in childbirth the following year. In 1830 he was offered the throne of Greece. His second marriage (1832) was to Louise-Marie, daughter of King Louis-Philippe of France.

10.2. Leopold II.

In 1865 Leopold was succeeded by his son, Leopold II. A man of strong personality and considerable business acumen, he successfully steered neutral Belgium through the hazards of the Franco-Prussian War (1870). He helped foster the growth of commerce and transport and in 1885 established the Congo Free State in Central Africa under his own personal rule, having largely financed the exploration of the area. His reign also saw the official recognition of the Dutch language with the founding in 1886 of the Flemish Academy and the passing of the law in 1898 giving equal importance to Dutch and French. Qualified universal suffrage was introduced as early as 1893. Leopold II died in 1909. He was succeeded by his nephew Albert.

Leopold II had always been interested in colonial possibilities, in particular in Congo. In 1878 he founded the Comité des Etudes du Haut Congo, this developing into the International Association of the Congo, and the following year, at Leopold’s instigation, H. M. Stanley opened trading stations and made agreements with the chiefs. In 1884-85 the powers recognized the International (but effectively Belgian) Association as an independent State, the Belgian government at the same time authorizing Leopold to be sovereign, but also declaring that the link between Belgium and the Congo was exclusively personal. The venture brought Leopold great wealth, especially from the *Domaine de la Couronne*, a vast territory treated as the King’s personal property. In 1890, in return for financial investment, the Belgian government was given the right of annexation, a right which it exercised in 1908 under the pressure of serious international charges of gross maladministration (seizure of native land, monopolistic exploitation and even atrocities). The Congo was granted independence in 1960.

10.2.1. How is it said in the text “Leopold I + II”?

forever neutral	
was a member of the army	
presumed heiress	
while giving birth	
swear allegiance	
limited executive powers	
business instinct	
right to vote	
not involved in	
risky undertaking	
under Leopold’s impulse	
enormous stretch of land	

10.2.3. General Comprehension

1. What’s the link between Leopold I and the following names: Saxe-Cobourg, Queen Victoria, Russia, Charlotte, Louise Marie
2. When was the Treaty of London signed and what was its importance?
3. Leopold II’s reign brought considerable political and economic changes to the country. What do you know about: Congo Free State, the linguistic status of Dutch, qualified universal suffrage?



10.3. The two World Wars and the Interbellum

First World War (1914-1918)

Opening phase

As war loomed in July 1914, the British government reminded France and Germany that Belgium’s neutrality was guaranteed under the Treaty of London of 1839. Dismissing the treaty as a “scrap of paper”, Germany demanded that Belgium allow her troops free passage. Belgium refused on 3 August; that same night the German army crossed the frontier near Malmédy. Led by King Albert, the Belgian army made a brave if doomed stand against the mighty German army. After the fall of Liège on 9 August, the German army moved rapidly across the flat plains of Limburg and Brabant. The French were defeated near Charleroi on 23 August and the British army was forced to retreat from Mons on 25 August. Both armies fell back into France.

By the end of August, Namur, Leuven and Brussels had fallen to the Germans who now occupied most of central and southern Belgium. Antwerp was forced to surrender on 9 October, after which the Belgian army retreated through Flanders. By 15 October, the Allies had established a line along the Yser. The Belgians opened the sluices there on 29 October, creating a vast lake between Nieuwpoort and Diksmuide. The Germans took Diksmuide in November, but this was the limit of their advance; they transformed their main effort towards Ypres, where despite vast superiority, they were unable to break through the small British army. Both sides dug in for the winter to create the long line of trenches that stretched from Nieuwpoort to the Swiss border.

The occupation

In the small strip of their country that was still free the Belgians established their headquarters at Veurne, while the King made nearby De Panne the “capital”. The occupation was administered by German governors, who confiscated property and organized mass labour deportations to Germany and the front. The occupiers also seized raw materials and stripped Belgian factories of anything that might be useful in Germany. Despite strict controls on movement, thousands of Belgians escaped the country; its army maintained an average strength of 150,000 throughout the war.

Closing phase

The tide began to turn in June 1917 when British and Commonwealth troops took the ridge at Mesen, 9 km south of Ypres, though this was followed by the bloody and inconclusive Third Battle of Ypres which ended in the mud of Passchendaele. In March 1918, with troops freed by the collapse of Russia, the Germans launched their last and nearly successful offensive, but by June American troops and British reinforcements were pouring into France. The Belgian army took Diksmuide in September and by October had liberated West Flanders. On 11 November, Armistice day, the Canadians had entered Mons while the Belgians had reached beyond Ghent.

Fire and sword - The burning of Leuven in August 1914



War monument Leuven

On 25 August 1914, six days after entering Leuven, German troops set fire to the city. The Stadhuis and Sint-Pieterskerk were badly damaged and 1200 houses were totally destroyed. The university library, located at the time in the medieval cloth hall, was reduced to a smouldering ruin. Its famous collection of books was destroyed, including 500 manuscripts, 1000 incunabula and over 250,000 printed books. Historians are still not certain about the cause of the attack. Some believe that the German troops were thrown into confusion after a Belgian counter-attack came within 3 km of the town, and panicked when a horse bolted through the streets. Others say that they were ruthlessly pursuing a military plan to strike terror into the civilian population.

After the war Germany was required by the terms of the Treaty of Versailles to restock the library with books equal in value to those destroyed. Many universities in the United States and Britain contributed funds for the construction of the new library on Herbert Hooverplein. The names of the donors are carved in handsome calligraphy on the pillars of the arcade. Most of the destroyed houses were rebuilt in their old style in the 1920s. The reconstructions are marked by a plaque with the date 1914 and the symbol of a flaming torch and sword.



10.3.1. Assignment

Reconstruct the events of WW I using the following words / expressions:

Free passage – make a stand – be forced to retreat – fall back – sluices – dig in – trenches – seize – strip ... of
– “the mud of Passchendaele” – Armistice Day

Between the War (1919 – 1940)

Under the treaty of Versailles, Belgium was granted huge reparations. It also received a former German region in the east Ardennes, which included the towns of Moresnet, Eupen and Malmédy. Belgium’s neutrality was abolished, allowing the country to sign a pact with France in 1920.

Unqualified universal suffrage was introduced soon after the war’s end. One effect of it was to sharpen the Flemish question, and in 1921 Dutch was made the official language of Flanders. The same year also saw the signing of a customs, consular and railway union with the Grand-Duchy of Luxemburg.

Like other countries Belgium’s economic foundations and political institutions were badly shaken by the depression, and foreign trade, the country’s main livelihood virtually disappeared.

In 1934 king Albert, the much-loved and respected “Soldier King”, was killed in a climbing accident. He was succeeded by his son, Leopold III, whose reign started with tragedy when the following year his queen, Astrid of Sweden, was killed in a car crash while Leopold was driving.

In 1936, when Germany reoccupied the Rhineland, Leopold announced that Belgium’s policy was once again one of strict neutrality and he renounced all agreements on military aid.

10.3.2. Comprehension questions

1. What was the result of the Treaty of Versailles for Belgium?
2. What political changes were introduced after World War I?
3. Describe the tragic events that befell our royal family in 1934 / 35.

Second World War (1939 – 1945)

10.3.3. Fill in the gaps using the words in the box

Impregnable – deported – seize – pincer movement – reinforcements – a commoner – perimeter – relieve – counter offensive – swept – supply lines – allocation

Germany attacked Belgium and the Netherlands early on 10 May 1940. The German army (1) past the Liège forts, taking bridges over the Albert canal and destroying the supposedly (2) Meuse fort of Eben-Emael. As the Belgians retreated to their main line of defense between Leuven and Antwerp, the British and French moved in. (...)

The Germans reached the sea near Abbeville on 20 May. After the Germans took Leuven, Brussels and Antwerp, the Allies faced the danger of being surrounded and cut off from the sea by a German (3) from Abbeville in the south and Antwerp in the north. An attempt was made to break out of the trap by an offensive against the thin German line between Sedan and Abbeville, but when this failed a retreat to the coast was inevitable.

It was agreed with King Leopold that his army would cover this retreat. But the Germans broke through the Belgian line either side of Kortrijk and on 28 May Leopold surrendered. The immediate practical re-

sult was the disappearance of the Allies' northern flank. The British commander at once established his final (4) on the line Gravelines-Bergues-Veurne-Nieuwpoort in preparation for evacuation and, after a stand by the British between Ypres and Commines and an isolated French group near Lille, all the British divisions and many of the French were within this perimeter by 30 May. By 4 June the evacuation from the beaches between Dunkirk in France and De Panne in Belgium had been achieved. The Belgian government escaped first to France and then to England, but the king, considering himself a prisoner – of – war refused to desert his army

Occupation

The occupation followed the same grim pattern as that of the First World War, though this time not even a corner of Belgium remained free. Nor was it possible to escape over the border into Holland. Resistance again was often heroic, despite the Nazi regime of anti-semitism, concentration camps and the Gestapo. The king, a prisoner in the Brussels palace of Laeken, did what he could to help his people; he met Hitler at Berchtesgaden and negotiated the return of 50,000 prisoners and an improvement in the (5) of food supplies to Belgium. In 1941 he married Lilian Baelis, a (6) who received the title of Princesse de Réthy in 1941. When the Allies invaded France in June 1944, king Leopold was (7) with his family first to Germany and then to Austria.

The closing phase

The invasion of France began on 6 June 1944. By the end of August the allies were on the Belgian and German borders. The liberation of Belgium began in early September, the forces in the north being largely British and Canadian (under Montgomery) while those in the south were American (under Bradley). Brussels was liberated on 3 September, followed soon after by Ghent, Ostend, Bruges and Antwerp. The Americans liberated Charleroi, Mons and Namur on 3 September and by 10 September, Liège and Luxembourg. At the end of the month, the Canadians had forced the Germans back into Breskens corner at the mouth of the Scheldt, while east of Antwerp the British had crossed the Antwerp-Turnhout canal. By the winter, the Allied front line ran along the German frontier from Aachen to Wasserbillig in the Grand-Duchy of Luxemburg.

Hitler launched a (8) on 16 December under Von Rundstedt. Known as the Battle of the Ardennes (battle of the Bulge) this final desperate attack was aimed at the weak Allied centre, which ran along the German border from Monschau to Wasserbillig. Hitler planned to break through here, split the allied front and (9) Antwerp. By 25 December, an area known as "the bulge" had been formed containing the important crossroads at Bastogne, where the 101st Airborne Division had been sent. American and British (10) were sent to (11) Bastogne. A major Allied air offensive was launched against the German (12) on 23 December. By the end of the month, despite the snow and bitter temperatures, Patton's counter-attack was approaching Bastogne. Montgomery launched a second offensive from the north on 3 January. The two counter-attacks met at Houffalize on 16 January. By the end of January 1945 the Germans had been driven back beyond the Belgian frontier, having lost 120,000 men in the Battle of the Ardennes.

10.4. Post-war Belgium

King Leopold, who in the closing stages of the war had been deported first to Germany and then to Austria, was freed in May 1945 and moved to Switzerland, but found that he could not safely return to Belgium. A large sector of the population blamed him for surrendering to the Germans. He was also, though perhaps less justifiable, criticized for his relations with the Germans and his second marriage. His brother Prince Charles was appointed regent. In 1950 a referendum on whether Leopold should retain the throne gave him just 57 per cent of the vote and he abdicated in favour of his son Baudouin who ascended the throne in 1951.

In the 1950s Belgium was also one of the six founding members of the 1951 established European Coal and Steel Community and after the Treaty of Rome (1957) Brussels became the provisional headquarters. Belgium

also hosts the headquarters of NATO (1967). In 1960 the Congo was granted independence and under Mobutu became the state of Zaire.

In 1962 the Language Frontier between the Dutch-speaking north and the French-speaking south was established and constitutional reforms in the 1970s and 1980s, led to regionalization of the unitary state and to the establishment of a three-tiered system of federalism, linguistic-community and regional governments.

Belgium became divided into the three regions of Flanders, Wallonia and Brussels. Although geographically enclosed by Flanders, 85 per cent of the Brussels population is French-speaking. There is also a German-speaking enclave of some 60,000 people in the east of the country.

Since the Treaty of Maastricht in 1991 the economy was governed by the struggle to achieve the criteria for joining the European Monetary Union (1999) which led to the introduction of the Euro. In 2002, after years of austerity and curbs on public spending Belgium introduced the common European currency, the euro.

The Belgian economy reflects the polarized social structure: Flanders has become known for its high-tech industries whereas Wallonia is still struggling to find alternatives to the old heavy industry.

In 1993 King Baudouin died suddenly in Spain. He was succeeded by his brother Albert, who was crowned Albert II. Albert is married to the Italian Princess Paola Rufo di Calabria. Their three children are Philippe, Astrid and Laurent. Baudouin is survived by his wife, the Spanish noblewoman Fabiola de Mora y Aragon.

In 1999, after decades of Socialist and Christian Democrat governments, the Socialist, Liberal and Green parties formed a six-party coalition under the leadership of Guy Verhofstadt who was re-elected in 2003. The absence of Christian Democrats from the ranks of the government has enabled Verhofstadt to tackle social issues from a more liberal point of view and to develop new legislation on the use of soft drugs, same-sex marriage and euthanasia. Both of Verhofstadt's terms have been marked by disputes between the Belgian communities. The major points of contention are the nocturnal air traffic routes at Brussels Airport and the status of the electoral district of Brussels-Halle-Vilvoorde.

10.4.1. Comprehension questions

1. Describe the events that led to the so-called "royal question".
2. Explain: the 50s saw the origin of Belgium's international role.
3. What is meant by
 - a "a three-tiered government"?
 - a polarized social structure?
4. Why was 1999 a landmark in Belgian political history?
5. Explain a current political issue: devolution, environment, moral issues like euthanasia, soft-drugs.

11. A Short History ...

Fill in the blanks with words from the list, thus putting them in their historical context.

Find extra information (e.g. in a cultural dictionary or on <http://www.answers.com>) and present each item orally.

The dates are not very important, they just function as steppingstones for the exercise.

Anglican Church	Francis Drake
A horse! A horse! My kingdom for a horse!	hunchback-murderer
Anne Boleyn	Hundred Years War
Battle of Hastings	Ivanhoe
Battle of Poitiers	Joan of Arc
Bayeux Tapestry	Lackland
Black Prince	Magna Charta
Bloody Mary	Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots
Catholicism	Princes in the Tower
Coeur de Lion	Protestant heretics at the stake
Conqueror	Robin Hood
effigy	Virgin Queen
Elizabethan Age	William Shakespeare

1066

William of Normandy defeated Harald II of England at the and became King of England as William I, aka William the He was a ruthless king, crushing opposition to his policies and his pleasures with an iron fist (and not one in a velvet glove).

-
- Mathilde of Flanders
- Domesday Book

1189

Richard I, aka Richard becomes King of England, Duke of Normandy and Count of Anjou. His life was dominated by the passion to regain the Holy City of Jerusalem in what became the Third Crusade.

- John
-
- Sir Walter Scott / /



1356

Edward, aka the (in bold) was the son of King Edward III, who started the in 1337. He (=the son) defeated the French in the in 1356 and took the French King John II prisoner.



Tomb of Edward at Canterbury Cathedral

- Canterbury Cathedral (.....)
-

1483

Richard III became King of England after his brother, Edward IV, died. He himself died in 1485, after having been king for just over two years. The debate about him continues. Shall he be remembered as a visionary reformer and brilliant administrator, or as an ambitious usurper and ruthless? Sex Pistol John Lydon’s alter ego, Johnny Rotten, was based on his character in Shakespeare’s play of the same name.

-
- “Richaar Motherfucker” (Tom Lanoye)
-
- the Wars of the Roses

1509

Henry VIII ruled England from 1509 – 1547 and remains one of the most famous and controversial kings in the country’s history. He is said to have been an accomplished player of many instruments and a composer. “Greensleeves”, the popular melody, is sometimes attributed to him. Changing wives became a habit with our Henry.



Portrait miniature of Henry VIII

- / Hever Castle
- / the Act of Supremacy
- Sir Thomas More

1553

Mary Tudor became Queen of England as Mary I, aka (in bold). The daughter of Henry VIII and Catharine of Aragon, she married Philip II of Spain, who left England after 14 months of marriage, to return only once to bully Mary into declaring war on France. At her christening her father is claimed to have expressed the forlorn hope that “if it was a daughter this time, by the grace of God the sons will follow”.



Mary Tudor

- She restored
-

1558

Elizabeth I, known as the succeeded her halfsister Mary I as Queen of England. She had a clouded birth and a wretched childhood. Her mother, Anne Boleyn, was beheaded before she was three and she was immediately designated a bastard (but was not expelled from the royal circle). The period in which she reigned (2nd half of the 16th C) is sometimes called the and is thought of as a great period in English history.

- Her repression in (Catholic) Ireland was savage and permanently damaged Anglo-Irish relations
-
-
-

11.1

Do the same for other “great” nations: Belgium, Australia, USA, Canada, Japan, China, India, etc. Always start from 7 (more or less) dates.

12. Belgian history: sites

<http://www.belgianhistory.be/>

<http://www.history.com/encyclopedia.do?articleId=202599>

<http://www.zum.de/whkmla/region/lowcountries/burgundianperiod.html>

Low Countries (text + maps)

<http://www.metmuseum.org/toah/ht/08/euwl/ht08euwl.htm>

(The Met: timeline Art History + list of European rulers)

<http://www.hostkingdom.net/dynast.html>

History of Brabant

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Duchy_of_Brabant

Blijde Intrede

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Joyeuse_Entree

History of county of Flanders

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/County_of_Flanders

Medieval Belgium

<http://www.geographia.com/belgium/bxhis02.htm>

EXTRA

Belgium: battlefield of Europe



From Julius Caesar to Hitler's Blitzkrieg: throughout history numerous battles have been fought on Belgian territory. Therefore the epithet "battlefield of Europe" is more than justified. A few illustrious examples.

1. The battle of the Golden Spurs

(from P. Carson Flanders in Creative Contrasts)

When Robert of Artois' horse was brought down by William of Saaftinge into the mire of the Groeningebeek did this cousin of the French king think of his victory against the Flemings at Veurne in 1297? Was he still sure that he would be ransomed, now in 1302, or had he seen the summary handling of his brother-knights around him in the mud?

The French host had certainly shown signs of impatience. It was not prepared to restrain its attack. It may even had a certain contempt for the army facing it. But the Flemings knew that their existence depended on winning the battle, and that they could only do so if every man stood fast, every weapon was sharp and ready, every superfluous thought banished. They had no doubt clearly heard the French call to arms, at 6 'o clock, early on that July morning. They had certainly seen the torches lit to warn the French garrison in the castle of Kortrijk and had placed the men from Ypres nearby to guard against a sortie.

The Flemish army was confronted by close to 2,500 French nobles as well as foot-soldiers, crossbowmen, and light foot armed with javelins. To fight was an expensive business: for his armour and only one horse a knight would pay the equivalent of 15 mares or 23 oxen. This French force was led by men with such resounding names as Raoul de Nesle, Constable of France, and Robert of Artois, cousin of the French king, and son of the Robert killed on the seventh crusade at Mansourah when Louis IX, Saint Louis, was taken prisoner by the Moslems.

Prayers were said in both camps, efforts were made by the Franciscans acting as chaplains to keep the morale high. Guy de Namur knighted the Flemish leader from Bruges, Pieter De Coninck and his two sons as well as about thirty more of his fellow townsmen from Bruges. Descriptions of troops were made: the Flemish right, under William of Juliers was protected to some extent by the stream called Grote Beek. The centre, which was made up of men from the area around Bruges and from West-Flanders, was drawn up behind the same stream and the Groeningebeek. Troops from East Flanders, including Aalst, Oudenaarde and Ghent formed the left and the reserves waited under the command of John of Renesse. The men of Ypres were to guard the castle with its French garrison and stop any attacks from behind. All the troops had been ordered not to give ground; not to bend before the onslaught of the French cavalry. It has been calculated that 100 knights on horseback were the equivalent of 1,000 foot-soldiers. So, Flanders' 8,000 infantry would have no easy task against the 2,500 French knights.

The Flemings were well-armed with pikes, spears and goedendags, which consist of a long club topped by a metal spike, and is really a fearful weapon. They were the pick of the urban militias, tough, determined and on this occasion, disciplined. (...)

As for tactics, with pikes thrust into the soft ground, room had to be left to swing and strike with the goedendags against a cavalry charge in which the knights rode flank to flank and when galloping covered 500 meters per minute and when one equalled 10 foot-soldiers. But the Flemish troops did not lose their heads. The sight and the noise of these tons of horseflesh galloping in serried ranks in a charge must have been terrifying. The

militias obeyed their instructions. They did not break ranks. Their nobles and leaders dismounted to fight alongside their troops. There was an extraordinary discipline and singleness of purpose. The French, unused to such opponents and such marshy, heavy ground became impatient. Their cavalry was ordered to charge across the Groeningebeek while their own foot was still in the way. The Flemings took no prisoners. The rules of the medieval military code were not observed. Everyone concentrated on the matter at hand. All the French commanders, except one, were slaughtered. Over 1,000 nobles died – almost half the knightly army. The remnants were chased all over West Flanders while their golden spurs were hung in the church in Kortrijk as a thank-offering. The Flemish troops, well led, well armed and single minded had astonished Europe with their efficiency. Pope Boniface VIII rose from his bed in the middle of the night especially to enjoy the news of this unimaginable defeat of his great enemy, Philip the Fair of France.

The victory of Kortrijk meant that French attempts to absorb Flanders were for the time at an end. From 1214 onwards when the Flemish Count, Ferrand of Portugal, had chosen the wrong side at the battle of Bovines and had been beaten, the French grip on all aspects of Flemish life, economic and institutional had been tightening. By the success of 1302 it was loosened. The urban oligarchies which had sympathized so closely with the French kings were never again so powerful. The towns tasted political as well as economical power. The counts had been warned of what might happen if they became too sympathetic towards their liege lords, the kings of France. The Battle of the Golden Spurs did not mean immediate and complete independence or sovereignty for Flanders but it showed what could be achieved in a moment of single-minded efficiency.

Luck has had it that details of the battle have not come down to us only in chronicles or accounts. In 1905 the warden of New College Oxford, discovered in one of the farms belonging to his college an oaken chest of which the large front panel was carved with scenes of a medieval battle. He bought it and placed it in his house. There it has remained ever since except when exhibited in Kortrijk in 1977. (...)

Experts in heraldry, dendrology, and the C14-method were called in, and an almost certain conclusion reached. This affirms that the oak planks date from about 1250, and the carvings from about 50 years later. In other words the soldiers, weapons, arms, buildings, flags and animals were carved shortly after the battle of the Golden Spurs in 1302. The work was probably carried out by craftsmen from Bruges who identified the men of their own town, and those from Ypres by including the urban coat of arms on the latter's tunics, and the men from Ghent by their banner. Because the carvings contain many banners with coats of arms it is possible to identify the town militias and even some individuals.

1.1. What synonyms does Carson use for the following words / expressions?

1.	mud	
2.	release in exchange for money	
3.	speedily, without ceremony	
4.	army	
5.	spear	
6.	hold back	
7.	be determined	
8.	battle cry	
9.	troops stationed at a military post	
10.	armed attack from place surrounded by enemies	

1.2. Mini dictionary of war I.

Complete the chart. Careful, the word stress may change.

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Noun</i>
to abdicate	abdication
to ally (oneself) to/with	.....
to strike an with	
to enter an with	
to avenge	.....
	revenge
to	battle
to besiege	.....
to lay to	
to	capture
to challenge	challenge
to accept a challenge	
to clash	.....
to cleanse (pronunciation!!!)	ethnic
to	collapse
to	combat
to (word stress!!!)	confrontation
to conquer	.....
to crush	crush
to dare	(to have the) guts/nerve/courage
to defeat	.....
to defend	.....
	defense (AmE)
to destroy	.....
to	exile
to fight	fight
to put up a (brave/good/poor) fight	
to flee	.....
to	fortification(s)
to hold out	.....
to	invasion

to (= to set free)	liberation
to make a stand against	(last)
to	massacre
to nuke (sbd) to kingdom come	X
to blow (sbd) to ...	
to knock (sbd) to ...	
to occupy	.....
to	opposition
to oppress	.....
to	pillage
to	provocation
to rack	rack (= an instrument formerly
to be racked by/with remorse/doubt/pain	used to torture people by
to rack one's brains	stretching their bodies)
to	raid
to raze to the ground	X
to (against)	rebellion
to reign	.....
to	resistance
to put up resistance	
to	retaliation
to retreat	retreat
	(in full retreat)
to	revolt / revolution
to riot	.....
to rise (up against)	.....
	up
to rout (= 'verpletteren')	X
to ruin	ruins
to rule	rule
to sack (a town)	X
to side with	X
to	spearhead
to storm (= to))	storming (= assault)

to strike	strike
to strike terror into the hearts of	
to	support
to surrender	surrender
to take refuge	refuge
to	target
to terrorize	(reign of)
to vanquish (= to defeat completely)	X
to wage war on/against	war (.....)
to make war	
to withdraw	.....

1.3. Mini dictionary of war II. Complete the chart. If necessary, indicate the word stress

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Person.</i>
to ally	an ally / the Allies
to challenge
to conquer
to defend
to invade
to oppose	an o..... / an a.....
to raid
to rebel
to revolt
to riot
to rule

1.4. Complete these sentences with words from exercises 1.3. and 1.4.

- Nine hours after the battle of Waterloo began the French were in full (withdrawing from the battlefield). Napoleon (gave up his "throne") and was subsequently (sent away) to the island of St Helena.
- Between 57 and 50 BC the region of northern Gaul lying in the Scheldt and Meuse valleys was by Julius Caesar.
- Ghent was r..... (torn) by religious disputes under Philip II, who established the bishopric in 1561

4. Belgium became the focal point of world events during the or (period of governing) of Charlemagne.
5. Altercations/Fighting in Belgium started more than 2,000 years ago with the Gallo-Celtic tribe of the Belgae s..... (leading forcefully) the brave fight against the northward march of the Roman legions.
6. At the beginning of the Hundred Years War, Flanders (supported) France, causing England to boycott delivery of wool to the region.
7. After a long campaign the Duke of Wellington's army (beat) Napoleon at Waterloo.
8. At dawn on 13 May the Clauwaerts led by Pieter de Coninck up against (revolted against) the king of France and (slaughtered) the French garrison. The (revolt) is known as the 'Bruges Matins'.
9. During the Hundred Years War, Edward III of England / (surrounded with armed forces) Tournai, which had remained faithful to France. The was raised after Edward and Philip VI of France signed a treaty.
10. During the Battle of the Bulge Bastogne was (protected) by the American 101st Airborne Division commanded by General MacAuliffe. When the German commander invited him to (give up), MacAuliffe's laconic reply was: Despite heavy bombardment, Bastogne h..... (endured it) until Allied pressure on both flanks forced the Germans to / (pull back).
11. After the (the act of taking by force) of Jerusalem by the Crusaders in 1099, Godfrey of Bouillon was elected 'King of Jerusalem', but he declined, settling for 'Advocate/Defender of the Holy Sepulchre'. When he died one year later, the chronicler Matthew of Edessa related that he was poisoned by his Muslim (enemies, opponents)
12. At the end of the Great War Ypres was in (completely destroyed). Churchill wanted to preserve the..... (destroyed) city as a permanent reminder of the horrors of war.
13. In the Battle of the Yser, Belgian and French troops put up heroic r..... to the German advance, i.e. they a brave fight (they fought bravely).
14. When the town of Ghent against (opposed or fought against) its (the person who is in charge, in control), Charles V, the Emperor himself travelled to Ghent in 1540 and promulgated the Caroline Concession.
15. William the Bastard, aka William of Normandy, invaded and (took by force) England in 1066 and became William I, aka William the
16. In 1338, Jacob van Artevelde (united, joined) the Flemish towns with/to England's Edward III during the opening stages of the Hundred Years War.
17. In 1917 the Russian people (rose) against the tsar and government.
18. In 1942 Stalin had made up his mind to (face) the German enemy at Stalingrad. While

- the Germans wanted to (destroy completely) the Red Army on the banks of the Volga, Stalin had ordered his troops to (keep safe from harm, to protect) his city to the last man. This (conflict) of the Titans was the beginning of the end for Hitler's army.
19. As Roman rule (disintegrated, fell down or inwards), the Franks moved in.
 20. In the 15th C William de la Marck, the ' Wild Boar of the Ardennes', / (filled with terror) the people in the Prince Bishopric of Liège. He captured and killed Bishop Louis de Bourbon. The story provided Sir Walter Scott with the inspiration for '*Quentin Durward*', one of the Waverley novels
 21. In 1302 the Flemish towns r..... (defeated completely and drove away) the French nobility at the Battle of the Golden Spurs.
 22. At the Battle of Little Big Horn, also known as Custer's Last (a strong effort of defence), general Custer and his men were (surrounded) by Sioux braves, led by Crazy Horse and Sitting Bull. Before they could blow the (withdrawal) they were slaughtered, down to the last man.
 23. In World War II the Allies carried out an air / (air attack) against Dresden. The town was bombed by British planes and turned into an inferno in (the act of doing something bad to somebody who has done something bad to you) for the V-1s and V-2s on London.
 24. In the Bible one can read the story of Joseph, Mary and the baby Jesus who (ran away) to Egypt to escape from King Herod, who had ordered all male babies to be killed. This story is known as the into Egypt.
 25. (revenge) is mine says the Lord, thou shalt not kill.
 26. Bosnian war criminals have to stand trial in The Hague for carrying out (removing people from an area, sometimes by killing them, because of their race or religion) in former Yugoslavia.
 27. From the 8th C to the 10th C the Vikings attacked eastern and northern Europe, raping and (plundering) all along the coast.



1.5. The Third Battle of Ypres (Passchendaele) July 31 – November 8, 1917



The Battle of Passchendaele, fought July 1917, is sometimes called the Third Battle of Ypres. For the soldiers who fought at Passchendaele, it was known as the 'Battle of Mud'. Few battles encapsulate World War One better than the Battle of Passchendaele.

The attack at Passchendaele was Sir Douglas Haig's attempt to break through Flanders. Haig had thought about a similar attack in 1916, but the Battle of the Somme occupied his time in that year. However, one year later, Haig felt able to launch such an attack. His main aim was a breakthrough to the coast

of Belgium so that German submarine pens could be destroyed. Admiral Jellicoe had already advised both Haig and the British government that the loss of shipping (primarily merchant) could not be sustained and that Britain would face severe problems in 1918, if such losses continued. Haig's plan, to sweep through Flanders to the coast, did not receive support from Britain's Prime Minister, David Lloyd George, but as the Allies had no other credible plan, he gave his agreement for Haig to carry out his plan.

Haig also had another reason for going ahead with his plan. He believed, incorrectly as it turned out, that the morale of the German army was very low - especially after the success of the Allies at the Battle of Messines. He believed that the Allies could tap into this lack of morale and roll through Flanders without too much trouble.

On July 18th 1917, a heavy artillery barrage was launched at the German lines. This lasted for ten days. Three thousand artillery guns fired over four million shells. Therefore, the German army in the area fully expected a major Allied attack - so any vague hope of surprise was lost, as was true in any attack that started with a major artillery bombardment.

The infantry attack started on July 31st. The main assault was led by Sir Hubert Gough's Fifth Army. To their left were units from the French First Army led by Anthoine and to Gough's right was the Second Army led by the victor of Messines, Sir Herbert Plumer.

The Germans, as happened at the Somme, were fully prepared and the Allied attack, launched across an eleven mile front, made only small gains. Then in the early days of August, the area was saturated with the heaviest rain the region had seen in thirty years. The area in Flanders became effectively a swamp. Tanks, sent forward to help the infantry, simply got stuck. Infantry soldiers found movement very difficult. The impact of the artillery bombardment had destroyed the drainage systems of the region which greatly added to the problem. The shell craters made by the Allied shelling filled with water and did not allow advancing men the opportunity to hide in them. The fields through which men should have gone became impassable.

Haig blamed the lack of progress not on the abnormal weather and the conditions it caused, but on Gough. Haig moved Gough and his men to a front further north and put Plumer in charge of the battle. Plumer used different tactics to Gough. He wanted small gains that could be permanently held as opposed to Gough's apparent desire for one major sweeping movement that would bring success. As a result, Plumer fought a series of small battles within Flanders - the Battle of Menin Road Bridge, the Battle of Polygon Wood and the Battle of Broodseinde. These were fought between September and October 1917. These gave British forces the advantage in the territory to the east of Ypres. Haig became convinced that German morale was on the verge of collapsing and ordered that the offensive be continued to Passchendaele Ridge.

Between October 9th and October 12th, two battles were fought - Poelcappelle and the First Battle of Passchendaele. By now, those German soldiers who had been fighting on the Eastern Front had been moved to the Western Front - and they had been specifically moved to Passchendaele Ridge to bolster the German forces there. The Germans used mustard gas to assist them and the attempted Allied breakthrough to Passchendaele Ridge failed to materialise. However, Haig would not concede that the attack had not succeeded. In late October three further Allied attacks were made on Passchendaele Ridge. On November 6th, 1917, Passchendaele village was taken and Haig used this success as the reason for calling off the attack.

However, the Third Battle of Ypres or Passchendaele had been a very costly battle. For the sake of a few kilometres, the British had lost 310,000 men and the Germans 260,000. Haig was heavily criticised for the attack and for failing to modify his plans as the attack clearly was not going to be a success.

There were some who rallied to Haig's defence. They argued that: Haig could not have known that the weather would have played such a major part in the battle; the input of the newly arrived German troops from the Eastern Front was not part of Haig's planning and nor could it have been; the dangers of German submarine activity had to be eliminated whatever the risk; a British success would have gone some way to improving the morale of the French army that had mutinied in that year - an ally supporting an ally.

Haig argued that any German loss of men was of greater importance than British loss as the Allies could sustain more losses as America had joined the war by the end of Passchendaele.

The British and French high command had decided that a three prong attack on the German lines was necessary to break the stalemate that had ensued since the end of 1914. It was decided that the British forces would attack at the Ypres front as part of the three phase attack.

On July 18, the British and French artillery started a massive barrage on the German lines. On July 31, the attack was planned to take place. The battle itself was focused on the small town of Passchendaele. The ground on which the troops had to fight was getting increasingly muddy due to the artillery's destruction in the ancient drainage systems that kept the land dry. Soon, no man's land was like a giant mud puddle which in some places was so deep that men would vanish into it without a trace. However, the British high command was still insistent that the artillery had to be used in full scale barrage before the infantry could attack. They had learned nothing from the previous disasters at Ypres and the Somme, and once again, the artillery would play a large role in the failure of the offensive.

Early on the morning of the 31st, the infantry began its advance. Despite massive German counterattacks, the British managed to creep forward 2 miles. The battle was going well until the eve of August 1, when heavy rains began and flooded over the area even worse than before. The rain continued without stop for two weeks and the British army was heavily bogged down. However, they continued to press against the German lines. The Germans were also heavily bogged down which kept them from counterattacking but they still held a stubborn resistance. They hit the British with mustard gas and heavy machinegun fire, but the British still attacked relentlessly.

After a long, hard struggle, the Canadians took Passchendaele in early October. They then managed to push into Ghent bringing the offensive to a close with an overall cost of 250,000 casualties. There would not be another offensive at Ypres to follow.

http://www.historylearningsite.co.uk/battle_of_passchendaele.htm

<http://www.passchendaele.be/eng/homeEN.html>

<http://www.geocities.com/Athens/Acropolis/2354/ypres3.html>

1.6. Speaking

Use the underlined words to reconstruct the events of the third battle of Ypres.



Tyne Cot Cemetery and Memorial to the Missing

The small battlefield cemetery near Tyne Cot (a German strongpoint, the block house of which is now under the Cross of Sacrifice seen here) was expanded after the war and became the world's largest British military cemetery. 11,962 men lie here, and a further 34,888 are commemorated on the rear walls. It is situated on a gentle slope from which Ypres can be seen in the distance.

Zonnebeke and Passendale are two little villages, at a stone's throw from Ypres. During the British attack of 1917, there were 500.000 casualties in 100 days for a gain territory of only 5 miles. Passchendaele became an international symbol of senseless military violence in its most cruel form. In the Memorial Museum the memory of the battle is kept alive through images and movies, a large collection of historical artefacts and several life-like-diorama's. Eye-catcher is an underground dugout tunnel with communication- and dressing post, headquarters, workplaces and dormitories. A breathtaking experience of how the British had to live underground like moles... just because there was nothing left above. The museum is set up in the historical castle of Zonnebeke, on the road to Tyne Cot Cemetery. Tyne Cot is the biggest military cemetery of the Commonwealth with 12,000 graves and an impressive Missing Memorial. You can also pay a visit to a recently discovered underground dressing post, the German trenches in Bayernwald and strategic points like the Menin Road, 's Graventafel and Polygon Wood with a professional guide. The Memorial Museum Passchendaele 1917 is an ideal starting point for a visit to the old battlefields, an absolute must for tourists and specialists.

1.7. The Battle of the Ardennes



At the end of the Second World War, on 16 December 1944, the Germans, led by General von Rundstedt, launched a counter-offensive against the Allied front. The objective was to take Antwerp and move on to the North Sea. The element of surprise, combined with the persistent bad weather brought the Germans immediate success. General von Manteuffel headed for the Meuse, leaving the Allied front line in a "bulge" around Bastogne, which was held by the American 101st Airborne Division under General McCauliffe, who refused to surrender.

Surrounded as it was, the town became a strategic point. The sky cleared on 23 December, allowing supplies to be air-dropped into Bastogne.

By Christmas Day the Germans had advanced as far as the village of Celles near Dinant; however, this was as far as they were to get. The Allies threw everything they had into getting the upper hand. The US 3rd Army, led by General Patton, counter-attacked on the southeast flank and entered Bastogne on 26 December. Allied planes were able to prevent fuel supplies getting to the Germans for their tanks. At the beginning of January the US 1st Army reached Bastogne from the north. By 25 January, the "bulge" had been completely cleared of Germans.

Adapted from: *Belgium / Grand Duchy of Luxembourg*, Watford: Michelin Travel Publications, 2004 (Green Guide)

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_the_Bulge

<http://www.battleofthebulge.org/> (by Veterans of the Battle of the Bulge)

1.8. Assignments

1. What other names are used for this battle?
.....
2. What was the German name for this offensive?
.....
3. What is the "Nuts" story?
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
4. The Battle of the Ardennes has been called "the greatest land battle ever fought by the US Army." If you look at the battle facts you 'll realize that this is no exaggeration. Find more information on these battle facts: casualties (killed, wounded or taken prisoner) on both sides, equipment, etc
5. The German offensive is also known for its atrocities against civilians and soldiers alike. What happened in Stavelot and Trois Ponts, and in hamlets and farms in between like Ster, Renardmont, Parfondruy and Hurllet? What about the Malmedy massacre (when approximately 150 American POWs were killed)?
6. Of all the military bugle calls, none is so easily recognized or more apt to render emotion than the call 'Taps'. In the British Army, a similar call known as 'Last Post' has been sounded over soldiers' graves since 1885 to the same emotional effect. The calls are sounded at funerals, wreath-laying and memorial services. Find more information on these bugle calls. What do they sound like? How did they originate? Are there words to these calls?
7. Make a list (top 5 or top 10) of monuments, memorials and museums which commemorate the Battle of the Ardennes. Add extra information.
8. Find information on other important battles on Belgian soil: Battle of Waterloo, Battle of Gavere, Battle of the Yzer, Battle of Westrozebeke, Battle of Woeringen, etc

File 4

Flanders fits you

1. Portrait of a dynamic region in the Belgian federal state



1.1. State structure

Article 1 of the Belgian Constitution stipulates that Belgium is a federal state made up of Communities and Regions. This division into three communities and three regions is typical of Belgian federalism. Both types of entities have their own exclusive competences. Their territories overlap geographically, since in fact they correspond to different combinations of Belgium's four linguistic areas (the Dutch language area, the French language area, the German language area and the bilingual area).

The three communities are:

- The Flemish Community (corresponding to the Dutch language area, with particular competences in the bilingual area of Brussels)
- The French Community (corresponding to the French language area, with particular competences in the bilingual area of Brussels)
- The small German-speaking Community (corresponding to the German language area)

The three regions are:

- The Flemish Region (corresponding to the Dutch language area)
- The Walloon Region (corresponding to the French and German language area)
- The Brussels Capital Region (corresponding to the bilingual area)

There was a need for this particular type of federalism because federalization had become an important issue. The Flemings were motivated by the wish to obtain cultural autonomy for all the Dutch-speaking people in Belgium, be it in the Dutch language area or in the bilingual area of Brussels. The Walloons wanted to be able to pursue their own social and economic policies in the Walloon area, without interference from the capital. The compromise between the two views resulted in the creation of:

- **Communities**, with competences concerning culture, education, certain aspects of healthcare, language matters and co-operation between Regions and Communities
- **Regions**, competent for economic policies, employment, energy matters, transport, agriculture, local authorities, environment, territorial planning and housing

Thus Belgium has six Parliaments and six Governments. Apart from the federal Parliament (consisting of a House of Representatives and a Senate) and the federal Government, there are the different Parliaments and Governments for each of the three Communities and for two of the three Regions. This is because Flemish politicians decided in 1980 to merge the Flemish Community with the Flemish Region. As a result, Flanders has one Flemish Parliament and one Flemish Government with competence over community as well as over regional matters.



1.2. Comprehension

1. Explain why Belgium had to create a unique brand of federalism. Use the words: region, community, combination, overlap, cultural autonomy.
2. Name the six Belgian governments.
3. In 1999, the UK created devolved government (a transfer of powers from a central government to local units). Compare Scotland, Northern Ireland and Wales.
What is special about the Greater London Council?

1.3. Flemish authorities

The Flemish government

The Flemish Government has a maximum of 11 ministers. At least one of them must come from Brussels. The party with the largest majority provides the minister-president. A minister from the party with the second largest majority supplies the vice-minister-president. Each minister has a number of well-defined powers and can count on a staff of direct political advisors and ministerial officials when preparing or implementing his or her policies.

Flanders has an own parliament, government and public administration. The latter is responsible for the preparation, execution and evaluation of the government policy. To ensure better service to the public, as of 1 January 2006 the Flemish public administration has undergone major transformations.

Broadening the scope of good governance

Under the name of Better Administrative Policy (BAP), the Flemish public administration has been subjected to a root-and-branch reform. The BAP is designed to make the Flemish public administration more efficient, so it may live up to its aspiration to continue developing Flanders into a region where people enjoy working and living. The BAP has also succeeded in making the Flemish public administration more transparent. The more streamlined administrative structure and more effective services make it easier for citizens, companies and foreign partners to find their way around the Flemish public administration's various entities.

Governance from a global perspective

The tasks of the Flemish public administration are now organized on the basis of 13 policy areas. Simplicity, consistency and impact are the principles. The Flemish public administration's tasks are primarily focused on Flanders and Brussels. As a result of an increasing level of interpenetration and internationalization, the 13 policy areas are becoming more international or interregional in scope. The new Flemish foreign policy area is designed to act as a key player and coordinator for each cross-border concern involving several policy areas. The policy area also has a specific role to play in general foreign policy, tourism, international cooperation and foreign investment and trade.

Clear task-sharing within each policy area

Each policy area comprises a department and a number of autonomous agencies. The departments lend support to and offer advice to the Flemish Government on policy-making. The agencies then apply the Flemish Government policy in the context of services provided to citizens, companies and organisations. The agencies invariably operate with a degree of autonomy tailored to their terms of reference. Each policy area is matched by a policy council. This is the framework for the convergence of politicians and senior officials involved in a specific policy area.

The 13 policy areas

- Services for the General Government Policy
- Administrative Affairs
- Foreign Affairs
- Finance and Budget
- Education and Training
- Economy, Science and Innovation
- Culture, Youth, Sport and Media
- Welfare, Public Health and Family
- Agriculture and Fisheries
- Work and Social Economy
- Mobility and Public Works
- Environment, Nature and Energy
- Town and Country Planning, Housing Policy and Immovable Heritage

Brussels, the capital of Flanders

Flanders chose Brussels as its capital. Brussels is part and parcel of the international political, economic and cultural stage. From a historical point of view, Brussels has always been a bilingual city with a rich Dutch cultural past. Although the Flemish are now in a slight minority in Brussels, they still love their capital's cultural life, international atmosphere and openness to other cultures.

When you walk through Brussels, the city evokes an international feeling. Since Flanders shares its capital with Belgium and Europe, many international institutions and companies have their headquarters in Brussels: the European Commission, the European Parliament, NATO... From that perspective, Brussels attracts a lot of expatriates. Brussels is also the seat of the Flemish Government, the Flemish Parliament and the central departments of the Flemish public administration.

Brussels' governing body is the Brussels Regional Government, in which French and Dutch-speaking citizens are equally represented. This body is based on the Belgian federal model and rests on a system of mutual balances to prevent either region or language group from gaining a dominant position.

The Flemish Parliament



Legislative and supervisory powers lie with the Flemish Parliament. Flanders uses the single chamber system. The parliament is elected directly by the Flemish population by way of five-yearly elections. The parliament has 124 members. Six of them represent the Flemish population in the bilingual area of Brussels.

The Flemish Parliament has its seat in Brussels. To avoid confusion: the laws made by the Flemish Parliament are known as decrees. This difference in name does not imply that decrees are subordinate to federal laws.

The Flemish Parliament also appoints the ministers of the Flemish Government. The Flemish Parliament cannot be dissolved before its five-year tenure is over. Elections prior to the end of a tenure are not allowed.

In recent years, six political formations have played a significant role in Flemish parliamentary elec-

tions: the Liberals (Open VLD), the Christian Democrats (CD&V), the Social Democrats (SP.A-Spirit), the Green party (Groen!), the Democratic Flemish Nationalists and the Extreme Right (Vlaams Belang). Traditionally no single party ever gets a majority of votes. After the elections, two or more parties consult to form a majority together. The government therefore has always been a coalition government. None of the democratic parties want to enter into a coalition with extreme right.



1.4. Comprehension and assignments

1. What major transformations has the Flemish public administration undergone as of 1 January 2006?
2. Explain:
 - Brussels is part and parcel of the international political, economic and cultural stage
 - decrees made by the Flemish parliament
 - the Flemish Parliament cannot be dissolved before its five-year tenure is over
3. Explore the website of Flanders (<http://www.flanders.be/>) and highlight one aspect of the region. Population - Politics - Culture - Tourism - Economics, Science and Technology - more about Flanders...

2. Separatists and unionists

2.1. RTBF's controversial fake news bulletin creates uproar (15 December 2006)

BRUSSELS - RTBF's CEO, Jean-Paul Philippot, takes full responsibility for a fake news bulletin that portrayed the splitting of Flanders from the rest of Belgium in "real time."

It's certainly the craziest idea and best kept secret ever to take shape in the hallways of the headquarters of radio and television company for Belgian Francophones RTBF, on Reyers' Boulevard, reports Le Soir newspaper. A team of journalists from the RTBF shocked the nation as they broadcast this fictional news bulletin portraying the scission of Flanders live from outside the Flemish Parliament; discussing these unlikely events with journalist, politicians and celebrities. Several prominent Flemish politicians took part in the broadcast including the speaker of the chamber of representatives, Flemish Liberal Herman Decroo.

The concept had been kept secret for several months and all the interviewees were well-versed in their roles. Field reports aired on Belgium's main Francophone TV channel La Une portrayed the chaos resulting from this decision initiated by the Flemish parliament: trains and trams blocked at Belgium's internal linguistic border, Brussels paralysed, kilometres of traffic jams.

One Journalist announced that King Albert II had deserted his palace and fled the country for the capital of the Democratic of the Republic of the Congo Kinshasa, while Walloon ministers sought refuge at the Walloon parliament. It was only an hour later that the broadcasters proclaimed the bulletin to be a hoax.

Prior to this declaration, RTBF's press service had been swamped by calls from other Flemish, Francophone and international news media, including US broadcaster CNBC and French paper Le Monde. RTBF's CEO, Jean-Paul Philippot assumes full responsibility for his channel's programme as critics from all parts of the country including Prime Minister Guy Verhofstadt, who described the broadcast as "a misplaced joke", expressed their disapproval for such use of the media. Flemish nationalist circles, who would like to see Flemish and Walloon independence edging closer, saw the programme merely as a signal from the future. [Copyright Expatica news 2006]

2.2. Belgians march for unity (Flanders Today 25 November 2008)

An estimated 35,000 people marched through central Brussels last Sunday to protest at the stalemate in forming a government. The march was the initiative of Marie-Claire Houard, a civil servant from Liege, who launched a petition demanding that the politicians focus on the "real" problems affecting the country.

The demonstration was called after some 140,000 people signed the petition, launched three months ago, which told Belgians: "Your Country Needs You." The aim of the march was to demonstrate a commitment to Belgium and a desire for politicians to arrive at a solution that holds the two language communities together.

The march took participants from the Noordstation to the Jubelpark in the city's European Quarter. Many of the marchers sang the national anthem and draped themselves in the Belgian flag. The petition was handed over at the end of the march to Armand De Decker, president of the Senate. "We, Belgians of birth, heart or choice, demand that politicians respect our country and our unity," the declaration said.

Police said that 15 members of a Flemish nationalist group were briefly detained after trying to organise a counter-demonstration in front of the royal palace, which had not been authorised. The participants included a number of well-known Flemish and francophone figures. The French-speakers were clearly in the majority, with just 30% of marchers coming from the Dutch-speaking part of the country.

Meanwhile, Flemish Christian Democrat leader Yves Leterme, who is currently trying to form a centre-right coalition government, believes he will be able to secure broad agreement on state reforms by the end of the week. He made the announcement following talks with Didier Reynders, leader of the French-speaking liberals, who

indicated that he was prepared to discuss this issue.

Leterme said that he believed the meeting represented a significant breakthrough in the talks on future state reforms. The French-speaking parties have until now refused to discuss the issue of state reforms, which include the controversial split of the Brussels-Halle-Vilvoorde constituency. But Leterme still has to convince Joëlle Milquet, leader of the French-speaking Christian Democrats. The reform package could include changes to tax legislation to allow the regions to set their own tax levels. This could lead to Flanders introducing a lower tax rate in certain fiscal areas.



2.3. Vocabulary exercise

1. Make a list of all words in the text referring to “not real”.

.....

.....

.....

2. What is a hoax?

3. Find synonyms for:

- splitting:
- experienced:
- deadlock:
- keep in custody:
- to assure broad agreement:



2.4. Time to call it a day (From *The Economist* print edition Sep 6th 2007)

A RECENT glance at the Low Countries revealed that, nearly three months after its latest general election, Belgium was still without a new government. It may have acquired one by now. But, if so, will anyone notice? And, if not, will anyone mind? Even the Belgians appear indifferent. And what they think of the government they may well think of the country. If Belgium did not already exist, would anyone nowadays take the trouble to invent it?

Such questions could be asked of many countries. Belgium’s problem, if such it is, is that they are being asked by the inhabitants themselves. True, in opinion polls most Belgians say they want to keep the show on the road. But when they vote, as they did on June 10th, they do so along linguistic lines, the French-speaking Walloons in the south for French-speaking parties, the Dutch-speaking Flemings in the north for Dutch-speaking parties. The two groups do not get on—hence the inability to form a government. They lead parallel lives, largely in ignorance of each other. They do, however, think they know themselves: when a French-language television programme was interrupted last December with a spoof news flash announcing that the Flemish parliament had declared independence, the king had fled and Belgium had dissolved, it was widely believed.

No wonder. The prime minister designate thinks Belgians have nothing in common except “the king, the football team, some beers”, and he describes their country as an “accident of history”. In truth, it isn’t. When it was created in 1831, it served more than one purpose. It relieved its people of various discriminatory practices imposed on them by their Dutch rulers. And it suited Britain and France to have a new, neutral state rather than a source of instability that might, so soon after the Napoleonic wars, set off more turbulence in Europe.

The upshot was neither an unmitigated success nor an unmitigated failure. Belgium industrialised fast; grabbed a large part of Africa and ruled it particularly rapaciously; was itself invaded and occupied by Germany, not once but twice; and then cleverly secured the headquarters of what is now the European Union. Along the way it produced Magritte, Simenon, Tintin, the saxophone and a lot of chocolate. Also frites. No doubt more good things can come out of the swathe of territory once occupied by a tribe known to the Romans as the Belgae. For that, though, they do not need Belgium: they can emerge just as readily from two or three new mini-states, or perhaps from an enlarged France and Netherlands.

Brussels can devote itself to becoming the bureaucratic capital of Europe. It no longer enjoys the heady atmosphere of liberty that swirled outside its opera house in 1830, intoxicating the demonstrators whose protests set the Belgians on the road to independence. The air today is more fetid. With freedom now taken for granted, the old animosities are ill suppressed. Rancour is ever-present and the country has become a freak of nature, a state in which power is so devolved that government is an abhorred vacuum. In short, Belgium has served its purpose. A praline divorce is in order.

Belgians need not feel too sad. Countries come and go. And perhaps a way can be found to keep the king, if he is still wanted. Since he has never had a country—he has always just been king of the Belgians—he will not miss Belgium. Maybe he can rule a new-old country called Gaul. But king of the Gauloises doesn’t sound quite right, does it?

2.5. Speaking

1. In what respect are Flemings and Walloons different? Give some examples. Make a comparison with the country of origin of your group.
2. Give the pros and cons of living in a trilingual country.
3. Do you agree with the editor of *The Economist* that “a praline divorce is in order”?

3. Liège (Luik, Lüttich) is a city on the river Meuse (Maas)

Most people think Belgium is a bilingual country. Wrong: about 65,000 people to the east of the country have German as their mother tongue.

Conundrum: What world-famous place in Belgium is in fact the only truly bilingual city in the country?

Answer: Waterloo. Why? The first and second half mean the same in Dutch and French namely “water”.

3.1. Show me the way to...

Driving through Belgium foreigners are often puzzled or frustrated by names on road-signs, especially along the linguistic border. Make some pairs to help them out:

1. Ieper (“wipers”)	6. Geraardsbergen	a. Waremmе	f. Visé
2. Menen	7. Edingen	b. Enghien	g. Grammont
3. Kortrijk	8. Eigenbrakel	c. Courtrai	h. Renaix
4. Moeskroen	9. Borgworm	d. Menin	i. Mouscron
5. Ronse	10. Wezet	e. Ypres	j. Braine l’Alleud

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

3.2. Frequent geographical names:

Rivers		Regions	
Schelde	L’.....	Voeren	F.....
Maas	La	Haspengouw	La H.....
Leie	L.....	Hoge Venen	H..... F.....

3.3. Quiz! Fill in the missing Dutch and French place names

Tip	Dutch	French
Green lung of Brussels	Z.....	F..... de S.....
Airforce base	B.....	B.....
Sweetest Belgian city	T.....	T.....
Fruit capital	S..... - T.....	S..... T.....
Meuse / citadel	H.....	H.....
borderLimburg/Liège	B.....	W.....
Belfry / agronomical university	G.....	G.....
Romanesque / Pippin of Landen	N.....	N.....

3.4. National holidays

The number one date in Flemish history is 1302. Everybody knows what this date stands for. Do other nationalities also have a date like this? : the English, the Irish, the Scots, the French, the Dutch, the Americans, the Australians, the New Zealanders... Make a quiz in which a date and event must be linked to a nationality and present it to your fellow-students.

File 5

Towns and cities

1. For starters

The ancient Greek writer and chronicler Herodotus is not only famous as the “father of history”. As the first known tourist, travelling throughout Asia and Africa, he is also considered the founding father of travel literature. However, Herodotus was neither the first nor the last traveller to be moved by the majesty of landscapes, monuments, buildings and cities. So, let us take a trip around the world in three stages.

1.1. What’s in a name?

These nicknames reflect the dreams, hopes and aspirations of people.

1. : the City of Light.
2. : the Golden City.
3. : the Big Apple.
4. : the Big Easy, situated on the Big Muddy.
5. : the Windy City.
6. : Venice of the North.
7. : Queen/Pearl of the Danube.
8. : the Big O, capital of Canada.
9. : the City by the Bay / Baghdad by the Bay, a city in the USA.
10. : the Eternal City.
11. : the Marvellous City, where carnival is everything (and it’s not Aalst).
12. : the Mother City / the Tavern of the Seas, at the foot of Table Mountain.
13. : Kin the Beautiful, opposite Brazzaville.
14. : the Harbour City, the most populous city in Australia.
15. : the Capital of Hope, a phrase coined by the French author André Malraux.

1.2. Old and new

The English writer Leigh Hunt wrote: “Almost nothing gives us as much pleasure as the art of making connections between a place and all sorts of interesting or amusing stories. To be sure, one masters this art all the better the more knowledge one gains”.

1. _____ : the highest capital city in the world.
2. _____ : also known as Byzantium, aka Constantinople, aka the City on Seven Hills (the oldest part of the city was built on seven hills, just like Rome).
3. _____ : Spanish for “white house”.
4. _____ : formerly known as Angora and famous for its long-haired Angora goat and its prized wool (mohair), a unique breed of cat (Angora cat), and white rabbits and their valued wool (Angora wool).
5. _____ : this Persian city was once believed to be “the richest city under the sun”. But Alexander the Great called it the most detestable city in all of Asia and showed it no mercy when he conquered it in 330 BC. He plundered it and then set the torch to the city himself.
6. _____ : in the 14th C this city became the leading power in Italy and one of the richest cities in the world. Its gulden was considered the most important and stable currency in the world. Artisans and merchants had so much political influence that Swiss historian Jacob Burckhardt later called it “the first modern state in the world”.
7. _____ : at one moment this city controlled about half of the Eastern Roman Empire and its merchants dominated commerce throughout the eastern Mediterranean. After 1380 this lagoon city was acknowledged as the centre of world trade.
8. _____ : this city, in which Seneca was born and where Caesar rose to a high post, was, at one time, Europe’s second most important capital, after Constantinople. It was ruled by an emir, the representative of the caliph, and grew into a metropolis of a million inhabitants in which the fertile mixture of Jews, Christians and Muslims produced an exciting climate of intellectualism, prosperity and wealth. Its spiritual core was the great mosque known as the Mezquita.
9. _____ : this city, which is called Kronstadt in German, is located in the centre of Romania, surrounded by the Southern Carpathians. In the 12th C settlers (known as the Transylvanian Saxons) from the Rhineland, Flanders, and the Moselle Region (with others from Thuringia, Bavaria, Wallonia, and even France) were invited by King Géza II of Hungary to develop the land of Transylvania. The nearby Bran Castle is often (but incorrectly) said to have been the home of Vlad the Impaler (=Dracula).
10. _____ the birthplace of the acoustic expert Christian Doppler (the Doppler effect), Maria von Trapp (who later fled with her family to America following the Nazi takeover), Herbert von Karajan, and the greatest musical genius (and boy wonder) of all time ...
11. _____ : the capital of Australia. The city’s design was heavily influenced by the Garden City movement and incorporates significant areas of natural vegetation that have earned it the title of Bush Capital.

12. _____ : like Bruges, this city is a UNESCO World Heritage Site. It was the seat of the Khmer Empire. In 2007 an international team of researchers, using satellite photographs, concluded that this had been the largest pre-industrial city in the world with an urban sprawl of 1,150 square miles.
13. _____ : another historic city that was designated a World Heritage Site by UNESCO in 1968. It is situated in the fertile alluvial plain of the Niger in central Mali. It became a centre of Islamic learning in the Middle Ages. The towers of its spectacular mosque, built of mud, clay and beams, are not crowned with the traditional half-moon/crescent-moon symbol of Islam, but with ostrich eggs, representing fertility and guarding against evil.

1.3. Lost and found

An irresistible mixture of myth and historical fact accounts for the special spiritus loci of these great cult places. Fill in their names.

1. _____

This imposing ruined city is located in a wide mountain valley some seven thousand feet above sea level. During its golden age, around AD 500, it had a population of some 200,000, and it must have been the earliest and largest pre-industrial metropolis of the entire Western Hemisphere. The name comes from the language of the Aztecs, who settled in the valley several centuries later, and can be translated as “the city of those who became gods”. It was here that the history of Mexico began and for the cultures of Central America it became the ideal of a glorious past – as classical Athens did for Europe.

2. _____

This was once a royal city and the religious centre of the Nabateans, a tribe which settled on the Arabian peninsula around 400 BC. The city controlled several caravan routes, including the “King’s Way” which Moses and the Israelites are said to have already followed on their flight from Egypt to the Promised Land. It was conquered by the Romans and declared a provincial capital. But even the fact that it was later elevated to the seat of a bishop could not halt the city’s decline. It was mentioned one last time, in connection with crusaders who set out from there to defend Jerusalem, before the sleeping beauty sank into a seven-hundred-year sleep – to be kissed awake only in 1812 when it was rediscovered by Johann Christian Burckhardt.

3. _____

The “Rock of the Hanged”, the “Chapel of the Mummies”, the “Window of the Snakes” - at every step of a walk through the ruins of this city the stony witnesses of the past are encountered with names rich in intriguing allusions. In 1960 Hector Velarde described it like this: “This city, which is built over an abyss, is a cosmic vision of nature. Its important role as a shrine is reflected in its ritual-like elegance, in the expression of the eternal uttered by its very stones.” For many explorers, the “skyscraper of ancient Peru” is still the most unimaginable and mysterious of all forgotten cities.

Adapted from : Reichhold, K., B. Graf, *Buildings that Changed the World*, Munich-London-New York: Prestel Verlag, 1999



1.4. Assignments

1. Select one of the cities mentioned and find more information on when, where, and how they arose; interesting and amusing stories ...
2. Brasilia, the capital of the world's fifth largest country, which rose out of the earth in one fell swoop, is not unique. Throughout history other cities were planned, designed and laid out where nothing had been before. Even the Egyptians tried to create one around 3000 BC, when they built Memphis, a capital that did not develop or evolve, but was designed from the word go. Find more information on these and other "planned" towns; the Garden City movement (started by Ebenezer Howard) and the "greenbelt" towns; etc.
3. The idyllic landscape of the Yamato Valley, the cradle of Japan, is separated from the city of Kyoto by a chain of low hills and is far removed from the hectic life of the city which gave its name to the famous Treaty. The valley is the heart of the ancient kingdom where, according to the sagas, the imperial family and other noble clans first touched Japanese soil in the 4th C BC. According to the religious beliefs, the residence of the imperial family had to be moved following the death of an emperor, because the place of his death was thought to be unclean. Thus, the exquisite landscape of the Yamato plateau gave rise to one new capital after another. One of these was Nara, which was abandoned after seventy-five years. Find more information.

2. Townscapes

2.1. Reading and vocabulary.

Choose from the list and fill in the verbs, using the correct tense.

be at liberty	fall into decay
become dependent on	found
bring home	full
cover	groom
devastate	lay down
dye	moor
emerge	occur
enter into a decline	recount
establish	spring up
exercise	store



Tongeren and ...



Mechelen

In the beginning

It's not always easy to define when and how a town started off. Settlements began in a great variety of ways, sometimes even before the time of the Romans. Some, like Tongeren and Tournai are Gallo-Roman; others commercial or industrial. Some were the seats of bishoprics or abbeys; some developed from military posts. Yet others grew on hill tops, like Saint Omer, or were like Damme and Nieuwpoort the deliberate creation of rulers. Some seem to have (verrezen) at fords across rivers, at the confluence of rivers or at the natural crossing point of important roads. Others gradually developed round administrative centres, next to the manors or castles of important rulers or, like Antwerp, on a navigable waterway.

After the departure of the Romans much (raakte in verval) and records are very limited, but it seems probable that between about 700 and 850 no settlement in Flanders had a commercial function, whereas further east, in Maastricht and Dinant, commerce continued. Nevertheless, places like Boulogne, Arras and Cambrai were inhabited throughout these gloomy years and retained their administrative functions. Settlements like Ghent, Kortrijk and Bruges also continued in existence, which shows how solidly the urban concept fitted into the Low Countries.

In the (late) 9th C, life was brutally interrupted by the dreadful invasions of the Vikings, leading to devastation, death and endless wanderings through the countryside looking for safety. This disaster best (wordt duidelijk gemaakt) to us by the stories of groups of monks rushing between abbeys with the precious relics of their founders or other saints carried on their persons

or in their saddle bags, which (worden verhaald) in so many medieval chronicles. A new portus developed in Ghent, which possessed a mint under Charles the Bald. About the same time a similar development took place in Tournai inside its old Roman walls. Bruges developed a commercial centre on the site of the Roman vicus but ('werd verwoest') by the Vikings.

Centres of power

In the 11th C, cities became more and more important. To (opslaan, stockeren) their goods merchants needed a safe place, easily accessible along a main road or waterway. So, what better place than the settlements that already existed on these locations? Cloth was being exported from Flanders as early as the 11th C, while Brabant followed in the 13th C.

From the 12th C, the towns developed into important centres of power. This was especially the case in Flanders, which (zich aan het voorbereiden was) itself for a central role on the world stage, but later also in Lorraine. The earliest mention of nearly all villages in Flanders goes back to that period. Soon, important towns (ontstonden) – Ghent, St Omer, Arras, Lille, Ypres and Bruges. Since these cities arose on the land of secular and ecclesiastic lords/authorities, they also had feudal obligations to these lords. But very soon, they were able to buy off these feudal commitments and the newly-acquired freedom (werd op papier gezet, werd bepaald) in charters. Their wealth was based on the production of high-quality woollen cloth, which was exported all over Europe, the Middle East and North Africa. Some of these cities developed into virtually independent city states (uitoefenend) political powers which normally would be the prerogative of a state. They had their own government, their own Court of Justice, their own laws and charters, their own means of defence, town walls and gates and even their own foreign policy. The belfry towers in the centre, where the city charters, spelling out their freedoms, were carefully kept, expressed the will of the burghers to govern themselves. Contrary to the serfs living in the countryside, people in the cities were free. Runaway serfs who lived in the city for one year and one day were also free as from that moment.

Bruges and Ghent on top



Bruges

But even in the 13th C most towns were small. For example, Saint Omer, Hasselt and Huy (strekten zich uit over) between forty and eighty acres. Tongeren, Sint-Truiden, as well as Utrecht, Rotterdam and at the end of the 14th C Amsterdam, had between 80 and 200 acres. With the exception of Utrecht and Haarlem really large towns (kwamen voor) only in the south: Leuven with 800, Brussels with 900 acres, Bruges with 860 and the enormous town of Ghent with its 1288 acres.

Until about 1250, Flemish merchants used to travel abroad, selling their luxury cloth themselves. Later, German Hanseatics and English merchant adventurers came to Bruges which grew into the central marketplace of the Netherlands and, with time, of the whole of Europe. In the Zwin ports of Damme and Sluis the first multi-coloured galleys arrived from Genoa and Venice, ((en) meerden aan) alongside ships from Lübeck, Hamburg and Stralsund. The steady stream of foreign merchants from some thirty countries (stond(en) het vrij) here to trade with whomsoever they wished, unlike Venice, where all foreigners were obliged to sell their wares to the local citizens. Merchants traded in silk from Italy and the Orient, furs from Russia and the Balkans, metals from Hungary, Poland and Bohemia, wool,

cheese and coal from England and Scotland, fruit from Spain, Arabian spices and Rhenish wines. Eventually, the population of Bruges rose to 80,000 and sometimes as many as 150 vessels entered the port in a single day. Bruges was also the principal money market of Europe thanks to the Italian banking houses such as the Peruzzi, the Bardi and the Frescobaldi, who had their offices here. In the evening they made their deals in a tavern named De Beurs without the goods in which they traded being physically present. Since then, 'De Beurs' (meaning money-bag or wallet) became the generic name for Stock Exchange (Beurs, Börse, Bourse, Borsa)

In the 13th and 14th C Ghent, with its 64,000 inhabitants, was the second city of Europe north of the Alps. It could compare itself to Paris, although the latter was the capital of a powerful kingdom

By the 14th C, the time of Van Artevelde, 60% of Ghent's population was working in textiles, while by 1431 more than 50% was occupied in weaving, (vollen) and (verven, kleuren) in Ypres. Such vigour and intensity can only be compared with the north Italian towns. But, at the same time, Flanders was vulnerable since its economy was based on one branch of industry. This became one of the sources of the upheaval, social unrest and revolt that were to follow. The wool industry in Ghent, and for that matter also in the smaller cities of Kortrijk, Menen, Oudenaarde, Aalst, Geraardsbergen, Poperinge, Bergues-St Winoc, Diksmuide and Veurne, (began in verval te raken) because of competition from Brabant and above all from England, on whose wool supplies Flemish textile production (afhankelijk was geworden). With the beginning of the Hundred Years War all hell broke loose.

Brabant takes over

At the end of the 14th C and in the 15th C, the Brabant cities took over more and more of Flanders' economic role. The Dukes of Burgundy attached more importance to the Duchy of Brabant, less turbulent and in full expansion. Their favourite residence was the palace of the Dukes of Brabant in the heart of Brussels, thus laying the foundations for that city's future as the seat of central government. In 1473, Charles the Bold (vestigde) a central Court of Justice in Mechelen, the 'Mechlin Parliament'. Leuven was famous for its university, (gesticht) in 1425 and knew its greatest expansion in the 16th C. It became the largest university outside Paris.

Under the reign of the Burgundian dukes, the luxury sectors throughout the Southern Netherlands developed into powerful export industries which, together with those in Italy, dominated the European markets.

(Adapted from Carson, P., *The Fair Face of Flanders*)

(Adapted from Decavele, J., *Vlaanderen*)

2.2. Comprehension

1. Why did towns arise in certain places? What started them off?
2. When and how did the merchants come in?
3. The 12th (and 13th) C marked an important change in the relationship between the towns and their feudal lords.
Explain.
4. How big were towns in the 13th C?
5. When and how did Bruges grow into the central marketplace of the Netherlands? What kind of goods were traded there?
6. When did the economic power shift to Ghent? And why was the Flemish economy vulnerable at the same time?
7. From the 15th C onwards Brabant gradually took over the leading economic role from Flanders. Find examples.

2.3. Vocabulary. Find the words in the text.

- A merchant from a Hanseatic city =
- An adventurous merchant =
- A person who lives in a town =
- A farm worker in feudal times who had to work for a master (lijfeigene, horige, onvrije) =
- Whoever =
- The land belonging to a nobleman under the feudal system; a big countryhouse and its surrounding land = a m.....
- The opposite of 'secular authorities' =
- The common name for sth (soortnaam) =
- A great change with much confusion, and sometimes violence (ontreddering, opschudding) = u.....
- Energy, strength of mind or body = v.....



2.4. Assignments

Grammar tip:

Degrees of certainty or probability can be expressed in various ways.

- a. We can use words like 'maybe', 'perhaps', 'probably', etc
- b. We can also use modal auxiliaries to express various degrees of certainty.

Just take a look at this short dialogue.

(Someone has just knocked on the door)

Lynn : "I wonder who it is."

Robin : " It be the postman."

Which modal auxiliaries can fit the blank and what's the difference in meaning?

Well, here is a scheme to indicate how certain you are about something :

will/won't	must/can't	should	may	might/could
99% sure	95% sure	75% sure	55% sure	45% sure

Some remarks:

- 'will' and 'won't' indicate an assumption based on our knowledge of people and things. In the example John assumes that it's the postman because he knows the postman always comes to their house at that time.
- 'should' expresses what may reasonably be expected. This use of 'should' has the idea of "if everything is as it should be."
- For the past we can use all these modal auxiliaries with a perfect infinitive (= have + past participle). E.g. Lynn: "I wonder who that was." Robin : " It have been the postman."

Now you can practise this in the following exercise: Make sentences like: That will be Brussels / It might be Bruges / etc

3. The origin of towns

3.1. Guess what?

Fill in the names of the towns/cities (and use modal auxiliaries to express how certain you are), and fill in the correct words in the 'extra information' texts.

1. _____

This settlement originated in the Merovingian period as a fortress built on the heights above the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre rivers. It rapidly became an important commercial centre and developed into a feudal holding by the 10th C.

2. _____

The town's origin goes back to the 7th C when a settlement was established on the edge of a hazelwood. It was granted a charter as a town in c 1165. It was under the control of the Prince-Bishop of Liège from 1366 to 1794. It was here, in 1798, that the guerrilla leader Emmanuel Rollier was captured, which put an end to the Peasants' Revolt.

3. _____

This town owes its origin to a chapel built here in 558 by St Monulphus, Bishop of Maastricht. A later Bishop of Maastricht, St Lambert, was murdered in this area, traditionally because he had accused Pepin of Heristal of incest. His successor, St Hubert, built a basilica in his memory and shortly afterwards, in 720, moved his see to this town.

Extra information: In the 15th C the ferocious Guillaume de la Marck, s _____ (nick-named) 'the Wild Boar of the Ardennes' because his followers wore boarskins, terrorised the countryside around this town. Much later, the building of the Albert Canal (1939) to link the Meuse and the Scheldt, made this city Europe's third-largest in _____ (not situated on the seacoast) port.

4. _____

A settlement grew up here in the 10th C. Along with Bruges and Ghent it became a powerful medieval centre deriving great wealth from its weaving industry. Much later it became the Stalingrad or Hiroshima of the Great War.

5. _____

Archaeologic excavations have proved that this site was occupied as long as neolithic times. Originally an extensive area of marsh, it offered the Gallo-Roman inhabitants a safe refuge from the Franks. The village gradually grew more important, largely because it provided an easy river crossing on the old trade route from Cologne to Ghent and Bruges.

6. _____

This town is thought by some to have derived its name from Diana, the Roman goddess of the hunt. It grew into a prosperous medieval town famed for/famous for producing ornate metalwork, objects made from copper, brass or bronze. The town was pillaged and burnt by Charles the Bold in 1466 after it rebelled against Burgundian rule. 800 townspeople were bound together back to back and thrown into the Meuse.

7. _____

According to a popular local tradition it was founded on a camp established by Julius Caesar. The first written reference to the settlement, however, occurs in a 9th C chronicle when the area was under Viking rule. The Norsemen were eventually defeated at the end of the 9th C by Arnold (=Arnulf) of Carinthia, who built a castle on the north edge of the town.

Extra information: Violent conflicts pitted the clothmakers guilds against the p _____ class,

and a major riot broke out in 1378, culminating in the capture of the town hall. The nobles who had taken refuge there were unceremoniously de (thrown out of the window(s)) and impaled on the p (long-handled spears) of the citizens waiting below.

8.

It was established as a town, possibly during the 7th C, but was later destroyed by the Vikings and then rebuilt in the 10th C by Baldwin III. It was outside the walls of this town that one of the first defeats of elite mounted knights was inflicted by a trained infantry of yeomen and burghers.

9.

Probably began/started off as a Roman military post on a hill just east of the road from Bavai to Utrecht. Philippa of Hainaut, wife of Edward III of England, was born here. The town prospered under Charles V, when it was famous for the quality of its cloth.

Extra information: It was here, during the G..... (First World War), that the myth took hold of the 'Angel of', the appearance in the sky of a heavenly being, giving h (courage) to the British and t (filling with terror) their enemies.

10.

It was established as a hilltop fortress by the Spaniards in 1666 and named after/for king Charles II of Spain.

11.

Shortly after 57 BC it became a walled Roman settlement on the road from Bavai to Cologne. Belgium's first Christian town, it was the first bishopric to be established in Belgium.

12.

The earliest record/account of a settlement here dates back to the 2nd C. The first church is said to have been built by St Amand in 660. Benedictine monks from Ireland later began to drain the nearby polders. A fortress built here was destroyed by the Vikings in the 9th C. In the 11th C Godfrey of Bouillon was one of its margraves.

13.

Ordained by St Clodulphus of Metz, Trudo founded an abbey in c 660 on his father's estate. Ruled by the prince-bishops of Liège from the 13th C, the town has a Walloon "perron" to symbolise its liberty, but also a Flemish belfry, which serves the same role.

14.

Once of great strategic importance, the town has been invaded many times. In the 13th C it was incorporated into the county of Flanders. In 1484 Maximilian captured the town when he subdued the Netherlands and in 1706 Marlborough took this town.

Extra information: In 1667, Louis XIV was forced to a (give up) his siege of this town because the defenders had f (inundated) the surrounding countryside. "A (damned) town!", he cried, "I would need an army of ducks to capture you!"

3.2. And now for the grand finale!



15. _____

In 1496 Philip the Handsome married Joanna of Castile in the Brabant Gothic church here. The small picturesque houses of the _____ (beguine community) are not numbered but bear evocative names such as 'The Flight Into Egypt' and 'The Five Small Wounds'. It is the _____ (connected with history) background for Lydia Verbeeck's whodunit 'Toevluchtsoord'.

16. _____

Like Breda in the Netherlands, Dillenburg in Germany, and Orange in France, this town was a possession of the House of Orange, of which the most illustrious (famous and admired) member was William of Nassau or William the Silent (1533-1584), who led the revolt of the _____ C _____ (the Netherlands) against Spain. His eldest son, Philip-William, was buried in the town church.

17. _____

Prosperity came to this small town with the cloth trade in the 13th C. It was attacked by Charles the Bold and sacked in 1489 by Maximilian of Austria. It was pillaged several times and burnt by the Spanish in the 16th C. Joseph II razed the town's fortifications (a complex of towers, walls, gun positions, etc, built as a means of defence) in 1782. It was the scene of German brutality in 1914 when 400 houses were burnt and 149 citizens were murdered, including the mayor (burgomaster).

(Adapted from Blyth, D., *Blue Guide Belgium*)

(Adapted from the Green Guide, *Belgium, Grand Duchy of Luxembourg*)

How to interpret your results:

- 17 out of 17: Full marks! Fabulosomundo!
- 12 to 16: Well Done!
- 9 to 11: Try harder. No pain, no gain.
- 9 out of 17: By the skin of your teeth.
- Less than 9 out of 17: Have it signed by your parents!
- 3 out of 17 or less: You'll need a check-up from the neck up.

Grammar tip:

Look at this sentence :

Historians/Archaeologists/Scholars say that the first church was built by St Amand.

In English this may be changed into two typical English constructions :

a. St Amand is said to have built the first church. (= a perfect infinitive)

b. The first church is said to have been built by St Amand. (= a passive perfect infinitive)

Notice that the subject of the a)-sentence is the agent in the sub-clause of our first sentence.

b)-sentence is the subject in the sub-clause of the first sentence.

If you translate these sentences into Dutch you get something like :

Men

Er

Now, do the same for these sentences :

Historians say that Charleroi was founded by the Spaniards in 1066.

a. The Spaniards are

b. Charleroi is

Historians think that Liège originated in 705.

a. Not possible since there is no agent in the original sentence!

b. Liège is

3.3. Vocabulary

How is it said? Find the exact words or expressions in the quiz on the origin of 17 towns.

- 1. to have as a starting point, to come into being (as)
- 2. to originate as to
- 3. to have lasted or existed since to
- 4. according to what (local) people and records tell us from
- 5. at first, in the beginning
- 6. to start the building or development of, to create
- 7. to change into

8. to become successful and rich to become
9. well-known for
10. to build again
11. to be controlled by
12. to be given the same name as (BrE)
..... (AmE)
13. a place where two or more rivers flow together
14. a place in a river where the water is not very deep, and where it can be crossed on foot or in a vehicle
15. a place where a river can be crossed
16. a place that provides protection or shelter from danger
17. a written statement of (historical) facts or events

3.4. Vocabulary. Complete the text by using expressions from 3.3.

Mechelen (a) to / (all the way) to /
 d..... from the early Middle Ages. It (b) as / as
 / as a settlement in the marshy land beside the river Dijle. However, it
 (c) its real origin to an abbey which was (d) here in 756
 by St Rumbald who converted the people to Christianity. Some historical (e) /
 describe him as the bishop of Dublin and the son of the king of Scots (which
 at that period meant the Irish). He was martyred in 775, (f) / according to
 for criticising two men about their evil ways. His body was dredged from
 the Dijle and a church was built on the spot where he was buried. The settlement (g) into
 / into / a fiefdom, (h) under the of
 / by the prince-bishops of Liège. In the 14th C Mechelen belonged to the Counts of Flan-
 ders, but legacies and bequests later brought it (i) under the of the Dukes of Burgundy.
 The town (j) / became and entered its most illustrious period.



3.5. "I'm Going Home"

Write a similar text about, or prepare a similar kind of presentation of, the town or village where you were born. Use expressions and words from the texts and exercises above, but, by no means, restrict yourself to these. Try to come up with a few other expressions and suitable words.

4. The origin of Ghent

4.1. Reading

Ghent developed and grew around the confluence of the Scheldt and the Lys; the name of the town is derived from the Celtic 'ganda', meaning a confluence or estuary. From the rather sparse archaeological finds it can be proved that the Ghent region had already been inhabited by Neanderthal man. The lie of the land and the geography were actually ideal for the development of settlements: the two great rivers, Scheldt and Leie/Lys, branched into numerous channels, with between them silted-up fertile land and a few higher sandy ridges looking out over the flat plain.

In Mesolithic times (8000-4000 BC) these higher sandy ridges were inhabited by hunter-gatherers. Traces of (later) Neolithic settlements can be found in the town centre, the Port Arthur harbour area, and in the suburbs of Drongen and Sint-Denijs-Westrem. Numerous burials are evidence of widespread habitation in the Bronze and Iron Ages. In the late Iron Age (500-450 BC up to the Roman invasion) the region was in the Celtic sphere of influence. Economic life was largely based on agriculture and animal husbandry, but in addition some crafts – such as metal-working – and trade flourished. It was also in this period that the first coins were minted in the Ghent region.

Remains of several settlements from the Roman period and of Roman occupation centres have been found in the Ghent area, but it is far from certain that these were the direct predecessors of the medieval town. Even the theory of a large Gallo-Roman 'vicus' is now no longer generally accepted.

In any case, by the early 7th C there must have been a substantial settlement. Around 625-630 Amandus/St Amand, a missionary from Aquitaine in southern France, was one of those who were sent to come and preach the Christian faith in our region. Impassioned by the Irish inspired ideal of the 'peregrinatio pro Christo', the wandering as a missionary in foreign parts, the so-called 'apostle of Belgium' was active in various far-flung corners of the Merovingian empire: the Basques in the Pyrenees, the Slavs at the Danube, in the bishopric of Tongeren-Maastricht; and also and particularly in the Scheldt basin.



Portus Ganda today



Ghent at the confluence of Leie and Scheldt

The Merovingian kings (e.g. Dagobert I) supported these Christianization campaigns. Later, the Carolingian princes involved the Church even more closely in their politics. The abbey formed an important link in the unity of their realm. They were able to maintain control over the Church and its possessions by the appointment of abbots. It was no coincidence that Louis the Pious appointed his courtier Einhard, the biographer of his father Charlemagne, abbot of Saint Peter's Abbey (and others).

Today, historians see the history of foundation as follows. As his 'operations base', Amandus first targeted a little monastery on the Scheldt, on the Blandinus hill ('Blandinium'); This place of residence was a sufficient distance away from the hostile population of the settlement of 'Ganda'. Once Amandus began to get results, this modest monastery grew into a fully-fledged monastic community of both monks and nuns, which later

grew into St Peter's Abbey.

Aside from this, Amandus also founded a church in or near the settlement of Ganda. Bavo, a follower of Amandus, was living outside Ghent as a hermit. After his death, a local cult developed and Bavo's bones were transferred to the church in Ganda. Thanks to the many and varied donations inspired by the tomb of Bavo, a monastic community began to develop here, too. This became St Bavo's Abbey and it quickly exceeded Blandinium in prosperity.

(Adapted from 'The Saint Peter's Abbey in Ghent'-brochure)

The Ghent region grew steadily in importance. One of the oldest early medieval occupation centres may have been located in the village of Zandberg, near the Nederscheldt, which was probably the site of the first 'portus'. When the threat of a Viking invasion became real, St Bavo's Abbey was fortified and Charles the Great had an armada built here at the beginning of the 9th C as protection against the men from the North. Another settlement grew up around a castle built by Baldwin Iron Arm in ca 867. Sited at the confluence of the Leie and the Lieve, the castle was to offer protection against the Vikings, who had already penetrated as far as Ghent in 851. In 879 they invaded the region again and sacked the early medieval trading centre and both abbeys. After the Viking raids, at the beginning of the 10th C, the abbeys were restored and fortifications were built by the Counts of Flanders on the present-day site of the Gravensteen. A second portus also developed there, the Lys port. Ghent became an important centre of the wool industry. The fact that both great abbeys kept extensive flocks of sheep on the salt flats along the coast of Flanders and Zeeland, will very likely have had something to do with that. (From ca 1100, however, the better quality wool was mostly imported from England).

In 942 the bishop of Tournai consecrated the Church of St John (now St Bavo's Cathedral) and by 1100, the Churches of St Jacob, St Nicholas and St Michael could already be seen on their present-day location.



Guild halls at the Leie/Lys port



The same port of Ghent, painting by Pieter Benedictus de Maere

In the 11th and 12th C the town was fortified and enlarged. At the end of the 11th C the Count of Flanders put Ghent under the jurisdiction of its own bench of aldermen. Grain was imported from Artois via the Lys and the Scheldt. Ghent was able to acquire the right to a grain staple, which not only ensured the rapid growth of the medieval Lys port 'Tusschen Bruggen' (between the bridges), but also assured the town of plentiful stocks of food. Later on, ships were unloaded here as late as the first half of the 20th C. The digging of canals or waterways made it possible to carry on trade more efficiently and gave the town an economic boost each time.

4.2. Comprehension

1. Where does the name 'Ghent' come from?
2. Why was the lie of the land and the geography ideal for the development of a settlement?
3. Was the Ghent region already inhabited before the Roman invasion?
4. The first half of the 7th C marked an important step in the development of Ghent. Explain.
5. How did the Merovingian and Carolingian kings react to the Christianization of their realm?
6. What was the biggest threat to Ghent in the 9th C and the beginning of the 10th C? How did Ghent react?
7. When, where and how did the Leie/Lys port develop?
8. How did the abbeys of St Bavo and St Peter originate?

4.3. Water of life!

Just like Venice or Bruges, Ghent is a water town, too. But Ghent has never contented itself with the natural waterways. There is probably no other town in the world which made such great efforts to participate in international shipping and trade. When a Belgian is born with a brick in his stomach, then the people of Ghent have a wheelbarrow and spade under their belt. Here are seven digging-operations that connected the natural waterways with each other and with the sea. Put them in the correct chronological order, and in their historical and economic context, by adding the correct dates.

1. ca 1100 2. 1251 3. 1547 4. 1613 5. 1751 6. 1828 7. 1969

..... Excavation starts of the **Sasse Canal** (Sasse Vaart). Charles V, showing generosity to his birth-place after it had risen against its Emperor, had granted permission for digging the canal link via the Braakman to the Westerscheldt. This achieved a new link with the North Sea, which had been made necessary after the silting up of the Zwin.

..... Start of the excavation of the **Lieve**, 52 km long, joining the Lys past the low bridge at the Gravensteen. The Countess of Flanders, Margaret II of Constantinople, gave permission to dig this canal, which starts in the castle moat of the Castle of the Counts, linking Ghent to Damme and from there, by lock with the Zwin and the North Sea. The new waterway acted as a catalyst for the growth of the Ghent economy. The town had an absolute monopoly of this canal. The surrounding villages were not allowed to dig side canals or establish depots or warehouses. The outland along the canal helped to fill the town coffers.



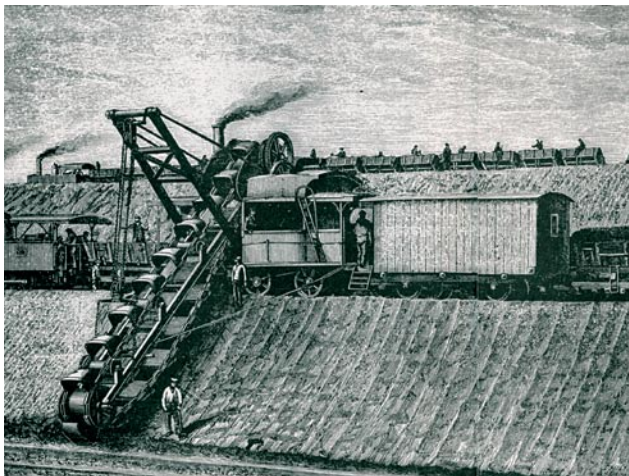
The Lieve, linking Ghent to Damme



The Ketelvest

..... Digging of the **Ketelvest**, the canal linking the Lys and the Scheldt, which also serves as a boundary between Ghent and St Pietersdorp. It was part of a ring of water around a town which had grown from ca 7 ha to 80 ha.

..... When Belgium and Holland were united into the United Kingdom of the Netherlands under William I, the border between Flanders/Belgium and Holland disappeared. So, the **Canal to Terneuzen**, Ghent's new link via the Westerscheldt with the North Sea, was excavated. It was widened and deepened several times after Belgian independence and developed into the backbone of the Ghent industry. Around 1860, people from all over the world came to watch (and study) the steam-driven digging machines (used for widening the canal). The same type of machines was later used for the Suez Canal which is, by the way, smaller than the Ghent Sea Canal.



Digging the Canal of Terneuzen



The Coupure

..... Under Maria Theresa, Empress of Austria the **Coupure** was dug, a short-cut between the Brugse Vaart and the Lys. Ghent became prosperous again from the shipping and the many new businesses establishing themselves.

..... After the secession of the Republic of the United Provinces the border line ran straight through the Sasse Canal. So, the excavation of the **Bruges Canal** (Brugse Vaart) was started, connecting Ghent to Bruges, with an extension to Ostend and the sea. This led to a recovery of the economy after the setback due to the iconoclasm and the Spanish occupation. In the Town Archives one can find reports of boatmen sailing from their hometown to Nantes, Bayonne and Bordeaux in France, to San Sebastian in Spain and to Kristianstadt in Sweden.

..... Opening of the **Ring Canal** (Ringvaart). This twenty-two kilometre long canal connects the Upper Scheldt, the Lys, the Bruges Canal and the Sea Canal. It is now one of the busiest waterways in the country.

Adapted from: - Lekens, L., *Guide to Ghent*, Gent: Snoeck-Decaju & Zoon
- Blue Guide
- Green Guide

Interesting website : http://www4.gent.be/nederschelde/openleggen_nedersch...

4.4. Comprehension

1. In which two directions did Ghent carry out digging operations. Explain.
2. Which waterway was very important for Ghent's economic growth in the 13th C?
3. Which canal developed into the backbone of the Ghent industry?

4.5. Vocabulary

Complete the sentences with a suitable word as indicated. All these words are used in the reading-text 4.2., 'The Origin of Ghent' (sentences 1 - 17) and in 4.3., the seven digging operations (sentences 18 - 26).

1. After careful study of the l..... / (AmE) l..... ("ligging" in Dutch) of the land and its geography, it was decided that this was not a good location for a ski resort.
2. Oudenaarde originated as a Roman v..... / o..... c..... (the Latin word for 'settlement'/an English synonym) and became a t..... c..... ('handelscentrum' in Dutch).
3. Around the prehistoric site numerous b..... (an English synonym for 'graves', 'tombs') were discovered.
4. The 'Oude Schelde' at the lovely village of Weert is an old river arm of the Scheldt which s..... u..... (filled with silt) a long time ago.
5. In the Early Middle Ages economic life was largely based on cattle breeding or (AmE) a..... h..... ("veeteelt") and agriculture.
6. A noble person who attended at the court of a king or other ruler was called a c..... ("hoveling").
7. A h..... ("kluizenaar") is a person who lives alone in a hermitage, for religious reasons.
8. Very soon the power of the Carolingian Mayors of the Palace e..... (was greater than) the power of the Merovingian kings.
9. Astronomers claim that they have discovered a black hole in a f..... -f..... ("verafgelegen") corner of the galaxy
10. After just a few hours the storm was turning into a f..... -f..... / (AmE) - ("volwassen", "ten volle ontwikkeld") hurricane.
11. The Latin word for 'port' or 'harbour' is p..... .
12. The archaeologists discovered more than two hundred coins that had been m..... ("geslagen") under Julius Caesar.
13. Everything was quiet, a..... f..... (AmE) / a..... f..... (BrE) (except for) the occasional sound of a car in the distance.
14. It was t..... t..... (because of) your stupidity that we lost the game
15. The Bonneville S..... F..... ('zoutvlaktes'), in northwestern Utah, are famous for their use as the Bonneville Speedway and the land speed records that were set there.

Find information on a famous Belgian, Camille Jenatzy.
Check the internet 'Land speed records'.

16. The pagan Celts were im..... (filled with deep feelings) by the biblical stories of the Christian missionaries.
17. "I w..... ("dwaalde", "zwierf rond") lonely as a cloud
That floats on high o'er vales and hills
When all at once I saw a crowd
A host of golden
18. A twenty-two k..... long canal is a canal that is twenty-two kilometres long.

Spelling tip :

Fill in, if necessary : - a four hour.... flight takes four hour...
- a seven day.... tour lasts seven day....

19. The construction workers plan to e..... (dig) a large hole before putting in the foundations.
20. Land that was farmed out ("verpacht") to somebody was called o..... (cf. leasehold)
21. The O'Stone Company has been g..... (given) permission to pull down the old theatre.
22. The s..... of some southern states from the USA in the 1860's led to a civil war, the War of S..... (1861-1865).
23. The deadly Russian winter was a serious s..... ("tegenslag", "terugval") to Hitler's hopes of a swift victory.
24. Small farmers form the b..... ("ruggegraat") of the Rumanian economy.
25. Robin and Tim were late for school, so they took a s..... c..... (a quicker, more direct way) across the fields.
26. The price of gold has risen again, d..... t..... (because of, caused by) rumours of war.



4.6. Assignments

1. Find more information on the origin and history of St Peter's Abbey and St Bavo's Abbey. Find paintings or drawings (e.g. paintings by Lucas d'Heere and Jan van Doorselaer). For starters you could use the brochure 'The Saint Peter's Abbey in Ghent'.
2. The Caroline Concession was the line which dominated public life in Ghent from 1540 to ca 1700 and it meant the end of civic autonomy. Find more information on the 'Concessio Carolina' and its consequences for Ghent
3. Find information on the port of Ghent: its lay-out and history, the locks at Terneuzen, importance (sea level, ships up to 70,000 tonnes, etc). Compare with Antwerp and Zeebrugge.
4. Find information on other Belgian canals:
 - the Canal of Willebroek
 - the Albert Canal
 - the Leuvense Vaart (Rupel-Mechelen-Leuven)
 - etc

File 6

Civil architecture

1. From Romanesque to Art Nouveau

One of the oldest examples of civil architecture in Belgium is the Gravensteen in Ghent, a well-preserved example of military *romanesque architecture*.

In the 15th century, a period of considerable expansion in religious and civil construction, Belgian architects forged their own interpretation of the French *Gothic style*. Imposing cathedrals were built in Malines and Antwerp, the latter's steeple being some 120 metres high. The wealth of the growing cities was reflected in the impressive town halls and clock towers, worldly drapers' halls and middle class homes.

During the 16th century, the influence of the *Italian renaissance* became particularly visible in civil architecture. Superb examples of this can be seen in the town hall and patrician homes on the Market Square in Antwerp and at the Prince Bishop palace in Liège.

In the 17th and 18th centuries, *baroque* was used first in the religious architecture of the counter-reformation. Religious zeal was to be revived via architecture. However, the baroque influence on civil architecture is also apparent. This is particularly the case with the guild houses on the Grand Place in Brussels and the rococo facades in Ghent and Lier.

Just as in painting and sculpture, the *classical style* dominated architecture in the 18th century without achieving notable fame. The 19th century again saw an abundance of building styles, from neo-classical to neo-Gothic. At the beginning of the 20th century, Belgium was one of the first countries in which «art nouveau» flourished, and this exciting period gave us architects such as Henry Van de Velde and Victor Horta. Their sense of modernism and the experimental has earned Belgian architects international respect right up to the present day.

2. Belfries, chimes of freedom



2.1. The belfry of Bruges

*Thus, I dreamed as I, by night I lay
In Bruges, at the Fleur-de Blé*

*Listening with wild delight
To the chimes that, through the night,*

*Ring their changes from the Belfry
Of the quaint old Flemish city.
Stands the Belfry old and brown
Thrice consumed and thrice rebuilt
Still it watches o'er the town.*

(H. Longfellow)

This poem published in 1846 under the title "The Belfry of Bruges and other Poems" led people for about 75 years to romantic dreams in Bruges.

A belfry is a typical feature of Flemish towns, that sprang up in the Middle Ages. Belfries were built as symbols of communal power and independence. They embodied the vigour and determination of the towns, were the symbols of freedom, just like the leaning Tower of Pisa and others. Often they were combined with Cloth Halls. Their geographical location was confined to Northern France and the Low Countries.

Bells played an overall important role in the everyday life of the city: there was a curfew bell, telling people when to extinguish fires; bells rang when the workers were supposed to start and to finish work, when hostile troops were noticed on the skyline or when some decisions involving the public had to be made.

A bell like "Klokke Roelandt" in Ghent was so much the symbol of freedom, that Charles V, wanting to punish his Ghent, ordered the removal of the bell, thus silencing the town, which experienced this as the ultimate humiliation.

The Belfry in Bruges.

The earliest beginnings reach back to about 1240, when an unpretentious structure was erected in which the early city magistrates gathered. It was the lower section (up to the square corner towers) On the ground the halls consisted of four wings built around an inner court. These halls were used for the sale of cloth (cfr. Arnolfini, painting Van Eyck) and other merchandise, and were in brick by 1240.

By 1280 two stages of the Belfry in the middle of the Southern wing at the side of the market formed the base for a wooden bell tower, which in that year caught fire. As a result the town's charters kept here were also destroyed. The second and most important function of this symbol of urban independence was then vividly revealed: charters and privileges were in the Middle Ages only worth the parchment they were written upon. Once the actual document disappeared the rights granted in it also disappeared. This explained the passionate care and attention paid to these objects throughout the period. No copy had equal authority.

In 1280 the behaviour of Guy of Dampierre, count of Flanders, made this abundantly clear. He refused to renew the privileges, consisting of rights extracted from himself and his equally unwilling predecessors. They had been



granted either a payment for financial support or as a result of armed revolts. They often concerned exemptions from taxations for the town or freedom to elect town officials without the count's intervention. The fire and the loss of the documents seemed to Guy a wonderful opportunity to reassert his power over Bruges. He granted a new charter which contained severely restrained privileges. However it then became obvious that the Flemish towns were not always the victims of divided loyalties, but somehow profited from them. In 1297 the king of France took Bruges in his special protection and granted the town all the privileges it had lost in the fire.

After the fire of 1280 a stone building was quickly begun and finished in about 1300. Many extensions and modifications followed. By the end of the thirteenth century two bells hung in a reconstructed bell-tower. There were two lower square floors, built almost entirely in large bricks, they looked virtually the same as they do today. The high openings in the second stage were probably made at the end of the fourteenth century. Paintings of the fifteenth century show that the octagon in white Brabant stone had not been added before 1480. It was topped by a pinnacle, crowned by Saint Michael, killing the dragon. There was always trouble with these decorations: they were constantly being struck by lightning and finally in 1741 no further attempts were made. The belfry of Bruges, firmly ensconced in the halls on which the town's prosperity depended, surveyed all the violence and festivities which have made this city remarkable.

Bells and Carillons.

The belfry contains an extraordinary and beautiful carillon: about 27 tons of bronze, distributed over 47 bells, the majority of which were cast in 1748, but the very first carillon was constructed in 1528. Above the entrance is a balcony from which the city's administration between the fourteenth and eighteenth centuries proclaimed the laws and regulations to the populace below, summoned by the peals of the great Belfry bell (6 200 kg.) All through the Middle Ages bells played a prominent part in everyday social life.

Aldermen's bell: summoned mayor and aldermen to the meeting in the belfry.
Labour bell : precised when to start/stop the day's work.
Great Belfry bell rang: to arms,
to announce a joyous entry, a "noble" birth, the Hall Announcements
going out of the Holy Blood procession, a victory, the decease of a public figure

Nowadays the big bell, also called "The Triumphant", chimes on New Year's Eve; hundreds of locals (and tourists) welcome the New Year, bottle of "bubbles" in hand.



2.2. Vocabulary

Find the English word in the text for:

beperkt	
achthoekig	
een keure	
vleugel	
verstevigd	
stedelijk	
een klok gieten	
oproepen	
de klok luidt	
vrijstellingen	

2.3. Comprehension

True or false: if false explain!

1. Flemish cities were always the victims of divided loyalties.
2. The geographical locations of the belfries were confined to Northern France and the Low Countries.
3. The ultimate care paid to documents was that parchment was lost, it was of no value anymore.
4. The octagon was built in mellow bricks.
5. The carillon plays its chimes every quarter of an hour during the night.

2.4. Open-end questions.

Find three differences between the belfries of Bruges and Ghent.

3. Guildhouses or guildhalls

3.1. Reading and vocabulary

Together with the (1) q (kade, kaai) opposite, the Korenlei, the Graslei was, from the 11th C, Ghent's first commercial port. Small ships (2) s u (die opvoeren) the Scheldt and the Lys came to (3) m (aanleggen) here. **The Lys port**, which was called "Tussen Bruggen" ("between bridges"), gained in importance when in the 13th C the Lieve was excavated, linking Ghent through the Meetjesland with Damme and the North Sea. Several guildhouses -or halls, and other buildings, are (4) a r of (een herinnering aan) what this area once was. Standing on the Sint-Michielsbrug, you have one of the most fantastic town views in Europe and with some imagination you can see what it must have been like, all those years ago when this was still a real port.

From the 11th C onwards, craftsmen and merchants formed organizations for mutual aid and for the advancement of their professional interests. These 'guilds' became one of the most characteristic organizations of the later medieval period. Their members (5) a (kwamen samen) in guildhalls or guildhouses, where their property, records and insignia were kept. (6) R d (rijkelijk versierde) facades, in Gothic or Renaissance style with a statue of a patron saint, (7) h (heraldisch) beast or other symbol, (8) b w to (getuigen van) the prominent role played by the guilds in the life of the town.



Here are some of the guildhalls of Ghent:

- The first **Corn Measurers' House**, with its typical Flemish (9) (getrapte) gable. Later, the guild moved to their newly bought property, ...
- The second **House of the Corn Measurers**. In 1698 it was converted and given its present Ghent Renaissance (10) (baksteen) façade/facade, (11) o (versierd) with festoons of fruit and cartouches.
- The **Guildhall of the Free Boatmen**. The façade of Balegem (12) (zandsteen) still shows all the characteristics of Brabant Gothic, but some of the details already indicate the coming Renaissance.
- The fanciful **Guildhall of the Unfree Boatmen** has a splendid (13) (stucwerk) renaissance façade from 1739.

- Next to Sint-Michielsbrug is **The Tapeworm** ('Lintworm'), built in 1662 in Renaissance style. At one time the **Guild of Beer Exporters** was established here.
- The curious **Guildhall of the Masons** has six statues of morris dancers on the (14) g (gevelsplits) as a controversial modern addition. In 1912, its façade was reconstructed on the Graslei, on the site where the **The Angel** house had stood previously. (15) N (opmerkelijk, merkwaardig) are the statues of the four crowned martyrs, the patron saints of quarrymen and masons.

One of the oldest and most important squares in Ghent is the enormous **Friday Market**, the scene of many historical episodes. Much of public life was played out here. The square was the background for official receptions of princes and other high dignitaries. It was here, too, that the festivities were organized, that the (16) m (stadswacht, burgerwacht) met, the sometimes bloody feuds between the guilds were fought out, and public executions were carried out (the last one in 1822). The tradition of a weekly Friday market goes back to 1199. Two more guildhalls can be seen here.

- **The Cloth Measurers' House**

- The former **Tanners' Guildhall** was built between ca 1450 and 1483 in Gothic style. The building obviously owes its name, 'Toreken', to the corner turret (17) c (bekroond) by a weathervane in the form of a mermaid.

Sources:

- Lekens, L., *Guide to Ghent*, Gent: Snoeck-Ducaju & Zoon (Snoeck's City Guides)
- Blyth, D., *Belgium*, London: A&C Black, 2000 (Blue Guide)
- *Belgium / Grand Duchy of Luxembourg*, Watford: Michelin Travel Publications, 2004 (Green Guide)
- Wikipedia (Guild)
- <http://www.public.iastate.edu/~gbetcher/373/guilds.htm> (Medieval Guilds)



Guildhouses at the Graslei ...



and Korenlei, Ghent



3.2. Assignments

1. Find more pictures and information on the (exterior, interior, and history of the) guildhouses mentioned above.
2. Do the same for the guildhouses of Bruges, Brussels, Antwerp, etc ...



Guildhouses at the Grand-Place, Brussels



Guildhouses, Antwerp

3. Find more information on the medieval guilds (linked to assignment 4)
 - history and organization – patron saints
 - functions
 - three phases to become an elite member (apprentice, journeyman, and master)
 - types of guilds: merchant guilds – craft guilds (craftsmen) – religious confraternities
 - town militias (“schuttersgilden”)
 - relation with the patricians
 - historic figures
 - influence of guilds, precursors of modern trade unions
4. Find more information on the activities and importance of these guilds:
 - merchants
 - town militias (bowmen or (town) archers; crossbowmen; footbowmen; arquebusiers/harquebusiers (“haakbusschieters”) or musketeers)
 - free boatmen (vs unfree boatmen) / where did they moor?
 - corn measurers or grain weighers
 - masons, stonecutters, quarrymen
 - cloth measurers
 - tanners
 - weavers
 - beer brewers and exporters
 - millers
 - painters and other artists (Guild of St Luke)
 - blacksmiths, silver –and goldsmiths, locksmiths, coppersmiths or braziers, saddlers,
 - joiners, cabinet makers, coopers
 - haberdashers (“furniturehandelars”)
 - glassmakers

- bakers
 - shoemakers
 - butchers
 - etc.
5. Ghent also had/has some staple houses and halls. Find more information on these:
 - the **Great Butchers' Hall** ("Groot Vleeshuis") on the Groentemarkt : private sale of meat was forbidden – a wooden market as early as 1251 – construction of new hall – wooden roof inside – chapel dedicated to St Hubertus – 'Our Lady with the Inkpot' in a niche on the north elevation – offal sheds ("penshuisjes") for the poor – use today – etc.
 - the **Cloth Hall** ("Lakenhal"), opposite the cathedral: focal point for the textile trade – later served as the town jail – access to the Belfry – a reproduction mural of the 1534 'View of Ghent' – militia guild of St Michael – etc.
 - the **Staple House** ("Spijker") on the Graslei: built of Tournai limestone in Romanesque style – warehouse for grain – etc.
 - the **Grain Staple** ("Graanspijker") on the Pensmarkt: former warehouse for grain – converted into four inns – etc.
 6. It is sometimes said that the medieval-Gothic appearance of Ghent was largely the result of the 1913 World Fair : e.g. St Michael's Bridge, post office, etc. Find more information and write a brief text on this subject.
 7. Between 1530 and 1595, 252 death sentences were executed in Ghent (burning at the stake, hanging from a gallows, decapitation, or drowning), following a number of heresy trials. When judgement was pronounced by the Council of Flanders, the sentence was carried out at the Veerleplein. When pronounced by the bench of aldermen, the execution took place at the Vijdagsmarkt. Find more information.
 8. During the Middle Ages, merchants from different cities started to form hanses or hanseatic leagues ("stedenbonden"), in order to protect trade and to cope with certain problems (pirates, highwaymen, high tollage, etc). Here are three. Find more information.
 - the Flemish Hanse of London, led by Bruges, protected the wool trade from England.
 - the Hanse of the 17 Cities focused mainly on Italy and the annual fairs of Champagne.
 - the German Hanse or Hanseatic League became the most important, uniting ca 160 Hanseatic towns in the 14th C.

4. Town halls



4.1. The Brussels town hall, one of the finest Gothic buildings in Europe

Introduction

The Town hall currently comprises a large collection of works of art and, in particular, tapestries made in Brussels. But, in fact, it is not in any way a museum because the building still houses today some of the local council departments (the offices of the deputy burgomasters, the local council secretariat, the protocol department, etc.). All the rooms on the first floor are still used on a daily basis, whether for meetings, functions or weddings.



Brussels Town Hall



Gothic Hall Brussels

The wings

Nowadays, its appearance is that of a large quadrilateral around a central courtyard. The oldest part runs along the Grand-Place and dates from the 15th century. It was built in two stages: the L-shaped east wing (along Rue Charles Buls and the Grand-Place as far as the tower) was begun in 1402 by the architect J. Van Thienen and completed in 1421. The design was partly based on fortified residences and partly on covered markets with an external staircase beneath a portico. A few decades later, it was decided to enlarge the Town Hall and the west wing was constructed as far as Rue de la Tête d'Or. The few visible differences do not interrupt the overall harmony. The ground-floor consists of two galleries lined with arcades supported by jambs (left) and alternating jambs and columns (right). To the right there is the Lion Staircase forming the main entrance to the original town hall. Above the two upper stories is a crenelated balustrade reminiscent of medieval fortified mansions. The horizontal line has been skillfully integrated into the verticality of the building as a whole, using full panels placed in line with the piers. The huge sloping roof has four rows of dormer windows.

The tower

In 1449, a monumental tower erected by J. Van Ruysbroek replaced the old belfry. The lower section has a square design, with four stories of two windows, from the cornice upwards the windows are traceried. The second section is octagonal with three storeys and is flanked by bellcotes. Above them are pinnacles which draw the eye upwards to the pyramid-shaped spire. This elegant piece of lacework in stone stands around 96 m tall and is topped by a statue of St Michael, the work of M. Van Rode (\pm 5 m tall) placed there in 1454 by the corporation of foundrymen on a huge ball bearing. This statue serves as a weathervane. It was removed for restoration in 1993.

The sculptures

The original sculptures are stored in the town's municipal museum. In the 19th century, the frontage, sidewalls, tower and galleries were decorated with more than 200 statues. The ones in the freeze separating the two stories on the left wing and beneath the canopy in the right wing represent the province's dukes and duchesses. The lay out of the galleries is a particularly fine example of the work of the Brussels school which reached its heyday around 1450.

To the left are some interesting brackets depicting an amazing variety of secret and profane themes. The sculptures to the right serve as reminders of the names of the three houses whose owners were expropriated in order to leave way for the building of the new wing. Capitals, corbels, brackets and keystones bear ornamentation that is designed to whet the curiosity. People piling up chairs refer to "the Scupstoel", monks drinking and eating are a reminder of "the Papenkelder" while scenes of a harem remind visitors of "the Moor".

The coving round the portal beneath the tower is decorated with eight prophets. The striking realism and the soft draped clothing indicate that they were carved in the late 14th century. For a long time they were attributed to Claus Sluter who carved Philip of Burgundy's tomb in Dijon.

The inner courtyard is decorated by two fountains: the *Scheldt* (Pierre Denis- Plumier) and the Meuse (Jean de Kinder).

Whether Audenaerde and Leuven like it or not, the size and tower of the Town hall of Brussels make it the finest such construction in the country. Described by Théophile Gautier as " a miraculous building" and by Victor Hugo as a "jewel comparable to the spire on Chartres Cathedral", the monument owes its partial survival to the fact that , in 1695, the French used the tower as a line-of-sight! The façades were raised from the ruins and the building as a whole is subject to regular restoration work.

(Michelin Brussels, ed. 1996 ; www.monarchie.be/laurentclaire/en/town_hall/index.html)

Website for the royal wedding of Prince Laurent and princess Claire 12 April 2003



4.2. Comprehension

1. Describe the building history of the wings and the tower of the Town Hall.
2. Explain: "elegant lacework in stone".
3. What three types of sculpture can we distinguish?
4. Why is the town hall easily confused with a museum or a church?

4.3. Vocabulary

Try to find the meaning of the following building nomenclature.

1. Quadrilateral	2. courtyard	3. portico	4. arcade	5. jamb	6. column
7. crenelated balustrade	8. mansion	9. pier	10. dormer window	11. cornice	12. tracery
13. bellcote	14. pinnacle	15. spire	16. canopy	17. bracket	18. capital
19. corbel	20. keystone	21. coving			

Use a dictionary and

<http://www.pitt.edu/~medart/menuglossary/INDEX.HTM>

<http://www.answers.com/>

<http://www.artlex.com/>

(pay attention to correct pronunciation)

5. Cloth halls

5.1. The Ypres cloth hall

The *origins of Ypres* go back to the 10th century when a settlement grew at the place where the Paris to Bruges trade route crossed the river Ieperlee. The river was navigable in those days but is now covered. The town became a powerful medieval centre deriving great wealth from its weaving industry. It shared with Bruges and Ghent the effective control of Flanders. When the cloth hall was built in c 1260 – 1304, Ypres was one of the greatest cities of Europe, with a population of some 40,000. Cloth from Ypres was in great demand throughout Europe. It was sold as far as Novgorod in the 12th century.



Ypres cloth hall after World War I ...



and nowadays

The prosperity of Ypres began to wane towards the end of the 14th century. In 1383 the English, aided by 20,000 troops from Ghent, besieged the city. Ypres held out but the surrounding district was ravaged. The weavers were forced to leave, taking their lucrative industry with them. Chaucer's description of the skill of the Wife of Bath as surpassing that of the weavers of "Ypres and Gaunt" dates from about this time. The dispersion of the weavers marked the beginning of a period of decline. Rivalries between the towns and the rigid traditionalism of their guilds hastened the recession. By the end of the 16th century the population had dwindled to 5000.

The Cloth hall (*lakenhalle*) on the market place is considered the most splendid secular Gothic building in Belgium. It symbolizes the wealth and power of the Ypres' cloth industry. After surviving centuries of siege and warfare the hall was completely destroyed by the Germans in November 1914. It remained in ruins until 1933-34 when works began on a faithful reconstruction but it wasn't until 1967 that it was formally opened by King Baudouin.

The façade is 125m long and crowned by a superb square belfry 70m high. The present spire with its helmet and dragon of 1692 is an exact copy of the original. It has a carillon of 49 bells which cover 4 octaves.

The lower courses of the Cloth Hall incorporate part of the original 13th century building. Above the Donkerpoort are the municipal coat of arms and a statue of Our Lady of Thuyne, the protectress of Ypres since the English siege of 1383.

The statues on the right-hand side of the passage represent Earl Baldwin IX of Flanders and his consort, Mary of Champagne, who laid the first stone in 1200. The statues to the left of the belfry show King Albert and queen Elisabeth during whose reign the reconstruction was begun. A memorial to the right of the entrance commemorates the French victims of 1914-18.

Against the east face of the edifice stands the elegant Nieuwwerck, whose Renaissance style contrasts markedly with the Gothic of the main building. Originally built between 1619 and 1624, and reconstructed after the war, this annex now serves as a town hall.

The Cloth hall, a UNESCO World heritage Site, was one of the largest commercial buildings of the Middle Ages, when it served as the main market and warehouse for the Flemish city's prosperous cloth industry.

(Adapted from Wikipedia)



5.2. Vocabulary

Which of the underlined words corresponds with the definition?

devastate, pillage, sack	
obtain or receive from a source.	
scatter in different directions	
decrease gradually, decline	
sufficiently deep or wide to provide passage for vessels	

5.3. Speaking

1. Retell the origin of Ypres in your own words
2. Brugge, Eeklo, Gent, Herentals, Ieper, Krakau, Leiden, Leipzig, Leuven, Lier, Mechelen, Oudenaarde, Zinnik, Zoutleeuw, Zwickau ... are all towns with a cloth hall. Make a short presentation on the building and its place in the city's history.

6. Castles in the air

6.1 Vocabulary

Match these words with the definitions.

barbican	keep	rampart (2X)
battlements	knights' hall	secret passage
caponier	loophole	sentry walk
cistern	moat	stockade
courtyard	moated castle	stronghold
curtain walls	(open) country castle	terp
donjon	outhouse	torture room
drawbridge	palisade	"turris major"
dungeon	parapet	watchtower
entrance gates	portcullis	well
fortress		

- 1. an artificial, man-made mound
- 2. a wide bank of earth or a stone wall built to protect a fort or city
- 3. a fence of wooden stakes, fixed in the ground, forming a defence or enclosure
- 4. the same as 3
- 5. an outbuilding or annex
- 6. the fortified main tower
- 7. the same as 6
- 8. the same as 6
- 9. a deep, wide ditch around a castle or medieval town, usually filled with water
- 10. a walk for the guards (who patrolled the walls of a castle)
- 11. "borstwering" in Dutch; sometimes used as a synonym for 'rampart'
- 12. notched parapets built on top of a wall; "kantelen" in Dutch
- 13. water castle
- 14. a fortified place
- 15. the same as 14
- 16. a castle situated in a plain
- 17. the gated entry
- 18. one or two towers (or other fortification) on the approach to a castle or town, especially one at a gate or drawbridge
- 19. a bridge that can be raised (to prevent access or to permit passage beneath it)
- 20. a grating of iron or wooden bars, suspended in the gateway of a fortified place and lowered to block passage
- 21. a hidden passage that is used to travel stealthily or as an escape route

- 22. an observation tower on which a guard or lookout is stationed.
- 23. an open space surrounded by walls or buildings
- 24. hall for the medieval, high-born, gentleman-soldiers
- 25. small hole or slit in a wall through which arms could be fired
- 26. an outer or enclosing wall, especially one connecting two towers or turrets
- 27. a dark, often underground chamber or cell used to confine prisoners
- 28. a covered passageway (and means of defence) that traversed the ditch between the walls of a fortress and a ravelin outside the walls
- 29. a room where pain was inflicted on a prisoner as a means of punishment or coercion
- 30. a deep hole or shaft sunk into the earth to obtain water
- 31. a receptacle or tank for holding and storing (rain)water

6.2. Vocabulary

Now, complete the text with the missing words and make them plural if necessary:

There are approximately 3000 castles, farm castles, citadels, manors (manor houses) or palaces in Belgium, which makes it the country with more castles per square mile than anywhere else in the world. Some regions (e.g. the Condroz, Hesbaye, Brabant, ...) have an average of two castles per village. Most of them go back in history a long way and were destroyed, rebuilt and converted. Over 400 of them are open to the public, either for sightseeing, receptions, seminars, events or as hotels, restaurants or holiday centres.

The first fortifications were built on (1) man-made mounds surrounded by a ditch, a (2) and a wooden (3) or (4) (traces of these can still be seen at Bornem, Sint Winoksbergen, etc). Inside were usually a wooden dwelling, some (5) and the (6) or main tower, from which the medieval (7) or (8) later evolved. The invasions of the Vikings, the division of Charlemagne's empire and the rise of feudalism had a direct influence on the rate of castle building. In the course of time stone fortifications were built (often on the same site) and these became the real castles and strongholds that may still be seen today all over Belgium. Their main purpose was to ensure a safe retreat against intrusion or invasion. Consequently castles were preferably built on rocks or hilltops, as in Wallonia. In the flat plains of Flanders water castles arose, surrounded by a (9) On the walls there was a (10) along the bulwark or (11) which was protected by (12) and towers. Inside the thick walls were sleeping quarters, a chapel, stables, a donjon or keep and other buildings.

From the 15th C onwards, however, canons and firearms appeared, which was the end of the medieval strongholds since these fortified castles became more and more useless. They were replaced by elegantly-furnished châteaux, which were either new buildings or adaptations of the old castles around the defensive moat and

keep (donjon). They were built for greater comfort and in more pleasant and convenient locations. A distinctive Belgian style developed in the 18th C, based on a picturesque mixture of brick and stone, numerous pepper-pot turrets and often a central tower decorated with a curious onion dome. Most Belgian châteaux we see today have retained this style in defiance of subsequent French, Baroque and Neo-classical influences.

Fill in the names of these great Belgian castles :



.....

A.

This (13) situated in open country, was begun by Robert the Frisian in the 11th C as a wooden octagonal (14) or (15) After being partially destroyed during the wars of religion and again under Napoleon, it was almost entirely reconstructed in the neo-gothic style in the second half of the 19th C. It is one of the historically most important and most beautiful Flemish castles.

Assignment : Three important historical events took place here, involving the English King Edward I in 1292, Mary of Burgundy in 1482 and the Belgian King Leopold III in 1940. What happened?



B.

Perched dramatically on a rocky outcrop overlooking the picturesque village of Celles and its old Romanesque church, this turreted feudal castle has an air of fairy-tale like few others. Tradition has it that the first castle was built by Pepin of Her(i)stal.

C.

This (16) is flanked by a 14th C keep, which, together with the (17) is the only remaining trace of the original medieval castle of the 13th – 15th C. Like most late medieval castles built in a plain, it was constructed as an irregular polygon surrounded by a wide moat. The rest of the castle is Flemish Renaissance and was built of brick with stone string courses ((zand)steenstroken). For comic strip aficionados it is the castle of The Red Knight.

Assignment : The castle is said to be haunted. By whom?

D.



Built around 1270 by Count Philippe of Vianden and his wife Mary of Brabant it is one of the best preserved medieval castles in the Benelux, situated in the valley of the Orneau. On the outside it looks impressive, and indeed impregnable, with its 7 cylindrical towers, (18), (19), (20) and moat, which is spanned by a stone bridge. On the inside it looks peaceful and perfect. The chapel has two

(21)

E.

This romantic-looking castle is one of Flanders' greatest. Like most Flemish castles, it is built of red bricks instead of stones as is usually the case with medieval castles in Wallonia. Surrounded by a very large moat, it has retained its medieval appearance : sentry walks, a drawbridge and three (22), which are rounded on the outside (for defensive) purposes, but have typical Flemish step gables on the flat side facing the (23) It is featured in one of the blue "Suske en Wiske" comics. ("Willy and Wanda" in America; "Bob and Bobette" in England)

F.

The keep, surrounded by walls and standing on a rocky spur in a magnificent forest setting, gives the impression that the centuries have left it untouched and ready to defy any attacker. However, in the early 1960s there was nothing on this site but ruins. It was resurrected thanks to the efforts of Professor Overloop who rebuilt it using 17th C engravings, showing the castle at the height of its splendour, when it was owned by the Metternich family. The (24) (or great hall) and the chapel with their flagstone floors are particularly striking.

G.



This castle was erected on a swampy plain around 1450 with all the defensive features of the time : a moat, massive round towers, a drawbridge and (25)

In the 17th and 18th C the original (26) between the towers were replaced by a U-shaped building, the crenallated (van kantelen voorzien) towers were covered with bulbous domes, and the inner court-

yard was completely remodelled. Local history has it that Jean II de Berlo went on a crusade in 1453 to free Constantinople from the Turks, but he took so long getting there that he arrived too late.

H.

The first castle was built in the 8th C by the Counts, later Dukes, of Lower Lorraine. Later on, the Prince-Bishops of Liège ruled the duchy through local lords like the La Marck family. With its warren of passages, defensive ditches, vaulted rooms, damp (27), ramparts, watchtowers and (28), it is Belgium's largest remaining example of medieval (feudal) architecture. The fortress also has a (29), a (30), a large (31), an armourer's workshop, etc.

Assignment : Find more information on its most famous owner ...

Adapted from :

<http://www.visitbelgium.com>

http://www.eupedia.com/belgium/belgian_castles.shtml

<http://www.belgiancastles.be/castlehistory.html>

<http://www.castles.me.uk/>

Belgium / Grand Duchy of Luxembourg, Watford: Michelin Travel Publications, 200 (Green Guide)

Blyth, D., *Belgium*, 9th edition. London: A&C Black, 2000 (Blue Guide)

Burchten en Kastelen Van België, Brussel: N.V.Historia, 1973



6.3. Assignments

1. Both words “château” and “castle” have their roots in the Latin word “castrum” or “castella”. Find more information on these Roman castles.
2. For many years people added this phrase to their prayers : “From the wrath of the Norsemen, save us, oh Lord.” Explain.
3. Write a text on the castle of Gaasbeek, which is also connected to the murder of Everhard ‘t Serclaes, the liberator of Brussels, and Lamoraal, Count of Egmont, who was executed on the Grand Place in Brussels in 1568.
4. Here is a list of other well-known Belgian castles for more assignments :
 - Commandery of Alden-Biesen
 - Beauvoorde Manor House
 - Castle of Beloeil
 - Castle of Beusdael
 - Castle of Bornem
 - Castle of Bossenstein
 - Castle of the Counts, Ghent
 - Castle of Ecaussinnes-Lalaing
 - Castle of Harzé
 - Castle of Jehay
 - Castle of Kruishoutem
 - Castle of Laarne
 - Castle of Loppem
 - Castle of Modave (and nature reserve)
 - Castle of Ooidonk
 - Farm castle of Samart
 - Castle of Spontin
 - Castle of Tillegem
 - etc.
5. Was life comfortable in these medieval castles? How were the windows closed off from the rain and cold? When were stained-glass windows introduced? Where did the occupants sleep? How were the rooms lighted? Was there a fireplace? How did they keep warm? What about the furniture? Etc.
6. Select one of these illustrious castles/fortresses for an assignment:
 - King Herod the Great’s fortress of Masada, Israel
 - The Hradcany hill fortress in Prague, Czech Republic
 - Emperor Frederick II’s Castel del Monte, Italy
 - The Malbork, fortress and monastery, Poland
 - The Château of Chambord in the Loire Valley, France
 - Neuschwanstein Castle in Bavaria, Germany
 - Versailles, France
 - Krak des Chevaliers/Castle of Knights, Syria
 - Maiden Castle, Great Britain
 - The fortresses of the Kingdom of Van (also called Urarta), at the place where Armenia, Iran and Turkey meet
 - The citadels/strongholds of Mycenae and Tiryns, Greece
 - Himeji Castle, Japan

7. The Tower of London

When it comes to bloodshed, the English have a unique claim to fame: in hardly any country is the ancient Royal seat bathed in such a demonic light as it is in Great Britain. The Tower on the east side of the old city of London is not a symbol of glorious past or spectacular festivities. On the contrary, here the shadows of malice and revenge, death and depravity lurk in every corner.

For centuries the defiant fortress was the scene of secret, mostly murderous plots. It was also used as a state prison until 1820, and has gone down in history for the countless executions which took place within its walls. It is not surprising either that monarchs did not want to live here and looked around for more cheerful surroundings. Even today the sparkling splendor of the crown jewels, which are kept in the Tower, cannot bedazzle us enough to let us forget the place's dark past. The fact that the Tower shone in the eyes of the world at least once during its long history, when it housed the royal observatories before they moved to Greenwich, cannot make up for its troubled past.



From the outset, the Tower was planned as fortress with dungeons. Near it was the old Roman city wall, which is why Shakespeare believed that Julius Caesar had ordered the Tower to be built. In fact, the mighty stronghold on the north bank of the Thames is around a thousand years younger. The core of the complex, the so-called White Tower, was constructed in 1078 by William the Conqueror – of limestone expressly shipped over the Channel from Normandy. During the following centuries, two ring-walls and numerous towers were built around the royal stronghold with its apartments, halls, and the chapel (the oldest existing house of worship in London)

The tragic events which were played out within this fortress fill volumes. In 1473 it is said that King Richard III had his two nephews suffocated with pillows in the Bloody Tower in order to ensure that they would not lay claim to the throne. A similarly hair-raising incident occurred in the Wakefield Tower. King Henry VI, the crowned king of England and France, was murdered while praying. The official version of his demise was that he had died of melancholy. On February 12, 1554, seventeen-year-old Lady Jane Grey, the legendary nine-day queen, was cut down in her bloom at the Tower, a victim of the executioner's axe. This fate had already befallen the former Lord Chancellor, Sir Thomas Moore, who had clashed with King Henry VIII on matters of religion. The seafarer Sir Walter Raleigh, the founder of the American colony Virginia, lost his head after falling from favour with his queen, Elisabeth I. He was just writing his history of the world when the executioner plucked the quill from his hand.

Other prisoners in the Tower came to more subtle ends. It is said that Sir Thomas Overbury's last meal was seasoned with nitric acid and accompanied by wine laced with mercury. Whoever was led as a prisoner through Traitor's Gate into the Tower could well conclude that he had been condemned to death. Not all delinquents were willing to accept this sentence, however. A noble lady from Salisbury is said to have tried to avoid her execution (ultimately without success), much to the confusion of her executioner, by dancing furiously around the blood-stained room. Catherine Howard, King Henry VIII's fifth wife, was condemned to death by her husband, as had been her predecessor-but-two, Anna Boleyn. She proved a more submissive victim to her inevitable fate. The night before her beheading at the Tower, she carefully rehearsed her behaviour at the executioner's block in order to make a good impression to the very end.

Reichold, K., B. Graf, *Buildings that Changed the World*, Munich-London-New York: Prestel verlag, 1999
From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tower_of_London



7.1. Vocabulary

Write the corresponding letter next to the word in the box.

Malice	executioner	fall from favour	lace	splendour
limestone	dungeon	quill	deprivation	demise
stronghold	clash	bedazzle		

- a. kalksteen
- b. underground chamber or cell used to confine prisoners
- c. great fame; glory. (pracht, praal)
- d. moral corruption or degradation.
- e. add a substance, especially an intoxicant or narcotic
- f. death
- g. desire to harm others or to see others suffer (kwaadaardigheid)
- h. writing pen made from the shaft of a feather
- i. beul
- j. verblinden
- k. come into conflict
- l. uit de gratie raken
- m. fortress

7.2. Comprehension

1. What are / were the different functions of the building?
2. Describe two tragic events that took place at the Tower.
3. Name some famous people who were beheaded at the Tower.

8. The House of Rubens

In a side-street of the Meir avenue stands the former house of Peter Paul Rubens, the greatest and most famous of all the Antwerp painters. Rubens bought an existing 16th century house here, after he had returned from his stay in Italy (1600-1608). He lived in the house from 1616 onwards and died here in 1640.



Rubens had it embellished and turned it into **one of the most elegant Renaissance-Baroque Houses of the Low Countries**, with a beautiful restyled garden and an impressive entrance. It was here that most of his splendid Baroque paintings were created. Diplomats, artists, art lovers and collectors, scientists and even the Spanish Archdukes Albert and Isabella visited him here. It was also here that his first wife Isabella Brant and his daughter died.

After his death the house was sold to others who, through the course of time, changed it considerably. **In 1937 the severely damaged house was bought by the City of Antwerp** (thanks to Mayor Camille

Huysmans). Two old sketches from the 1680s (the oldest known images of the house) were used as basis for the restoration. It now houses the '**Rubens House Museum**'. Nowadays visitors to the house should be aware that they don't visit a house as it was left behind by its most famous inhabitant, but rather a reconstruction of what it must have looked like in the first half of the 17th century. The collection of paintings by Rubens himself and by some of his contemporaries alone already make it worth to pay the entrance fee. During a visit one can stroll through the reconstructed garden, visit the work shop of Rubens and his private quarters.

The Garden at the Rubens House

The Rubens House with the studio and garden dates back to the early 17th century and is one of Belgium's tourist highlights. But, in spite of what most visitors think, its actual appearance goes back to the late 1930s when the site was purchased by the municipality of Antwerp and interventions took place.



The painter Peter Paul Rubens (1577 - 1640) built the house and studio and laid out the extensive garden from 1611 onwards near to the Hopland district, renowned for its famous gardens. He built his house according to the prestigious Italian examples. It figured amongst the most magnificent palaces in the Netherlands. Rubens' house and gardens were frequented by crowned heads, politicians, nobility and rich citizens.

Although there is some written and iconographic information about the original garden, most of the layout and



plants stay a mystery. The garden was more than an intricate architectural feature, it was the place to cultivate ornamental, edible and other useful plants. Rubens loved gardens and plants. There is also written proof that the garden at the Rubens House was not only ornamental. *(During a stay at his country residence in Elewijt, Rubens asks his beloved young pupil Lucas Fayd'herbe in a letter of 18 August 1638 before closing up the house and studio to send Wilm, the gardner, to Elewijt with rossile pears (Rousselet d'Ete), figs if there are and other ripe fruit from his garden in Antwerp)*

The most prestigious book he owned was Basilius Besler's '**Hortus Eystettensis**'.

The painting Allegory of Vertunmus and Pomona, better known as "The Garden Walk" (around 1630) shows Rubens and his second wife, Helena Fourment, in an ideal garden. But some of the garden features are so realistic that they might reflect the situation of the garden in Antwerp at that time: the garden pavilion, the fountain, the garden compartment and its wooden gate, the pergola, the pottery, the fruit and orange trees and the carnations. Only the multicoloured tulip compartment seems slightly overdone, even though the tulipomania dates from 1635-1637.

Although already listed long before, the Royal Commission for Monuments from 1887 on asked for the purchase of the Rubens House by the government. After long negotiations and expropriation the purchase became a fact in August 1937.



From 1938 on, documentary photos were made from the house, the studio and the garden site as well as from the 17th century architectural remains, including a photo of a garden excavation. Photos of the garden show a dividing garden wall, stables in the back and a tobacco storehouse.

It was clear at that time that the reconstruction of "the real" Rubens' Garden was impossible by lack of information. With the agreement from the Royal Commission for Monuments and Sites, town planner and architect Emile van Averbeke and landscape architect Georges Wachtelaer, did create a 20th century evocation of the garden, based on contemporary garden books by Hans Vredeman de Vries and Johan Van der Groen, herbal books by Dodoneus, Lobelius and Vande Passe, period paintings and drawings by Rubens and his pupils.

Photos of the finished garden in 1946 reveal four yew hedged grass compartments and surrounding flower beds. The garden had much more affinities with the Belgian arts and crafts movement than with the late renaissance garden. The Italian poplars around the garden helped to mask the surrounding buildings but also added to the alienation. It is in the restored garden pavilion, in the construction and fine detailing of the wooden garden gates and in the beautifully proportioned pergola that the architectural skills and the able craftsmanship of Van



Averbeke and his companion Victor Blommaert flourished.

Less than 10 years later, the head of staff of the Rubens House declared to a local newspaper that the garden

had been a meticulous reconstruction. Nobody had ears for the fierce protest of the creative team against this falsification of the facts.

In 1976 much of the original planting was replaced with fashionable annual plants and modern perennials. By the 80s the garden had become almost sterile due to reduced maintenance. The garden was crying for action again.

In 1993 the garden was finally upgraded and the result was rewarded by the European Council. The work began with the 'reconstruction' of the pottery as shown in the Garden Walk. Special attention was given to the form, size, colour, texture and the finishing of the tubs. By the end of 1992 the Italian poplars with their invasive roots



were replaced by pollarded lime trees. Prior to the works, a pedological study by the city's archaeological services didn't produce useful information.

In a second stage of the enhancement the grass in the compartments was replaced by flowerbeds inspired by the Vredeman de Vries famous Hortorum series (1583). Consequently the surrounding flowerbeds disappeared. An extensive list of plants taken from the annotated and in 1987 published Antoni Gaymans (1630-1680) herbarium in Leiden, was introduced.

Today the Rubens Garden is a good example for up-to-date management and maintenance of historic gardens: In 2001 for the first time ever cultivated plants that were phenotypically correct for the Rubens period were planted: the carnation (*Dianthus plumarius*) 'Rubens Palet' and 10 historic selections of the Andes potato (*Solanum tuberosum* ssp. *andygena*), an ornamental potato introduced in Europe by the end of the 16th century. The **effects** have been diverse.

Today the woodwork in the garden needs extensive restoration. After 60 years the oak is rotting at the base of the columns and at the joints of the arches.

The successful restoration, careful maintenance and the charm of the garden attract about 250.000 visitors per year and make the Rubens garden at the Rubens House one of the highlights in the city of Antwerp.

<http://cmsen.eghn.org/etfg-rubensgarten-garten> (European gardens heritage network)



8.1. Vocabulary

Combine synonyms. Underline in the text.

1.	Make more beautiful	a.	meticulous
2.	The way it looks now	b.	iconographic
3.	Make a detailed plan, design	c.	embellish
4.	Pictorial illustration	d.	perennials
5.	Characteristics	e.	pollard
6.	Depriving of ownership	f.	enhance
7.	Extremely careful and precise.	g.	actual appearance
8.	Living three or more years.	h.	features
9.	To prune a tree, cut back branches	i.	lay out
10.	To make better	j.	expropriation

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

8.2. Comprehension

1. What proof is there in the text that the Rubens House is in fact only a reconstruction?
2. Where did Rubens get his inspiration for his house?
3. How do we know Rubens valued the garden a lot?
4. What was the 20th century reconstruction based on?
5. What happened during the second stage of the enhancement of the garden?

8.3. Exploration

Search extra information about guild-houses, patrician's mansions, museums, palaces of justice or other examples of civil architecture and prepare a presentation for your class.

9. Museums

9.1. Royal Museum for Central Africa

The first publicly owned museum in Europe was the *Uffizi Gallery* in Florence. While initially conceived as a palace for the offices of Florentian magistrates, it later evolved into a display place for many of the paintings and sculpture collected by the Medici family or commissioned by them. After the house of Medici was extinguished, the art treasures remained in Florence, forming the first modern museum. The gallery had been open to visitors by request since the sixteenth century, and in 1765 it was officially opened to the public.

The first museum to open to the public was The British Museum in London, which opened free to the public in 1759 after been founded a few years earlier in 1753. It was a “universal museum” with very varied collections covering art, applied art, archaeology, anthropology, history, and science, and a library. The science collections, library, paintings and modern sculpture have since found separate homes, leaving history, archaeology, non-European and pre-Renaissance art, and prints and drawings.

The specialised art museum is considered a fairly modern invention, the first being the Hermitage in St. Petersburg which was established in 1764. The Louvre in Paris, France was established in 1793, soon after the French Revolution when the royal treasures were declared for the people.

Royal Museum for Central Africa

The Royal Museum for Central Africa (RMCA) is an ethnographical and natural history museum in Tervuren in the suburbs of Brussels. It was first built to show off King Leopold II’s Congo Free State for the 1897 World Exhibition. Although it focuses mainly on Congo, Belgium’s former colony, the sphere of influence (especially regarding to biological research) extends to the whole Congo River basin, Middle Africa, East Africa and West Africa, but tries to integrate Africa as a whole. First purely intended as a colonial museum, after 1960 it became more focused on ethnography and anthropology. Like in most museums, there is a research department and a public exhibit department. Not all research is pertaining to Africa, for example the research on the archaeozoology of Sagalassos. Some researchers have strong ties with the Royal Belgian Institute of Natural Sciences.



History

After the Congo Free State was recognized by the Berlin Conference of 1884-1885, King Léopold II decided he had to show the potential of the country in an exhibition. Economic investors had to be attracted and the public had to know this faraway country better. After considering other places, the king decided to have the exhibition in his royal estate at Tervuren. When in 1897 the World Fair was held in Brussels, a colonial section was built in Tervuren: the Palace of the Colonies. It was built by the Belgian architect Georges Hobé in Art Nouveau style, using Bilinga wood, an African tree. It displayed ethnographic objects, stuffed animals and in the “Hall of the Great Cultures” Congo’s most important export products were displayed: coffee, cacao and tobacco. In the park, a copy of an African village was built, in which 60 Africans lived. The exposition was a huge success.

In 1898 the Palace of the Colonies became the Musée du Congo, and now the exhibits became permanent. It was then that the scientific research really took off. But due to the avid collecting of the scientists, the collection soon grew too large for the museum and enlargement was needed. Léopold II saw it big: he wanted not only an Africa Museum but also Chinese and Japanese pavilions, a congress centre, a World School and so forth. Tervuren became a rich suburb of Brussels. The new museum started construction in 1904 by the French architect Charles

Girault in neoclassical “palace” architecture, reminiscent of Petit Palais, with large gardens extending into the Tervuren Forest, a part of the Sonian Forest. It was officially opened by King Albert I in 1910 and named The Museum of the Belgian Congo. In 1952 the adjective “Royal” was added. In 1957, for Expo ’58, a large building was constructed to receive African personnel: the Centre d’Accueil du Personnel Africain (CAPA). In 1960 the museum had its name changed to The Royal Museum for Central Africa.

At present, the RMCA is struggling with modernisation. Some call it “a museum of a museum”, as it shows how a museum looked like in the 1960s. More importantly, it showed a biased Eurocentric Belgicist view of Congo. For example, Expo ’58 still showed a harmonious Belgian-Congolian relationship, while the country stood on the brink of independence. The most recent exhibition “The Memory of Congo” (February 4, 2005 - October 9, 2005), claimed to tell the “truth” of what happened in Belgium’s colony, a very sensitive subject in Belgium. Critics of the museum include Adam Hochschild, author of *King Leopold’s Ghost*, who wrote a New York Review of Books article extensively documenting what he found to be distortions and evasions in the special 2005 exhibition.

Collections: 10,000,000 animals; 250,000 rock samples; 180,000 ethnographic objects; 20,000 maps; 56,000 wood samples; 8,000 musical instruments; 350 archives, including some of Henry Morton Stanley’s journals

The herbarium collection of the Congo Museum was transferred to that of the National Botanic Garden of Belgium in 1934.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Museum_for_Central_Africa (February, 26 2008)

official site: <http://www.africamuseum.be/museum/about/histobuildings> (March, 30 2008)

9.2. Comprehension

- History of museums. Combine the right museum with its historical significance.

1.	The British Museum	a.	first specialised art museum
2.	The Hermitage in St. Petersburg	b.	first publicly owned museum
3.	The Uffizi Gallery	c.	first museum to open to the public

- True or false (T / F)

- The RMCA’s collection is about people and nature.
- The origin of the RMCA goes back to the 1897 World Exhibition.
- The research is restricted to the Congo River basin.
- The main purpose of the Palace of the Colonies was to familiarize Belgians with the Congo.
- Leopold II opened the museum in 1910.
- The Chinese pavilion and the Japanese tower are part of Leopold’s original project?
- The architecture of the museum is inspired by a French example.
- Expo 58 presented an image of an independent Congo to the world.
- Recent exhibitions only present a harmonious Belgian-Congolese relationship.
- The museum got its current name of the Congolese independence.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

- Write a text about a museum of one of the following categories: fine arts, applied arts, craft, archaeology, anthropology and ethnology, history, cultural history, military history, science, technology, children’s museums, natural history, numismatics, botanical and zoological gardens and philately... Pay attention to origin, history, collection, link with location ...



10. Art Nouveau: organic buildings

Art Nouveau is the international style of art, architecture and design that peaked in popularity at the beginning of the 20th C (1880 – 1914) and is known under many other names (e.g. Jugendstil). It greatly influenced artists and designers and later progressed onto (or influenced) other style movements like the De Stijl movement (from 1880 – 1905), the German Bauhaus school (early 1920s – 1930s) and Art Deco (from 1920 until 1939). With its swirling, organic forms, its love of elaborate ornament and its meticulous attention to detail, it reached a peak of development in Belgium. By the start of the First World War, however, the highly-stylised nature of Art Nouveau – which itself was expensive to produce – began to be dropped in favour of the more streamlined, rectilinear (and cheaper) modernism.

Art Nouveau is characterised by highly-stylised, curvilinear designs, often incorporating floral and other plant-inspired motifs. It is dynamic, undulating and flowing, with curved ‘whiplash’ lines of syncopated rhythm. Another feature is the use of hyperbolas and parabolas. Conventional mouldings seem to spring to life and ‘grow’ into plant-derived forms. It has affinities with the Pre-Raphaelites and the Symbolism movement. But, unlike Symbolism, Art Nouveau has a distinctive visual look.

Until the advent of Art Nouveau, the new building materials of iron, steel and glass had been used only in structures like factories and railway stations. Now they began to feature in domestic buildings and were no longer clad in brick or stucco, but deliberately made visible. Designers developed new conceptions of internal space, in particular Horta, who revolutionised the plan of the house by creating a central light well around which all the other spaces were organised.

Art Nouveau also subscribed to the German idea of the “Gesamtkunstwerk”, the total or integral work of art. Since the form and structure of a building now diverged so completely from existing practice, the architects found themselves obliged to design every detail, from mosaic floor to stained glass, from furniture to lighting fixtures, from banisters to carpets, from textiles to household silver and other utensils.

Breaking with the backward-looking historic styles which had dominated the scene at the end of the 19thC, Belgian Art Nouveau created works which still fascinate today with their harmony and controlled exuberance. Its adherents were young, free-thinking intellectuals of the avant-garde, often with links to the Socialist movement. It was they who commissioned the architect **Victor Horta** to design the famous Maison du Peuple in Brussels (demolished in the 1960s). From Ghent, Horta had been responsible for the very first Art Nouveau building, the Hôtel Tassel in Brussels. Horta used materials like wrought iron, which until then had been mainly used in industrial architecture, in dramatic combination with materials such as wood and stained glass. In the same year **Paul Hankar**, who favoured a more geometric version of the style, built a house for himself in the St Gilles district of the capital. Then, two years later, **Henry van de Velde** designed the Villa Bloemenwerf in English country-cottage style in the suburb of Uccle.



Hôtel Van Eetvelde



Hôtel Tassel



Horta Museum, staircase

Adapted from :

- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Art_Nouveau
- Belgium, Grand Duchy of Luxembourg, Watford: Michelin Travel Publications, 2004
- Donati, P. and Studio Illibill (illustrations), P. Wilkinson (texts), Amazing Buildings, London - New-York – Stuttgart: Dorling Kindersley Limited, 1993

10.1. Vocabulary

Explain these words from the text :

curvilinear versus rectilinear	
whiplash	
hyperbola	
parabolas	
wrought iron	

10.2. Comprehension

What is Art Nouveau? Use the words from the reading-text to draw up a list of the features of AN.



Villa Esche, Chemnitz



Paul Hankar's Hôtel (Renkin)



10.3. Assignments

1. The residential districts of Brussels, Antwerp and Ghent are thick with Art Nouveau buildings. Many of the finest buildings are found around the Avenue Louise and Square Ambiorix in Brussels, the Cogels-Osylei in Antwerp and in Ghent. However, Brussels is the undisputed capital of Belgian Art Nouveau. It has been calculated that the city has more than 500 edifices of outstanding quality dating from the period 1893 – 1914, more than anywhere else in the world. In *'Amazing Buildings'* (a Dorling-Kindersley book, published in 1993, which grants readers a view inside 21 great buildings of the world) Horta's Van Eetvelde House features prominently amongst the Taj Mahal, the Alhambra, Chartres Cathedral, the Colloseum, etc. Find more information on this beautiful building and on Victor Horta and his other achievements (Hôtel Tassel, Hôtel Solvay, Villa Carpentier, the Horta Museum, the Belgian Centre for Comic Strip Art or Magasins Waucquez, the Maison Autrique, etc.).
2. Find out more about the lives and works of Henry van de Velde (Villa Bloemenwerf in Ukkel; Villa Esche in Chemnitz, Germany; Villa Leuring in the Netherlands; the Kröller-Müller Museum; etc) and Paul Hankar (the Maison Zeghers-Regnard, Hôtel Renkin, etc).
3. Find out more about the history of Art Nouveau. Where did the term come from?
4. What other names are used for the Art Nouveau movement?
5. The Spanish Catalan Art Nouveau architect Antoni (or Antonio) Gaudi was famous for his unique style and highly individualistic designs. Find out more about this man's life and works (Casa Batlló, Casa Milà, Casa Vicens, the Sagrada Familia Basilica, etc).
6. Find out more about Art Nouveau arts like glass making, jewellery, etc.
7. After the Great War, **Art Deco** originated as a reaction to Art Nouveau (although some would call it an extension), affecting (just like Art Nouveau had done) the decorative arts such as architecture, interior design (e.g. the interiors of the ocean liners Queen Mary and Normandie) and industrial design, as well as the visual arts such as fashion, painting, the graphic arts and film. This movement was, in a sense, an amalgam of many different styles and movements of the early 20th C, including Constructivism, Cubism, Bauhaus, Modernism, Futurism and Art Nouveau itself. Its popularity peaked during the Roaring Twenties. Find more information on the features (and materials) of this movement and its architects/designers like Albert Van Huffel. For starters, here are some well-known buildings in Belgium and abroad. Find pictures and decide which two are not Art Deco. (By the way, these are)



- Australian Catholic Assurance Building (Sydney)
- Battersea Power Station (London)

- BBC Broadcasting House (London)
- Berlage Stock Exchange (Amsterdam)
- Century Building (Melbourne)
- Chrysler Building (New York City)
- Fisher Building (Detroit)
- Flagey Building (Brussels)
- Guggenheim Museum (New York City)
- Koekelberg Basilica (Brussels)
- Notre-Dame-du-Haut (Ronchamp, France)
- St Augustine Church at Vorst/Forest (Brussels)
- Town Hall (Vorst/Forest)

8. A movement parallel to Art Deco, was **Streamline**. It was influenced by the modern aerodynamic designs emerging from advancing technologies in aviation, ballistics, and other fields requiring high velocity. The attractive shapes resulting from scientifically applied aerodynamic principles were enthusiastically adopted within Art Deco, applying streamlining techniques to other useful objects in everyday life, such as the automobile. And even to more mundane and static objects such as pencil sharpeners and refrigerators. Find pictures of these.

File 7

Religious architecture

1. From Merovingian to Romanesque

1.1. Merovingian and Carolingian architecture

Merovingian architecture

The unification of the Frankish kingdom under Clovis I (465-511) and his successors, corresponded with the need for the building of churches, and especially monastery churches, as these were now the power-houses of the Merovingian church. Plans often continued the Roman basilica tradition, but also took influences from as far away as Syria and Armenia. In the East most structures were in timber, but stone was more common for significant buildings in the West, and in the southern areas that later fell under Merovingian rule. Some of these buildings, now lost but of which the plans have been reconstructed from archaeology and literature, were : the basilica of St Martin, built at Tours around 472 (one of the most beautiful Merovingian churches); the abbey of Saint-Germain-des-Prés in Paris; Saint-Denis; etc.

Some of the smaller buildings, however, remain, especially baptisteries, which fell out of fashion and were spared rebuilding. E.g. the provincial baptisteries at Aix-en-Provence, Fréjus and Riez (which are octagonal and covered with a cupola on pillars, testimony to the influence of oriental architecture); the baptistery of St Jean at Poitiers (6th C) (which has the form of a rectangle, flanked by three apses); etc.

Among the very many crypts, numerous due to the importance of the cult of saints at the time, only those of St Seurin (Bordeaux), St Laurent (Grenoble) and the abbey of Jouarre survive.

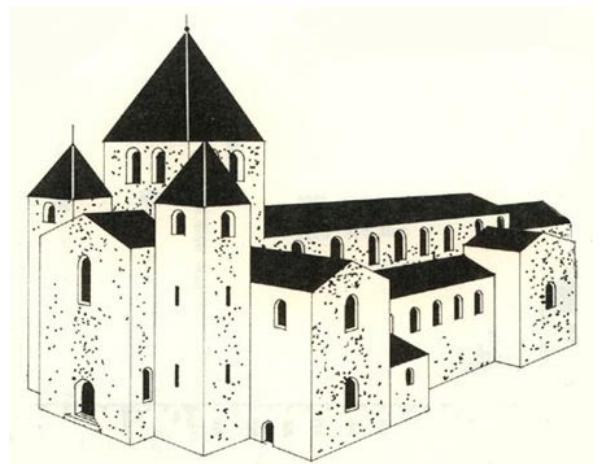
Little of the Merovingian architecture has survived **in Belgium**. The only examples are :

- The simple Merovingian chapel in the Collegiate Church of Sainte Gertrude at Nivelles.
- The site of the Roman Basilica at Arlon. It was used by the Christians during the 5th and 6th C; the ruins mark the position of the oldest (Merovingian) church in Belgium. In the 6th and 7th C the Franks buried their dead here.

Carolingian architecture



Collegiate Church of St Ursmarus, Lobbes, dating back to the Carolingian period



Reconstruction of the original abbey church at Lobbes.

Carolingian architecture is the style of north European architecture belonging to the period of the Carolingian Renaissance of the late 8th and 9th centuries when the Carolingian family ruled. This cultural revival, initiated by Charlemagne, manifested itself above all in the art of illumination.

The architecture was a conscious attempt to emulate Roman architecture and to that end it borrowed heavily from Early Christian and Byzantine architecture, though there are nonetheless innovations of its own, resulting in a unique character.

Carolingian churches generally are basilican, like the Early Christian churches of Rome. One of the creations of the Carolingian architects was the westwork, a multi-storey entrance façade flanked by bell towers, which is the prototype of the great Romanesque and Gothic cathedral façade.

Here are some of these Carolingian churches: the Palatine Chapel in Aachen, the central monument of the Carolingian Renaissance; St Michael Church in Fulda, Hesse, the oldest Holy Sepulchre church in Germany, which served as a burial chapel to the Fulda monastery; Saint Justinus' Church in Frankfurt-Main, one of the few nearly completely surviving early medieval churches; the Imperial Abbey of Corvey, a Benedictine abbey on the river Weser in North-Rhine-Westphalia, founded by Charlemagne's cousins Wala and Adelard; the delightfully well-proportioned Einhard's Basilica in Steinbach, Germany, presumably built as a final place of rest for Charlemagne's biographer and his wife Imma.

The church plan of the Palatine Chapel at Aachen was copied in several **Belgian** churches, but all have disappeared. Excavations during the 1950s revealed that the plan of St Donatian in Bruges was inspired by the circular chapel at Aachen. The traditional basilican or hall church with aisles and apse, which had been used from ancient Christian times, underwent radical changes during the Carolingian period, as can be seen in the churches of St Ursmer at Lobbes and Theux. They feature avant-corps, wooden ceilings, square pillars and the gallery located west of the nave.

Adapted from :

- Blyth, D., *Belgium*, 9th edition. London: A&C Black, 2000 (Blue Guide)
- *Belgium, Grand Duchy of Luxembourg*, Michelin Travel Publications, 2004 (Green G.)

Interesting sites :

- <http://titan.iwu.edu/~callahan/glossaire-e.html>
- <http://www.pitt.edu/~medart/menuglossary/> (the Glossary of Medieval Art and Architecture)
- wikipedia
- <http://www.answers.com/topic/merovingian-art-and-architecture> and [carolingian-art-and-architecture](#)

1.2. Vocabulary.

Fill in these words :

baptistery – basilica – cathedral – chapel – collegiate church – crypt – hall church – (aisled) hall church – (Church of the) Holy Sepulchre – minster – ossuary – stave church – synagogue

1. the principal church of a bishop's diocese, containing the episcopal throne / in German this is also called "Dom" or "Münster".
2. a church without aisles ("zaalkerk").
3. a monastery church ("kloosterkerk", "munster").
4. a Scandinavian, medieval, wooden church with a post and beam construction and timber framing.
5. a place for worship in the Jewish faith.
6. a Christian church building, having a nave, apse, two or four side aisles, a narthex, and a clerestory / it has been accorded certain privileges by the pope.

7. a part of a church or a separate building used for baptizing.
8. a place of worship that is smaller than and subordinate to a church, or a recess, or room, in a church set apart for special or small service.
9. a church in which the side aisles are as high or almost as high as the nave and which consequently lacks a clerestory (“hallenkerk”).
10. a Roman Catholic or Anglican church (not a cathedral) having a chapter of canons (not monks) (“collegiale kerk”, “kapittelkerk”).
11. an underground vault or chamber beneath a church, used as a burial place.
12. also Church of the Anastasis (Resurrection), built above the tomb of Jesus in Jerusalem / a church or chapel built like the original church (“Heilig-Grafkerk”).
13. a building (or chest, well, catacomb or other site) serving as the last resting place of human skeletal remains.

1.3. Comprehension

1. When and why were the first Christian churches built in our region? What building material was used? Have any of them survived?
2. Explain : Carolingian Renaissance.
3. What did Carolingian churches look like?
4. Was the church plan of the Palatine Chapel popular?



1.4. Assignments

1. Find more information on and pictures of some of the churches mentioned above: the Palatine Chapel at Aachen; Saint Denis; etc.
2. Find more information on Christianity in the Merovingian and Carolingian period.

1.5. Romanesque architecture

Romanesque architecture, which was the first distinctive style to spread across Europe (since the Roman Empire), is the term that is used to describe the architecture of Western Europe which emerged in the late 10th C and evolved into the Gothic style during the 13th C. In England the Romanesque style is more traditionally referred to as Norman architecture.

At the end of the 10th C people started to believe that in the year AD 1000 Christ would return to earth and this would mean the end of the world. When the year had passed and nothing had happened, people everywhere – out of relief – started to build new churches and chapels. Rudolf Glaber, chronicler of the Abbey of Cluny wrote: *“After the year 1000 new churches arose everywhere ... Communities competed in building even more beautiful churches than the others. Nearly all episcopal and monastery churches and, yes, even the ... village chapels were made more beautiful by the faithful ... It was as if the whole world had trembled and – after it had shaken off the old times – now covered itself in a white cloak of churches.”*

Romanesque art was a community art, entirely for the benefit of the religion. Romanesque churches and abbeys were built to shield the people from a hostile and wicked world. In feudal times these buildings were the castles of the Lord, where the faithful were safe.

Here are some of the characteristics of Romanesque architecture:

1. The general impression given by Romanesque architecture, in both ecclesiastical and secular buildings, is one of massive solidity and strength. Romanesque architecture relies upon walls, called piers, or on columns. These, together with the roof of the aisles help to buttress the enormous weight or pressure from the upper walls and vault of the nave. Arcading, in a variety of forms, is the single most significant feature. A common characteristic, occurring both in churches and castles was alternation (e.g. of piers and columns).
2. The simplest Romanesque churches are aisle-less halls with a projecting apse at the chancel end. Abbey and cathedral churches generally follow the Latin Cross plan. The typical aisled church or cathedral has a nave with a single aisle on either side. In most churches the chancel was oriented east towards Jerusalem, symbolising that the light of Christ comes from the East.



Cathedral of Our Lady, Doornik



Interior of Doornik Cathedral

3. An outstanding achievement of Romanesque architects was the development of stone vaults (barrel, groin, and ribbed vaults), which replaced the highly (in)flammable wooden roofs of the pre-Romanesque structures.
4. The use of massive walls and piers as supports for the heavy stone vaults resulted in a typical building plan composed of semi-independent units, called bays, the square or rectangular spaces between pillars or piers, enclosed by vaults. These separate bays became a characteristic and distinguishing feature of the Romanesque style.
5. Towers take a variety of forms, square, circular and octagonal, and are positioned differently in relation to the church in different countries. As a general rule, however, large Romanesque towers are square with corner buttresses of low profile, rising without diminishing through the various stages, which are clearly marked by horizontal courses. As the towers rise, the number and size of openings increases (e.g. Tournai Cathedral). The main tower rises above the crossing of the nave and transept, in front of the chancel, thus symbolizing the power of God. Other towers may appear on the façade or transept ends.



1. Church of Our Lady Visitation, Lissewege
2. Collegiate Church of St Gertrude, Nivelles

6. One of the main features of Romanesque architecture, the round arch, is evident from the arches and windows. Altogether, windows were rather small and light was poor compared to the later Gothic architecture. Romanesque churches were dimly lit with candles and torches. All this lends these churches a mysteriously religious atmosphere.
The clerestory was situated above the aisle roof in the walls under the main vault and gave light to the nave. Later on a triforium was added.
7. Romanesque church façades, generally to the west end of the building, have a large central portal made significant by its moulding or porch and an arrangement of arch-topped windows. Larger churches and cathedrals often have two towers. The façades are symmetrical and divided into vertical units and horizontal stages. (e.g. Limburger Dom, Germany)
8. The Romanesque period produced a profusion of architectural sculpture for ornamentation. This most frequently took a purely geometric form and was particularly applied to mouldings, both straight courses and the curved mouldings of arches. The focus of such decoration was generally the west front, and in particular the portals.
9. Romanesque architects invented the tympanum on which the last Judgement or other prophetic scenes would unfold, acting as a stern preparation for the mystical experience to be found within the church and the symbolic nature of entering the holy building.
10. The large wall surfaces and plain, curving vaults of the Romanesque period lent themselves to mural decoration. Unfortunately, many of these early wall paintings have been destroyed by damp/humidity or the walls have been re-plastered and painted over.

1.6. Comprehension

1. Romanesque art was a community art, entirely for the benefit of the religion. Explain.
2. Why did people start to build more churches after the year 1,000 ?
3. How do Romanesque churches manage to buttress the enormous weight or pressure from above?
4. Why were stone vaults such a big improvement?
5. What was the basic unit of a Romanesque church plan?
6. Were towers always square?
7. Where were the towers situated?
8. What can you say about the light in Romanesque churches?
9. What scenes were depicted on the tympanum?
10. Have many of the Romanesque murals survived? Why (not)?

1.7. Romanesque architecture in Belgium

In the 11th and 12th centuries, Belgium was divided into two parts: west of the river Scheldt, Flanders belonged to France, whereas regions to the east, through which the river Meuse flowed, belonged to the Holy Roman Empire. Two distinct movements formed: Scaldian art (from Scaldis, or the Scheldt) and Mosan art (named after the river Meuse). Both movements were highly original, even though churches in both regions share many characteristics, such as basilical design, transept, chancel with a flat wooden ceiling and radiating chapels. If you look at today's country churches you will notice that churches to the east of the Scheldt usually have the tower located to the west, next to or above the entrance. West of the Scheldt, however, the tower is usually above the transept crossing.



The nave of St Gertrude



St Stephen's Church, Waha

The **Mosan Romanesque** style, which is characterised by simplicity, austerity and strength, was established in the 11th C and retained a number of elements from Carolingian art, of which it was in some ways the continuation. Mosan Romanesque basilicas took over the typical Ottonian west fronts flanked by two towers, known as westworks (e.g. the Church of Our Lady at Maastricht) and complex apsidal structure at the east end. The apse occasionally included a second gallery on the outside (St Pieterskerk, Sint Truiden) The avant-corps of the churches became more imposing in the 12th C, being flanked with staircase turrets (Eglise St Denis and Eglise St Jean in Liège). The outside of the church was decorated with Lombard arches. There was often a crypt in the church, and sometimes beautiful cloisters. The church of St Gertrude at Nivelles remains the most striking example of the Mosan basilica in Belgium.

The rural churches of St Hadelin at Celles and Notre Dame d'Hastiere-par-Déla retain fortified west ends, square piers with imposts but no bases, low transepts, flat timberwork ceilings and crypts.



Church of St Peter, Bertem, an old Mosan-Romanesque church



Church of Our Lady, Hastière-par-Déla

The **Scaldian Romanesque** style is generally more elaborate than the Mosan, largely because it blossomed later, in the 12th C. Following Norman style, this occasionally led to the import of English Norman elements (e.g. in the tribunes and galleries). The architecture reached its highest expression in Tournai Cathedral in the 12th C, which inspired several other churches. The main features visible from the outside of these buildings are the tower at the transept crossing (though Tournai is exceptional in having five towers) and turrets on the west front. The external decoration is often more ornate towards the top and the westwork, unlike the Mosan, is pierced by an entrance. The Scaldian nave is often multi-storeyed with complex piers and sometimes alternating supports.

Adapted from :

- <http://en.wikipedia.org>
- *Belgium / Grand Duchy of Luxembourg*, Watford: Michelin Travel Publications, 2004 (Green Guide)
- Blyth, D., *Belgium*, 9th edition. London: A&C Black, 2000 (Blue guide)

Inspired by

Torman, R., A. Bednorz, *Romaanse Kunst*, Tandem Verlag GmbH, 2007

Waegeman, T., D. Vandeweerd, *Culturele Geschiedenis van Vlaanderen. Kunstgeschiedenis (deel 6)*, Deurne/Ommen: Uitgeverij Baert pvba, 1983

Tips :

- <http://www.visitbelgium.com/artandarchitecture.htm> (official website Belgian Tourist office)
- <http://www.history.com/encyclopedia.do?articleId=220891> (very good site)
- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_abbeyes_and_pories
- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Category:Monasteries_in_Belgium

1.8. Comprehension

1. Why is there a difference in style between the area west of the Scheldt and east of the Scheldt?
2. What characteristics do they have in common?
2. What are the differences between the Mosan Romanesque style and the Scaldian/Scheldt Romanesque style?



1.9. Assignments

1. One of the most important 'inventions' of Romanesque sculpture was the tympanum (or tympane), which was often decorated with biblical scenes. The main theme of these new Romanesque portals was the Last Judgement with the figure of a revengeful God (which goes back to the Early Middle Ages) passing judgement. Life in the Middle Ages was hard, and death was a part of it. An average life expectancy of some thirty to thirty-five years, a high rate of infant and child mortality, countless diseases and epidemics, all these made death a common and fearsome presence. But death was not the end and people were haunted by the question of what would become of them in the hereafter: God's mercy or the terror of hell. Find more information on these tympanes and on the idea of Death in the Romanesque period.
E.g.
 - the tympane on the south portal of the abbey church of St Pierre in Beaulieu-sur-Dordogne, (Corrèze)
 - the tympane on the main portal of the abbey church of Sainte Foye in Conques-en-Rouergue (Aveyron)
 - the tympane above the main portal of the cathedral St Lazare in Autun (Saône-et-Loire)Compare them with the tympanes of the abbey church Ste Madeleine in Vézelay (Yonne).
Can you find tympanes like this in Belgium?
2. Find more information on the exterior and interior of westworks. (<http://www.answers.com> and <http://www.pitt.edu/~medart/menuglossary/drumpier.htm> (Glossary of Medieval Art and Architecture)



Westwork of the Church of Our Lady, Maastricht

3. Romanesque sculpture is inextricably bound up with the architecture. Find more information on Romanesque sculpture in order to explain this. How can you tell the difference between Romanesque and Gothic sculpture?
4. Focus on one of the other characteristics of Romanesque architecture and find more information.
5. Nowadays, churches are sometimes used by refugees seeking asylum, a tradition that goes back a long way. Find more information on the judicial-historical importance of church portals (and churches). Here are some items to get you going:
 - the administration of justice, both secular and ecclesiastic, in front of a church portal started in the Ottonian and Carolingian period, and continued all through the Middle Ages.
 - taking an oath
 - signing of commercial contracts
 - seeking asylum
6. Why were churches oriented East? Which part? Was it always like this?
7. Prepare a guided tour of one of the great Romanesque churches mentioned above:
 - Cathedral of Our Lady, Doornik
 - Collegiate Church of St Gertrudis, Nijvel
 - Collegiate Church of St Ursmarus, Lobbes
 - etc.

1.10. Fill in the names and vocabulary

Here are some other Romanesque churches in Belgium. Fill in the name from the box and the missing vocabulary.

Church of St Odulphus, Borgloon – Eglise St Eleuthère, Esquelmes – Church of St John the Baptist, Afsnee – Nativity Church of Our lady, Oostham – Church of St Anna, Aldeneik



1. This charming Romanesque
..... on the Leie, to the west of Ghent has been
the subject of (ontelbare) paintings. It
dates from the 12th C, the (achthoekige)
tower was added in the 13th C.



2. The once formed part of a monastery
founded in the 8th C by two sisters, St Harlindis and St Relindis. The
oldest book in Belgium, an 8th C evangelistery known as the *Codex
Eyckensis*, is believed to have once belonged to these two sisters. It
is now part of the so-called ((kerk)schat) of
St Catharina (in the Church of St Catharina at Maaseik). The church
still has a westwork-like tower and a Romanesque central nave,
decorated with (paintings on walls). It
contains several Merovingian (sarcofagen)
dating back to the 8th C.



3. The is named after the saint who helped
St Frederick to convert Frisia to Christianity. His relics were appar-
ently stolen in 1034 and taken first to London and later to Evesham
Abbey. It dates in (gedeel-
telijk) from the 11th C. Other (sporen) of
the Romanesque period in this area can be found in the Cistercian
convent of Klooster Marienhof (which has the reliquary of St Odile,
one of the oldest examples of painting on wood) at Kerniel and an
old chapel at Spalbeek.



4. The modest village church of
....., built with Tournai
..... (kalksteen), is said to be the oldest church
in Belgium (8th C), and one of the oldest Romanesque churches in
Europe. It is dedicated to St , whose superb
reliquary is kept in the Treasury of the Notre Dame at Tournai. It has
a simple and beautiful cemetery.



5. The tower of the
..... goes back all the way to the 10th C, which
..... it (waardoor het ... wordt) the oldest church
tower in the Benelux. The lower part of the tower still has the origi-
nal sandstones. Like most other churches, this one was also rebuilt,
..... (vergroot) and repaired in the course of
time



1.1.1. More Romanesque churches in Belgium

Fill in the names from the box. Find more information and write a text on one of these churches or do an oral presentation.

Eglise St Brice/St Brixius, Doornik – Church of St Etienne/St Stephen, Waha – Church of St Hadelin, Celles – Church of St Peter and Paul, Saint-Séverin-en-Condroz (Nandrin) – Collegiate Church of St Vincent, Soignies/ Zinnik – Eglise Saint-Hermes-et-Alexandre, Theux – Chapel of St Verona, Leefdaal



1. _____
 (Mention: fortified Mosan Romanesque style – hermitage and monastery – choir stalls – tombstone – crypts – reliquary of St Hadelin – etc.)



2. _____
 (Mention: St Vincent Madelgar and family – Benedictine abbey – interior – Treasury – shrine/reliquaries of St Vincent – old cemetery – etc.)

3. _____



4. _____
 (Mention: plain interior – massive pillars – statues and works of art, e.g. a Late Gothic calvary – font – consecration stone - Jean Michel Folon – etc)



5. _____
 Also mention: nearby Castle of Franchimont (= 'Mount of the Franks') and the 600 men of Franchimont – unique ceiling – fascinating Romanesque font – etc)



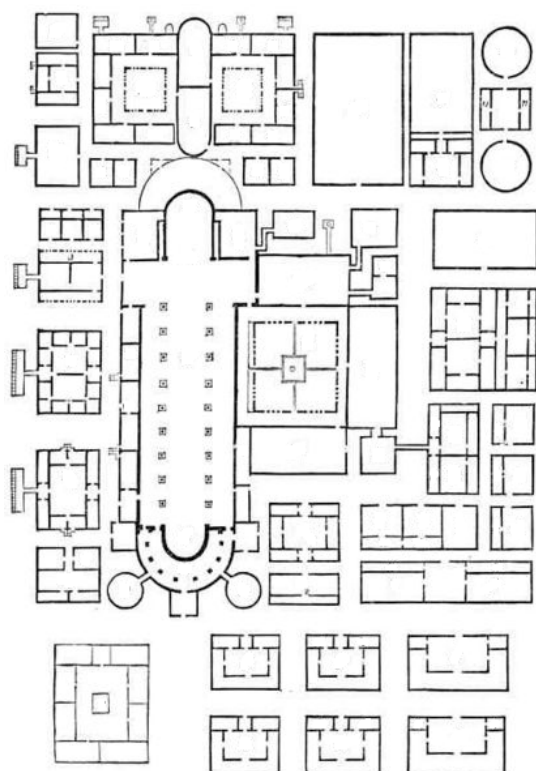
6. _____
 (Mention : tomb of Childerick)



7. _____

2. “In my Father’s House are many rooms.”

2.1. Lay-out and buildings of a medieval monastery



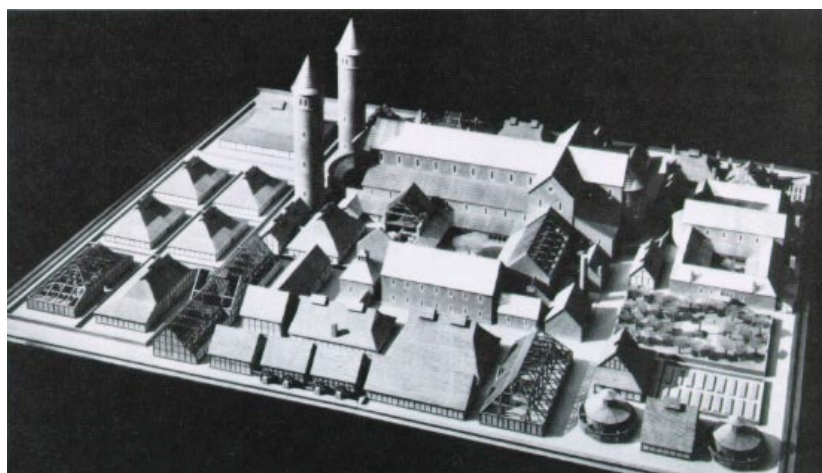
- almonry
- anima
- cellar / cellarium
- chapter-house
- cloister
- corpus
- dormitory
- double cloister
- frater house, fraterly
- hermit cells
- kitchen
- lay brethren, lay brothers
- novices
- noviciate, novitiate
- parlour
- professed monks
- refectory / refectorium
- sacristy / sacristorium
- scriptorium
- spiritus
- calefactory

Fill in the correct words from the list, and indicate numbers A1 – A11 on the plan of Saint Gall.

A. The Carolingian *Plan of Saint Gall/Sankt Gallen* (henceforth: SGp) is a famous medieval architectural drawing of a Benedictine monastic compound dating from the early 9th C. It is considered a national treasure of Switzerland and its presence at the Monastic Library of St Gall was singled out by UNESCO as a reason for the designation of the library as a World Heritage site in 1983. Although it was never actually built like this, it was so popular – or should we say “ideal” – that it was adopted, in its broad lines, with remarkable unanimity down through the entire Middle Ages by the other religious groups, whether monastic or not: by the eremitical monks of La Grande Chartreuse (founded in 1084), by canons living in their parish churches, and by the mendicant orders that sprang up in the 13th C.



Abbey of Sankt Gallen today



Reconstruction of the SGp

1. _____

A covered walkway often situated around a perfect square or quadrangle. It connects the domestic parts of the monastery with the church and is usually located on the south side of the church. On the SGp the square was bisected by four median paths that met in the middle, at a bush bearing red berries.

2. _____

This played a major role in the life of the monks. Along with the church, it was the other main space for shared events. The monks (and/or the governing body of the monastery) met here daily, to discuss things and to listen to a reading of the monastic rule. Although not explicitly identified as such on the SGp it is probably situated on the ground floor of the east wing (the plan does note that it was heated). However, this room is also sometimes identified as the warming house or _____

3. _____ or _____

The dining hall of a monastery. On the SGp it was located on the ground floor (first floor, in AmE) of the south wing (i.e. the wing parallel to the church). Above was the vestiary.

4. _____

The room providing sleeping quarters for the monks. On the SGp it is located on the second floor of the east wing, above the room where the monks used to meet, and a staircase leads directly into the church. These night stairs were used by the monks to enter the church directly from their sleeping quarters in order to attend late night and early morning services. Sometimes a second stairway led down to the cloister.

5. _____

Situated downstairs in the west wing of the St Gall plan. The rows of large and small casks (or the supports to hold them) can be clearly seen on the original plan. Upstairs there was a storehouse.

6. _____

It represented the only link to the outside world. Here monks could talk to guests or issue orders for the proper running of agricultural and craft operations. On the SGp it is wedged between the cellar and the wall of the church.

7. _____

On the SGp a corridor with a bend (to minimize odours) leads to this place where food was prepared and cooked. From here another corridor leads to the bakery and brewery.

8. _____

This was the room used by clerics or scribes for the copying, writing, or illuminating of manuscripts and records. On the St Gall plan it is attached to the north side of the church apse. Above was the library or armarium.

9. _____

Is situated on the other side of the apse. Here the sacred vessels were kept. Above is the vestiary, the repository for the church vestments

10 _____

Surrounds a small cloister and is situated east of the church, flanking a chapel (with the same shape as the church). This was the place where the novices lived. On the north side of the chapel is the infirmary, also with its own cloister.

11. _____

This was the chamber where alms were distributed to the poor. In the SGp it lies to the west of the cellar.

The more 'worldly' buildings were situated north of the church: guesthouse, school, abbot's house, blood-letting room and doctor's house. Other buildings in a monastery could include a kitchen, a bath and laundry room, a clothes room, a misericord, a pilgrims' house, latrines, etc. Beyond the buildings lay vegetable gardens, orchards, stables, grain fields, meadows, a barn, often a mill, a cemetery, etc. The high wall and ditch, usually surrounding a monastery, shut it off from outsiders and in time of danger protected it against attack.

B. The Saint Gall pattern resurfaced at **Cluny** and was adapted. Apart from the main cloister for there was now also a cloister for, imitating the main cloister but organized in a different, more limited way, since there was no need to repeat certain zones such as the church and chapter-house. Cluny thus provided the model for complexes.

C. The **Cistercian reform** also left its mark through its innovative establishment of a wing for corresponding to the cellar side, that is to say the west gallery of the quadrangle. The presence within the monastery of lay brothers (who carried out the abbey's productive operations, while they also had to attend certain church services) meant that they had to be kept apart from the cloistered space, whose quiet could not be disturbed.

D. The **Carthusian model** reinforced the idea of a cenobitic lifestyle – Carthusian architecture was organized around two poles, one for solitary life and the other for (limited) community life. This led to at least two cloisters, although they no longer reflected the distinction between professed monks and novices as found in Benedictine (Cluniac) abbeys. For the Carthusians, the large or main cloister was the quadrangle around which were aligned individual for the monks, who lived together in proximity yet alone. But as soon as the need arose for a communal space for prayers, meetings, or meals, the Benedictine model returned to the fore – a second, small cloister was flanked by church, chapter house and refectory.

E. A cloister was the prerogative of monastic life, even more so than the church which monks might share with lay people. The plan of a cloister embodied the all-encompassing aspirations of monastic rules insofar as the quadrangle was designed to unite (the abbey church), (the chapter house and other rooms related to intellectual work), and (refectory, dormitory, warming room). As the pivotal site of passage and encounter, the cloister was the architectural emblem of cenobitic life)

Adapted from :

- V., Rouchon Mouilleron, *Cloisters of Europe*, New York: Viking Studio, 2001
- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plan_of_Saint_Gall
- <http://www.middle-ages.org.uk/medieval-monastery.htm>

Tip :

Adams, R., R. Geivers, W. Jansen, *Geschiedenis 3*, Antwerpen: Uitgeverij Den Gulden Engel, 1991 (a history class book for secondary schools, featuring the SaintGall/Sankt Gallen plan)

The Saint Gall monastery plan can be found on these websites:

1. The best plan (+index) is to be found on <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abbey>
2. <http://www.stgallplan.org/reconstructions.html>
3. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monastery>

2.2. Comprehension

1. Why is the word 'cloister' a false friend? How many cloisters can you find on the SGp?
2. Did a monastery only have religious buildings?
3. Who came up with the idea of a double cloister? Why is this not surprising?
4. What novelties did the Cistercians and the Carthusians add to the SGp?
5. What was the spiritual symbol (or should we say 'centre') of a SGp monastery?



2.3. Assignments

1. Find more information on the various parts of a monastery (chapter house, scriptorium, cloister, etc).
2. “Idleness is the enemy of the soul. Therefore the brothers should have specified periods for manual labour as well as for prayerful reading”, wrote Benedict in chapter 48 of his Rule. Prayer and work were imperative, summed up by the famous Latin rhyme, *ora et labora*. For Benedict, these two occupations were not left to a monk’s free will, but had to be fixed and “regular” – based on a rule in the fullest sense of the word. The day was organized around 8 church services, called **divine offices**, each lasting from half-an-hour to one-and-three-quarter hours. Find more information (Matins, Vespers, etc)
3. How is the monastic motto of ‘*ora et labora*’ reflected by the Saint Gall/Sankt Gallen plan?
4. Find more information on the hierarchy in a monastery : abbot, (claustral) prior, dean, monk, novice, lay brother.
5. Find information on the uses or functions of monasteries/abbeys: works of charity, providing education, teaching agriculture to the peasants, working mines and developing forges, receiving pilgrims and travellers, copying manuscripts, keeping records of their time, functioning as commercial centres, etc
6. The SGp was invested with a symbolic meaning alongside its functional purpose. The Latin captions labelling each building also gave detailed figures – the width of the main nave of the abbey church was 40 feet, the width of the transepts was 20 feet, and the overall length was 200 feet. The figure forty therefore served as the basic module of construction, since all dimensions were multiples of forty. The cloister meanwhile was laid out in perfect square 100 by 100 feet. Find more information on the symbolism that lies behind this modular geometry.

3. Western monasticism

3.1. Vocabulary

What is the difference between an abbey, a charterhouse, a cloister, a convent, a friary, a monastery, a nunnery, and a priory? Fill in the words.

1.: generally denotes (the buildings of) a community of male monastics or monks.
2.: tends to be used for (the buildings of) a female monastic community of nuns.
3.: an outmoded term for a convent.
4.: a Christian monastery or convent, under the government of an abbot or abbess.
5.: a Christian religious house which is smaller and less important than a monastery or abbey, and governed by a prior or prioress.
6.: a monastery of friars, especially those of a mendicant order.
7.: a covered walk with an open colonnade on one side, running along the walls of buildings that face a quadrangle (although it may also refer to a place, especially a monastery or convent, devoted to religious seclusion).
8.: any monastery belonging to the Carthusian order.



3.2. Assignments

For starters you can read 'A Short History of Western Monasticism' (see appendix)

1. What's the difference between 'eremitic' and 'cenobitic' monastic life?
2. Who was the father of Western monasticism? What do you know about him?
3. Did monks initially follow only one rule?
4. Why did the Benedictine Rule triumph over the other rules.
5. Which monastery was the driving force behind the monastic revival in the 10th C? What do you know about its organization?
6. How were the Cistercians different from the Cluniac monks?
7. From the 17th C onwards the Cistercians evolved into two orders. Which?
8. Which order was (and still is) the most 'silent' one?
9. What is the difference between monks, friars and canons (regular)?



3.3. More assignments

1. This well-known Latin saying sums up the difference between the various callings :
"Bernardus valles, montes Benedictus amabat,
oppida Franciscus, celebres Dominicus urbes "
So, St Francis (Franciscans) liked market-towns ("oppida"). What about St Bernard (Cistercians), St Benedict (Benedictines), and St Dominic (Dominicans)?
2. It was not really Rome that organized the Germanic Christianization of our part of Europe. Amazingly, this started in far-away Scotland and Ireland, where St Patrick had spread the Christian faith around AD 450.

It was here, not hampered by Germanic invasions, that a flourishing culture developed, a mixture of Celtic and Christian traditions. Find more information on the Celtic Christianization in Europe (and particularly in Belgium), and the medieval missionaries.

3. In almost every instance the modifications, reforms, etc, made by the various monastic legislators, have been adopted by convents of women as well. Find more information on religious orders for women (e.g. the Poor Clares), either contemplative or more active orders. What about the military orders?
4. Find more information on the military orders.



3.4. Ora et labora

Find more information on the religious orders in Belgium

How to get started?

Check Wikipedia (in English, e.g. “Dominicans”; in Dutch, “Dominicanen”) for starters and follow the links.

What to look for?

- Origin and history
- Coat of arms; mottos; symbols
- Habit and scapular
- Saints and Blesseds; prominent members
- Rules; visions; (spiritual) ideas; devotions
- Reforms
- Controversies with other orders
- Religious order and houses in Belgium (abbey, monastery, convent, chapter house)
- One or two famous religious houses abroad, mother-house
- Laity and lay brothers; secular orders
- Sisters, nuns

Be sure to mention these items:

A. Benedictines, Cistercians and Trappists (following the Rule of St Benedict); monks

■ The ***Benedictines***

- In addition to the autonomous Benedictine communities, a number of independent monasteries were founded on the Rule of St Benedict (of Nursia) and therefore are also considered Benedictines (e.g. Cistercians and Trappists).
- The Sisters of the Reparation of the Holy Face.
- Affligem Abbey; St Peter and Paul’s Abbey, Dendermonde; Maredsous Abbey; Chevetogne Abbey; St Peter’s Abbey, Ghent; Abbey of Steenbrugge; etc.



Saint Benedict of Nursia



St Peter and Paul's Abbey, Dendermonde

■ The **Cistercians**, White Monks

- Cistercian monasteries are divided into those that follow the Common Observance, the Middle Observance and the Strict Observance (Trappists).
- The keynote was a return to a literal observance of the Rule of St Benedict, and the most striking feature in the reform was the return to manual labour, and especially to field-work. They became great agriculturists and horse and cattle breeders, assisted by lay brothers.
- The (ruins of the) great Cistercian Abbey of Villers-la-Ville bear(s) witness to this great past, when this abbey had about 10,000 ha of land and more than 15 big farms, called 'grangiae', some as far away as Schoten or Kraaiwinkel (near Sittard).
- Also : Ter Duinen Abbey (Koksijde); Ter Doest Abbey (Lissewege); Bornem Abbey; Herkenrode; etc..



Villers-la-Ville



Cistercian coat of arms and motto



The barn of Ter Doest Abbey, Lissewege



The abbey barn on the outside

- The **Trappists**, also Order of Cistercians of the Strict Observance
 - Following the rule “You are only really a monk when you live from the work of your hands” (48th chapter of the Rule of St Benedict) Trappist monasteries produce goods like bread, cheese, and, of course, beer. These are sold to provide an income for the monastery.
 - Orval Abbey: One of the richest and most famous Cistercian monasteries in Europe in the 12th C – The legend of Countess Mathilda, Duchess of Lorraine (“Le Val d’Or”, the valley of gold)
 - Today, only seven Trappist beers remain, 6 in Belgium, 1 in the Netherlands. Find the names of the beers and link them with the abbeys. Is Leffe a Trappist beer or an abbey beer (difference)?



Orval Abbey



Achel Trappist

B. Carthusians

- The **Carthusians**, Order of St Bruno (of Cologne)
 - The English word for a Carthusian monastery is ‘charterhouse’, derived from Chartreuse.
 - A community of hermits, headed by a prior. Each choir monk has his own hermitage.
 - Former Carthusian monasteries: Herne (the heart of Margaretha of York!); Antwerp; Ghent; Sint Anna-ter-Woestijne, Bruges; etc.

C. Orders of friars, mendicants

- The **Franciscans**, Friars Minor, Minors, Greyfriars/Grey Friars
 - The Clarisses or **Poor Clares**, also Minoresses, the Second Order of St Francis, Order of St Clare.
 - Franciscans have reported higher ratios of stigmata and have claimed more visions of Jesus and Mary than other orders.

- “Doctor Mirabilis” Roger Bacon; the Martyrs of Gorcum; Valentinus Paquay (het heilig paterke van Hasselt).
 - ‘*Fratello Sole Sorella Luna*’, a biopic directed by Franco Zeffirelli, music by Donovan.
- The **Capuchins**, Order of the Friars Minor Capuchin
 - An offshoot of the Franciscan Order.
 - A large number of them have suffered martyrdom for the Gospel.
 - The Crypt (or ossuary) under Santa Maria della Concezione.
 - The austere life of the so-called “Sisters of Suffering” (Capuchin nuns).
 - Houses in Aalst, Antwerp, Bruges, Herentals, etc.
 - The **Dominicans**, Friar Preachers, (Order of) Preachers, Blackfriars/Black Friars
 - Pun going back to the Middle Ages: “Domini canes” (dogs of the Lord), alluding to their role in the Inquisition – the symbol of a running dog with a burning torch in its mouth.
 - The ‘*Malleus maleficarum*’ (de ‘*Heksenhamer*’), by the Dominicans Jacob Sprenger and Heinrich Kramer, a manual for interrogating and exposing witches – praised in the papal bull ‘*Summis desiderantes affectibus*’ of Pope Innocentius VIII.
 - The **Inquisition**



Dominican monastery, Ghent



Galileo facing the Roman Inquisition

- The **Carmelites**, Carmelite Friars, Whitefriars/White Friars (fully: the Order of the Brothers of Our Lady of Mount Carmel)
 - Calced and Discalced Carmelites.
 - St John of the Cross; Saint Thérèse de Lisieux (“heilig Trezeke”).



Carmelite Church, Ghent



St Ursula, by Hans Memling

- The **Augustinians**, Austin **Friars**, the Order of the Hermit Friars of Saint Augustine, Hermits of St Augustine (in Dutch: Augustijner Heremieten)
 - There are two main movements: this one and the one below.
 - The **Ursulines** and their role in education – St Ursula and the 11,000 virgins (See also saints, File 9, Iconography)
 - Prominent members: mystic Thomas à Kempis, Dutch Christian humanist Desiderius Erasmus, Martin Luther, the only English Pope Adrian IV

D. Orders of canons (following the Rule of St Augustine), canons

- The **Augustinian Canons**, Austin Canons, Canons Regular of St Augustine (in Dutch: Augustijner Koorheren of Kanunniken)
 - They also live under the Augustinian Rule, like the friars, but, by contrast, the canons live in outside communities and on an income, called a 'prebend'.
- The **Norbertines** or **Premonstratensians**, Premonstratensian Canons, White Canons (in England)
 - The German aristocrat Norbert preached in Antwerp against the theories of Tankelin, who believed that wives should be held in common.
 - Werenfried van Straaten, de "spekpater", known for his humanitarian work and his Catholic association Aid to the Church in Need.
 - Here are 7 great Norbertine abbeys. Match the photos with one of the information bits and fill in the names. Find extra information for a presentation.
 - a. The largest Premonstratensian abbey in Belgium – The museum contains a copy of Leonardo da Vinci's *Last Supper*, painted by the artist's pupil Andrea del Solario (and admired by Rubens and Van Dyck)
 - b. Located in an area of woods and marches, it was founded by monks from Floreffe as a hospice for pilgrims – It became an abbey in 1621.
 - c. On the edge of vast lakes – It was founded by Godfrey I the Bearded when he donated the land around his hunting lodge (and park).
 - d. This abbey stands on the watershed between the Demer and the Nete, where the provinces of Antwerp, Brabant and Limburg meet – The abbey church has an unusual choir which is longer than its nave.
 - e. A school now occupies this old abbey (in Hainaut) which was founded in 1126 by Odo, a disciple of St Norbert – The cloisters still have their Gothic vaultings, and there is a beautiful chapter house.

- f. This imposing abbey, overlooking the green water meadows of the river Sambre, was founded in 1121 by St Norbert, the founder of the Premonstratensian Order – The abbey was sacked in 1188 by the Count of Hainaut, and again in 1232 and 1237 by the counts of Flanders. Later it suffered heavily from the French – A brasserie offers bread, cheese and beer made in the abbey.
- g. This Premonstratensian minster is one of the finest examples of Baroque architecture and ornamentation in Belgium – The chancel is very long and extends into a square tower – The fresco and grisaille on the ceiling are dedicated to St Norbert.



1/...../.....



2/...../.....



3/...../.....



4/...../.....



5/...../.....



6/...../.....



7/...../.....



8/...../.....



4. Beguinages and almshouses

4.1. Beguinages, Flemish world heritage

Around 1200, lay women of the southern Low Countries began to lead a new kind of religious life that became popular rapidly. Its success drew the attention of many contemporary observers. The fame of these lay women, soon to be called “beguines”, reached even England. Master Robert Grosseteste (d. 1253) preached a sermon to the Franciscans of Oxford on the value of religious poverty. After the sermon he admitted privately to one of the friars that, although the Franciscans were highly placed on the ladder of poverty because they lived from begging, there was even a higher rung, closer to celestial perfection, reached by those who lived by the work of their own hands. The beguines occupied that place, he said, “because they earn their living with their own hands and do not make burdensome demands on the world”.

The movement originally presented itself in a variety of forms. Some of these women lived as recluses, others worked as helpers in hospitals and leprosaria. For a few women, a life of penance outside nunneries was transitory, a station on the way to the more traditional monastic vocation; others left it to get married or for other reasons; still others, increasingly numerous, practised the lifestyle for a longer time, often until their death. Churchmen sympathetic to the movement called them “religious women”, “holy maidens” or “holy women”, “chaste virgins” or similar names. Critics maliciously slandered the ascetic way of life of these women and made up new names of derision, one of them, “beguines” eventually prevailed in written and spoken discourse and took on a more respectable meaning, but it never entirely lost its pejorative connotations.

In the first period, dating from about 1190 until 1230, beguines gathered informally in loose communities without institutional attachments. This changed around 1230, when beguine groups began to acquire property, adopted sets of regulations to govern their life as a community, and presented themselves to the outside world as religious institutions, either in form of small “convents”, or as larger architectural complexes segregated in some manner from the surrounding urban community, the so-called court beguinages. The two forms of beguine institutions emerged simultaneously and responded to different needs and goals.

Historical background

Despite its regional diversity – from the marshy lowlands of coastal Flanders, the gently rolling wheat fields of Brabant, the area of rich farmland between Louvain and Liège to the Meuse valley with its cities dating from the early Middle Ages – the southern Low Countries did share important traits.

First of all, they were inhabited by people who were multilingual or at least in close contact with both Romance and Germanic cultural worlds; they were dominated by powerful and independent-minded cities; their population enjoyed a high level of literacy. This final characteristic was all the more remarkable to outsiders because it also applied to women of the higher and middle social strata. Elementary schools were usually coeducational. When separate schools for boys and girls existed, there is no indication that the instruction girls received at this level differed significantly from that of boys. The real gender gap became apparent at the higher education level. Nevertheless the very existence of “higher” schools for girls proves that knowledge of Latin and foreign languages was considered a social and economic asset that would brighten the girl’s prospects for marriage.

The family structure in the low Countries belonged to what is called the “northern” or “northwestern” European type. Unlike the “extended family” in southern Europe, households were headed by the nuclear couple of husband and wife, both of whom had entered marriage rather late, at about twenty-five years of age, and were more or less of equal age. The couple married when financial independence enabled them to set up a separate household and they had relatively few children, two or three. A remarkably large proportion of the population

never married. Women also were an economic factor in the household, they could inherit from their parents and therefore didn't need a dowry to marry, which favoured the continuity of small enterprises in which women took a role.

The wide involvement of women in economic production may also explain why women formed the majority of the overall population in the cities of the southern Netherlands. Women left the country for the city probably in greater numbers than men. Many of them found employment as domestic servants and numerous women were active participants in the urban economies of the Low Countries during the 13th to 15th centuries. Many vignettes taken from archival sources stage them on market squares and in the streets, running their own business, managing stalls and vending their wares. Law codes, court and guild records, contracts and many other sources reveal that they were innkeepers, cloth merchants, painters, fishwives, teachers and even construction workers and smiths. Foreign visitors repeatedly express surprise or even shock over the public behaviour of women, but they were usually made uneasy simply by the relative freedom of movement and action.

This activity on the public scene did not go without friction. Evidence precedes the well-known cultural wars on gender in the European renaissance by almost two centuries. The oldest fabliaux in French ridiculed, satirized, but also celebrated conflicts between slow-witted men and sly women, between impaired masculinity and ambitious femininity. Sources from legal practice teach us that woman's public appearance often signaled potential disorder and some areas with a strong military or political meaning were exclusively male.

Moreover, woman's behaviour was subject to much more restrictions than man's. While Netherlandish culture in this age greatly appreciated sumptuous dress for men, it never failed to condemn women for dressing to excess. Moralists assailed women for parading with thick layers of makeup, wearing garish clothes and complicated headdresses which "made them look like horned beasts". One major restriction imposed on women in the public sphere resulted from their exclusion from urban politics: civic office in urban communities always eluded women. In fact, this was one of the main instruments by which the urban authorities restricted women's participation in influential trades by the end of the Middle Ages and attempted to relegate their activities to the private sphere of the family.

Origin of the beguine movement

The first historians who dealt with beguine movement thought beguines were nuns manquées, women who became beguines because they could not be nuns. Others argue that some young women became beguines either because there were simply too many candidates, because they could not afford the dos, the entrance gift required in many monasteries or were not able to conclude a suitable marriage. In 1935 Herbert Grunmann was the first to speak of "a religious movement by women" who pursued the ideal of apostolic poverty that reinvigorated religious thought throughout the Middle ages. Thanks to the innovative approach of Pope Innocent III around 1200, beguines and other extraregular movements gained ecclesiastical approval and remained largely within the folds of the Church.

While Germany was noted for the proliferation of scattered women and even small convents, it was in Belgium that the beguinage developed. It is thought that the Beguine movement began in the diocese of Liège by Lambert le Begue,

Origins of the name "Beguine"?

The name "Beghina" appears only at the end of the 12th century. Negative connotations at first: papelardes, meaning hypocrites.

Further explanations:

1. Lambert le Bègue a priest of Liège who encouraged women who wished to live "religiously". The group of women with which he was associated and who were later recognized as Beguines, appeared between 1170 and 1175

2. Beguine is a derivation of the name "Albigensian" (see above).
3. Beguine is a reference to mendicacy (cfr. "to beg")
4. St. Begga, mother of Pepijn van Landen, mother superior of a convent in Andenne, where she died in 694.
5. Reference to the colour "bigio" = beige, colour of the clothes Beguines wore
6. Beatrice, wife of a Bohemian king, founded a beguinage with her daughters Ghiselgundus and Nazarena, thus forming together: Be-Ghi-Na.
7. Maybe it was the diminutive of "Bagga", meaning heavily dressed.

"Cities of Ladies" by Walter Simons

"Cities of Ladies" introduces the social and cultural history of the southern Low Countries in the Middle Ages, follows the beguines from their first gatherings near hospices and hermitages around 1200 to their formal communities formed after 1230. The book suggests that beguine life may best be characterized as a retreat from the world that included an active apostolate, supported by manual work in the urban textile industry, and teaching. These communities were composed of women from all social strata but became gradually dominated by the lower and middle classes. The large popular success of beguine life derived from the opportunities it offered for single women to earn a living in a supportive atmosphere through work in the urban textile industry. In the early 14th century the movement was condemned as heretical but nevertheless survived in the Low Countries.

Abridged from Simons W., *Cities of Ladies*, Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2001

<http://whc.unesco.org/en/list/855>

<http://www.spiritualitytoday.org/spir2day/91431peters.html>

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beguine>

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hadewijch>

4.2. Vocabulary

How is it said in the text? Choose from

Lay - literacy - ecclesiastical - hospice - derision - vignette - burdensome - to excess - penance - relegate
gender gap - dowry - recluse - traits - celestial

1. Ridicule:
2. Property brought by bride to husband at marriage:
3. Secular, not ordained:
4. Like in heaven:
5. By the church (authorities):
6. Difference between the sexes:
7. Arduous, backbreaking :
8. Shelter maintained by monastic order:
9. Characteristic:
10. Overabundant:
- 11 Hermit:
12. Banish:

13. Self mortification:

14. A short, usually descriptive literary sketch:

15. Being able to read and write:

4.3. Comprehension

1. Elucidate the historical background of the beguine movement in the Netherlands. What was the role of education, family structure, demographic particularities, women's freedom of movement?
2. Comment the statement: "beguines were feminists *avant la lettre*"



4.4. Almshouses, a typical feature of Flanders



St Josef Almshouses, Bruges

Almshouses (Godshuizen) are European institutions created from the 10th (England) and the 12th centuries in Flanders and the Netherlands. Alms in the Christian tradition are donations to poor, old, distressed people. The history of almshouses was tightly knotted to that of the inhabitants of the town where they were located. Today in the U.K. some 2,600 almshouses continue to be operated, providing 30,000 dwellings for 36,000 people. In the Netherlands the "hofkens" are still functioning as accommodation for elderly people (mostly women). In Flanders, almshouses in various cities (Antwerp, Ghent, Geel) are still in use. Although the management is not in private hands anymore as was the case in the Middle Ages.

In 1793 the French occupation decreed that “charity was not understood to be a private matter, but on the contrary “a public duty”. So the foundations were secularised or state-owned and today in Bruges 46 of such houses are managed by the OCMW (public office of social welfare), still fulfilling more or less the same role as in the Middle Ages: taking care of the underdogs in society.

The foundations for the poor and elderly were originally established

- by the equivalent of today’s trade-unions (corporations) for the benefit of their old and sometimes poverty-stricken members (e.g. the shoemakers, weavers, blacksmiths and bakers in Bruges).
- by parishes, the houses then termed “Dishuis” or boardinghouses. The word Dishuis is based on the English verb “to dish up”.
- by private wealthy individuals, generals and navy-commanders who provided able-bodied, indigent people (such as elderly couples, unmarried women, widows, poor priests, the blind, old needy soldiers and sailors) with a welcome roof over their heads, bed and board and often something more.

Each complex contains at least one chapel (prayer-room): the poor and the aged who lived rent-free were kindly invited to offer a prayer here, every evening, for the generous family who had established the foundations.

For each foundation a “foundation deed” was necessary, passed in front of a magistrate in the presence of two aldermen. The deed had to bear the following items:

- Who was the dwelling destined for? Either women alone, widowed or not, men alone, elderly couples.
- It had to be clearly defined how much money would be deposited, so that the interests would provide for the upkeep even after the donators had passed away.
- It had to be stipulated who would be in charge (tutor), what his (her) exact functions would be. He (she) had the right to dish out punishments.
- Therefore a detailed list of do’s and don’ts was of the utmost importance, to ensure that there would be order and discipline in the small community.

Do’s and don’ts.

1. Be a good and true catholic, no heretic. If you don’t pray in the chapel, you are bound to be fined. Five times a year you have to confess and receive Holy Communion: at Easter, Whitsun, Assumption, All Saints and Christmas.
2. Don’t spend the night anywhere else.
3. Keep your room tidy, no one can go out if the bed is not made and the cell not swept.
4. If you get married you’ll have to leave.
5. No begging in the streets.
6. No gambling, either in the house nor outside.
7. No trading in the house.
8. Whether you have some business to attend to or not you have to be in before 6 p.m. (October – Easter) or 8 p.m.(Easter – October).

Mentally-ill, crippled, people suffering from gout, lepers, those suffering from epilepsy and those disturbing public life in the streets are not accepted.

Each foundation had some more rules:

In some you had to bring your own cutlery, bed sheets, personal underwear, shirts, a bed, a small amount of money, which in case of decease will stay in the community.

Types of almshouses.

An almshouse could consist of a series of very tiny houses (stenen camerkins), lining the street either with individual entrances, or with one common entrance. They all had a common prayer room or chapel (some of them are jewels with a magnificent interior). Sometimes, though, an ordinary room was turned into a chapel. Quite often there was a small garden and a well. Some almshouses, however, were a set of buildings round an inner court, with only one entrance to the street.

Until 1980 the interior of the almshouses was practically identical : a rectangular living-kitchen with an open small corridor, and on the first floor, right under the roof, a small bedroom. Until 1980 no bathroom or shower, the toilet would be outside. Most complexes have been restored and modernised and are still inhabited by elderly people (some 200 in Bruges). Most of the inner gardens are open to the public.



Retell the story of the almshouses of the Low Countries with the help of these props:

Christian tradition - secularized - elderly, indigent people - trade union - parish - chapel/praying room - foundation deed (akte) - do's and don'ts - types of almshouses



Almshouses Bruges

5. Gothic master builders



The Master Builder holds the floor plan of the Chapel in his right hand.

“At the beginning of the fifth year of the rebuilding of England’s Canterbury cathedral, suddenly by the collapse of beams beneath his feet, [master William of Sens] fell to the ground amid a shower of falling masonry and timber from ... fifty feet or more ... On the master craftsman alone fell the wrath of God – or the machinations of the Devil” (Brother Gervase, Canterbury, twelfth century, cited in Andrews, page 20).

Master masons oversaw all aspects of church construction in the Middle Ages, from design and structural engineering to decoration. The job presented formidable logistical challenges, especially at the great cathedral sites. The master mason at Chartres coordinated the work of 400 people scattered with their equipment and supplies at many locations, from distant stone quarries to high scaffolding. This work force set in place some 200 blocks of stone each day.

Master masons gained prestige during the thirteenth century as they increasingly differentiated themselves from the laborers working under them. In the words of Nicolas de Biard, a thirteenth-century Dominican preacher, “The master masons, holding measuring rod and gloves in their hands, say to others :

“Cut there,” and they do not work; nevertheless they receive the greater fees”(cited in Frisch, page 55). By the standards of the time they were well-read; they travelled widely. They knew both aristocrats and high church officials, and they earned as much as the knights.

From the thirteenth century on, in what was then an exceptional honour, masters were buried along with patrons and bishops, in the cathedrals they built. The tomb sculpture of a master mason named Hugues Libergier in the Reims cathedral portrays him, attended by angels, as a well-dressed figure with his tools and a model of the cathedral. The names of more than 3,000 master masons are known today. In some cases their names were prominently inscribed in the labyrinths on cathedral floors.

Masters and their crews moved constantly from site to site, and several masters contributed to a building. A master’s training was rigorous but not standardized, so close study of subtle differences in construction techniques can reveal the participation of specific individuals. Fewer than 100 master builders are estimated to have been responsible for the major architectural projects around Paris during the century-long building boom there, some of them working on parts of as many as forty churches. Funding shortages and technical delays, such as the need to let mortar harden for three to six months, made construction sporadic.

(M. Stoksted, op.cit.)

Also

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Poor_Man%27s_Bible (poor man’s bible)

<http://www.abelard.org/france/cathedral-construction.php> (veel beeld)

<http://architecture.about.com/library/weekly/aa121800f.ht>

5.1. Vocabulary

Some professions of the building trade: stone cutter, sculptor, mortar maker, mason, carpenter, blacksmith, roofer, glass maker

Synonyms for master craftsman: artisan, master mason

Material: beams, scaffolding, masonry, timber

Tools

- for shaping the stone: a mallet, chisels, and a metal straight edge
- mason's tools: trowel, measuring rod, right angle, plumb rule

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stonemason>



Mason's chisel



Rubber mallet

6. Stained-glass windows



The basic technique for making coloured glass has been known since ancient Egypt. It involves the addition of metallic oxides – cobalt for blue, manganese for red and purple – to a basic formula of sand and ash or lime that is fused at a high temperature. Such “stained” glass was used on a small scale in church windows during the Early Christian period and in Carolingian and Ottonian churches. Coloured glass sometimes adorned Romanesque churches, but the art form reached a height of sophistication and popularity in the cathedrals and churches of the Gothic era.

Making a stained-glass image was a complex and costly process. A designer first drew a composition on a wooden panel the same size as the opening of the window to be filled, noting the colours of each of the elements in it. Glassblowers produced sheets of coloured glass, then artisans cut individual pieces from these large sheets and laid them out on the wooden template. Painters added details with enamel emulsion, and the glass was reheated to fuse the enamel to it. Finally the pieces were joined together with narrow lead strips, called *comes*. The assembled pieces were set into iron frames that had been made to fit the window opening.

The colours of 12th century glass – many reds and blues with touches of dark green, brown, and orange yellow – were so dark as to be nearly opaque, and early uncoloured glass was full of impurities. But the demand for stained-glass windows stimulated technical experimentation to achieve new colours and greater purity and transparency. The Cistercians adorned their churches with *grisaille* windows, painting foliage and crosses on to a grey glass, and Gothic artisans developed a clearer material onto which elaborate narrative scenes could be drawn.

By the 13th century, many new colours were discovered, some accidentally, such as sunny yellow produced by the addition of silver oxide. Flashing, in which a layer of one colour was fused to a layer of another colour, produced an almost infinite range of colours. Blue and yellow, for example, could be combined to make green. In the same way, clear glass could be fused to layers of coloured glass in varying thicknesses to produce a range of hues from light to dark. The deep colours of the early-Gothic stained-glass windows give them a saturated and mysterious brilliance. The richness of some of these colours, particularly blue, has never been surpassed. Pale colours and large areas of *grisaille* glass became increasingly popular from the mid-thirteenth century on, making the windows of later Gothic churches bright and clear by comparison.

<http://www.stainedglass.org/html/SGAAhistorySG.htm>

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stained_glass

6.1. Vocabulary

Came : template [‘templit] pattern or gauge, such as a thin metal plate with a cut pattern, used as a guide in making something accurately

Opaque [ou’peik] impenetrable by light; neither transparent nor translucent.

Grisaille: A system of painting in grey tints of various shades; used either for decoration or to represent objects, as in relief

Hue: shade

Pale: low intensity of colour

6.2. Comprehension

1. What are the ingredients of (coloured) glass?
2. Describe the process of making a stained-glass image. Use: designer, glass-blower, artisan, painter.
3. What new colours and techniques were discovered in the 13th century?

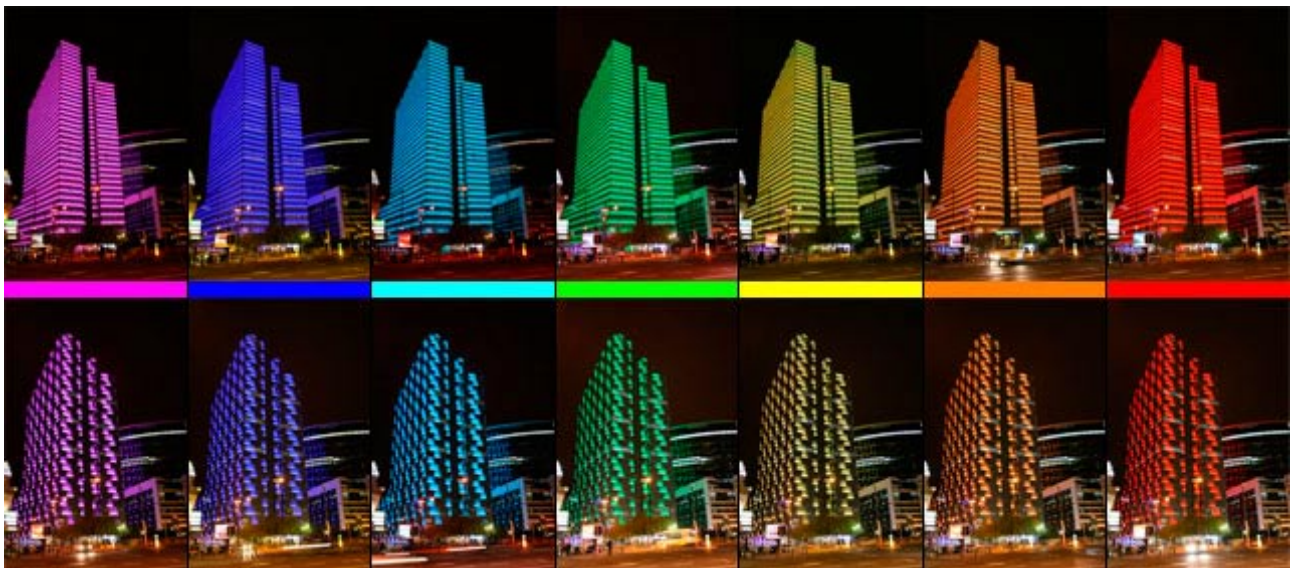
6.3. Assignment

Present a (series of) stained-glass window(s) from a church in your hometown. Use (a summary) of the text above to explain about the technique; pay attention to iconography etc.

EXTRA: Dexia tower forecasts weather

The art project developed by Lab(au), is titled 'Who's afraid of Red, Green and Blue?'. 4200 windows of the 34 storey building are equipped with a LED-lightingsystem. At the end of a cycle of six works of art (in 2008) the public can choose its favourite.

The second project of the series will forecast tomorrow's weather for Brussels, in collaboration with the Royal Meteorological Institute of Belgium. The project displays tomorrow's temperature, cloudiness, precipitations, and wind, by using colors and geometrical patterns to visualize these data. A color-code corresponds to tomorrow's temperature compared to the monthly average, linked to a scale of color-temperatures ranging from violet (-6° or colder), blue (-4°), cyan (-2°), green (monthly average), yellow ($+2^{\circ}$), orange ($+4^{\circ}$) to red ($+6^{\circ}$ or warmer).



Furthermore, the level (dark / light) of this color corresponds to the light-condition of the sky of the upcoming day. Geometrical patterns are created with a vector-field, constituted of small lines which constantly re-orient, causing patterns, letters and numbers to appear. These patterns are visualizing tomorrow's cloudiness.

<http://lab-au.com/>

7. Miscellaneous aspects of religion

7.1. Church furniture and religious objects

Confessional	very private place where someone can confess to their sins to the Priest
Stations of the Cross	fourteen pictures or carvings which tell the story of how Jesus suffered and died
Holy water font	contains water which is blessed by the Priest. When entering the church worshippers dip their fingers into the holy water and then make the sign of the cross.
The pulpit	this is where the sermon is preached from.
Votive candles (vigil lights)	a stand of small candles. People can light a candle to show that they are praying about something particular. They are usually near an icon or statue of Mary.
The lectern	a stand from where the Bible is read during church services.
The altar	the altar is used by the Priest during Mass
The paschal candle	large candle near the baptismal font.
The sanctuary	the holiest part of the church, around the altar.
The tabernacle	on the tabernacle are the 'blessed sacraments'. This is kept to take to people who have been too ill to come to church.

7.2. Prayer, worship, church organization

Fill in:

Resurrection - homily/sermon - chalice - Trinity - Evangeliary Gospels, Lectionary Psalter - deacons - Immaculate Conception - repentance - host

1. A Book of the Gospels, also called the _____, is recommended for the reading from the _____ but, where this book is not available, the _____ is used in its place.
2. In the _____ the priest explains the passage from the Bible that is set for the day.
3. The bread consecrated in the Eucharist is called _____.
4. The cup for communion wine is called the _____.
5. A collection of psalms is called the _____.
6. _____ is expected from a sinner before he is forgiven.
7. On Easter Christians celebrate the _____ of Christ.
8. Father, son and holy spirit are called the _____.
9. Mary, the mother of Jesus, is believed to have been born without the stain of original sin. This is termed the _____.
10. Unlike celibate priests _____ may be married.

7.3. Liturgical year

Advent Christmas	four Sundays before Christmas ; ending on Christmas Eve celebration of the birth of Jesus (26th is Boxing Day)
Epiphany	this starts with the twelfth day of Christmas and we think of the visit of the wise men to Jesus after he was born
Lent Ash Wednesday Palm Sunday	period just before Easter the day after Shrove Tuesday when many people eat pancakes. the Sunday before Easter Day
Maunday Thursday The Last Supper Good Friday Easter Ascension day Whitsun/ Whit Sunday/ Pentacost	the Thursday of Holy Week Laatste Avondmaal the Friday of Holy Week resurrection of Christ fourtieth day after Easter (Hemelvaartsdag) “the fiftieth day” after Easter (Pinksteren)

7.4. Seven catholic sacraments:

- Baptism
- Penance / Confession
- Eucharist / Communion
- Confirmation
- Matrimony (marriage)
- Holy Orders (ordination)
- Sacrament of the Sick

Why do we have Easter eggs?



An egg is a symbol of new life. At Easter it is used as a symbol of Jesus' resurrection. The outside of an egg looks like a stone and so it is a way to represent the outside view of Jesus' sealed tomb. Inside the egg is the new life of a baby chick ready to break out and so this is a way to represent Jesus' new life as he rose from death.

People would decorate eggs to give to members of their family at Easter. Now chocolate Easter eggs are given as a result of this symbol of new life.

<http://www.request.org.uk/index.htm>

More on Christian architecture:

http://d3.dir.ac2.yahoo.com/Society_and_Culture/Religion_and_Spirituality/Faiths_and_Practices/Christianity/Arts/Architecture/Buildings_and_Structures/

8. Sacred to three religions: the Dome of the Rock

It is said the Dome of the Rock marks the centre of the earth, which may not be far from the truth. The golden yellow rock beneath the imposing dome is believed to be the summit of Mount Moria, which is mentioned in the Old Testament and is, therefore, a significant monument to human history. Almost two-and-a-half thousand years before Mohammed, the founder of Islam, made his legendary ride to heaven, Abraham, the father of Judaism, is believed to have stood at the same spot with a knife quivering in his hand as he prepared to sacrifice his son Isaac. The quick intervention of an angel saved the boy.

About 900 years later King Salomon built the first stone temple of the Jews over the rock. This holiest of shrines sheltered the most important cult object of the Israelites – the Ark of the Covenant – an acacia-wood box containing both tablets of the Ten Commandments. For centuries the temple remained the political and religious heart of the Israeli state. The sacrificial altar may have stood on the same rock, a theory supported by the evidence of a hole that may have been used to drain off animal blood.



The Dome of the Rock (Jerusalem)

Repeatedly looted, destroyed and rebuilt (for the last time by King Herod the Great), Jesus of Nazareth entered the temple towards the end of its existence, first as a newborn child when Mary and Joseph, following Jewish custom, presented him to God. He returned as a 12-year-old to meet with the temple elders and again as an angry preacher to expel the merchants who had turned the house of God into a “den of thieves”. The temple was finally destroyed in 70 A.D. during a Jewish uprising against the Romans. It was never rebuilt.

To this day Jews mourn the destruction of the temple at the Weeping Wall – the only part of the original structure still to be seen.

The Romans constructed a temple to Jupiter, their national god, in its place. But this too crumbled away, and the site gradually deteriorated into a rubbish heap in a southeastern corner of Jerusalem’s old town. Caliph Omar, who was inspired by the legend of Mohammed’s nocturnal ride to conquer Palestine and Jerusalem, had the rock cleared of rubbish, dirt and crumbling ruins.

Caliph Abd el Malik gave the order to build the majestic blue and gold Dome of the Rock in 685 in order to show that Mohammed stood higher than the prophet Jesus Christ. He was concerned that his Muslim brethren would be unduly influenced by the grandeur and beauty of the nearby Church of the Holy Sepulchre.

The Dome of the Rock, however, was larger and more colorful. After the Kaaba in Mecca and the Great Mosque in Medina, it was soon regarded as the third holiest shrine and wonder of the Islamic world. The dome which was once believed to have been covered by ten thousand plates of pure gold, has become synonymous with Jerusalem. For a small fee, guides are happy to show visitors the hoof prints of Mohammed’s horse, a reliquary holding two hairs from the prophet’s beard, the fingerprint left by the Angel Gabriel, and a footprint of Jesus. And those who lay their ear against the rock can hear the water flowing in the river of paradise.

“One night Mohammed rode his winged horse from Mecca to Jerusalem where he was welcomed to the temple rock of the prophets Abraham, Moses, Solomon and Jesus Christ. Together they prayed in the grotto under the holy rock. Then Mohammed remounted his horse and rode to heaven at which time the rock freed itself and the Angel Gabriel, who accompanied Mohammed had to hold it back with his hand.. Mohammed, however, was in seventh heaven and glimpsed the jou of paradise. The same night he returned to Mecca.”

(Islamic legend)

(Buildings that changed the world)

8.1. Assignment

1. Find more about the rock and the role it played in the three religions mentioned.

see : <http://www.sacred-destinations.com/israel/jerusalem-dome-of-the-rock.htm>

2. Make an oral presentation about another monument of worship like: the temples of Angkor Wat, Djenné Mosque in Mali, the Hagia Sophia in Istanbul, the Potala palace in Lhasa, Tibet, St Peter's in Rome ...

File 8

Highlights of Flemish art throughout the ages

1. Masters at their arts

From as early as the seventh century, when the successors of Clovis allowed the northern marshes of their kingdom to be christened, the development of Flemish culture has been a coherent story. The **first abbeys** are built in Ghent (St. Bavo and St. Peter) and in what is now the Belgian province of Limburg, St. Truiden. Via these centres, the new culture, coming from the Latin world, penetrates the Flemish regions. It was a new spirit, born of both the Christian teaching and the late Roman heritage and soon to capture the whole of Western Europe.

Flanders absorbs a multitude of influences. The abbeys grow into astonishing focal points of art and learning; mainly along the river Meuse, in the shadow of Charlemagne's imperial throne, artisans create an unprecedented stream of luxury goods, according to norms and styles defined in Constantinople. **Churches and monasteries** are filled with illuminated manuscripts and the gleam of ecclesiastical regalia. It appears as if the Flemish **landscape** itself claims a role in the blossoming of all this fresh creativity. Along the broad valleys of Meuse and Scheldt ever new influences travel northward. In the Meuse region, in the 11th and 12th centuries, Romanesque churches are built for which the inspiration had come from the Rhineland. The principal examples of this style were to be found at Sint-Truiden, with the churches of St. Peter and St. Gangulfus, but in other places, too, parish churches were built in similar style.

On the other side it was the Scheldt which carried **Romanesque influences from Normandy** northward, resulting in a totally different style, with an octagonal steeple rising from the meeting point of nave and transept. This may be a regional variation of the central dome on the Eastern-style church buildings. Princes and patricians also became great builders, feeling the urge to manifest their might and growing wealth in the shape of solid Romanesque-style architecture. Count Philip of Alsace, in 1180, built his Gravensteen (**Count's Castle**) in Ghent as an affirmation of power addressed to the Ghent nobility who, with their own stone structures, were becoming far too self-assertive for comfort.



From the 13th century, however, financing art production was no longer the exclusive domain of the church and the princes of the realm. The cities themselves began to be patrons of extensive building-programmes underlining their prestige. In this way, the St Nicholas church in Ghent and the Pamele church in Oudenaarde came into being, early examples of a Scheldt Gothic style, a regional adaptation of an architectural mode which had come from the French heartland. Near the North Sea coast Gothic found its expression in brick. The church of Our Lady in Bruges was adorned with an immense brick tower and almost anywhere in the low-lying polders behind the dunes the skyline was marked by sturdy hall-churches in brick. In addition, **town halls, belfries, covered markets and city gates** came to proclaim the glory and ambition of prosperous Flanders.

In 1376, Bruges designed what was to become the model of a Flemish city hall. Soaring belfries proclaimed the cities' power and freedom, extensive

marketing halls showed how trade and industry blossomed. In Ieper and Bruges, both such halls and belfries were combined into one impressive structure.

Brabant was a latecomer by comparison, but it found compensation in a burst of **flamboyant architecture**. It looked as if the sandstone modeled itself into a wealth of forms which expressed the vitality of the age. While the St. Rombout's Cathedral in Mechlin and the St. Michael's in Brussels still retained an air of severe majesty, the west tower of Our Lady's cathedral in Antwerp seems to be dancing high up in the air. Leuven builds a gem of a city hall, while in Brussels a slender soaring belfry arises atop a city hall, a design of enduring beauty. Flanders, too, is mesmerized by the Brabant Gothic style. In 1518, the aldermen of Ghent order the plans for a new magistrates' house from the highly successful Brabant architects Keldermans and De Waghemaeckere, while Oudenaarde also has its new city hall built in Brabant Gothic.

From the North sea to the river Meuse the arts show an unprecedented mastery supported by apparently unlimited funds. Flanders was basking in the sun of Burgundy. In the 15th century the art of the so-called **Flemish Primitives** was born from a long tradition of miniature painting. Jan van Eyck opens up entirely new vistas, and with him Flemish art acquires mastery over whatever colour, whatever light, whatever dimension. In Brussels Rogier van der Weyden sets the tone

In Ghent, Hugo van der Goes pays the ultimate price of genius by going insane. Hans Memling fills the churches of Bruges with altarpieces steeped in gracious mysticism. By the end of the century, the visionary

surrealist Jeroen Bosch turns apparent reality upside down. The rich, plagued by a bad conscience, have chapels built which they adorn with monumental paintings. Contrite devotion turns out to create an excellent market for the great masters of the period. All this combined with the glorious wealth of the Burgundian Court, exciting the admiration and envy of Europe, made Flanders and Brabant, together with Northern and Middle Italy, into the greatest artistic centre of the Christian world.

In this period, yet another comet appeared in the scintillating sky of Flemish art. In southern Flanders, at the frontier of the French cultural world, the foundations were laid for a new style in **music**. The masters of Flemish **polyphonics** were soon to delight the whole of Europe. Cathedral schools and princely courts all boasted musicians from Flanders and their music opened up new vistas everywhere.

It did take some time, though, before the ever more insistent voice of the **Italian Renaissance** was heard proclaiming the norms of Antiquity as the right measure for the new world. In 1517, Margaret of Austria, governor of the Southern Netherlands, clearly opted for the new style when she had her residence built in Mechlin as the first Renaissance palace in this part of the world. In 1535 Jean Wallot created the Civil Court of Bruges, with a Flemish front in Gothic style but with purely Renaissance ornamentation.

Progressive artists launched a veritable "press campaign" in favour of the new trend. Pieter Coecke van Aalst translated Serlio's basic textbook on the **new architecture** into Dutch. Hans Vredeman de Vries published whole catalogues of Renaissance decorative elements which were soon applied to new buildings. By the mid 16th century (1561 – 1565) Antwerp had its new city hall built by Cornelis Floris in the Italian mode, showing how the



The Ghent Altarpiece or Adoration of the Mystic Lamb

Renaissance was understood in Flanders. The Antwerp City Hall was to function as a point of reference for the whole of Northern Europe where, from now on, the new architecture was seen through Flemish eyes.

The art world found itself in a similar situation, with the same result: a home-grown Flemish Renaissance style. Frans Floris, Quinten Metsys, Antonio Moro and Pieter Pourbus combined the tastes of two worlds, while their subject matter also became more extensive and varied. Painting was no longer limited to religious themes. It now began to embrace **genre pieces and landscapes**. An exceptional artist in this period is Pieter Bruegel who followed his own ideas and became one of the greatest artists Flanders had ever known.

The painters of the day also designed cartoons for the **tapestry industry**, centred in Bruges, Brussels, Mechlin and Oudenaarde, where it reached an unprecedented degree of perfection. Flemish tapestries were exported all over Europe to adorn coronation halls and cathedrals. Antwerp developed a luxury industry of astounding wealth and variety. Plantijn produced the finest printing of the period and Ruckers built clavichords which were unequalled anywhere.

Following in the footsteps of their predecessors, Flemish musicians of the 16th century continued directing Europe's music, when Adriaan Willaert preparing the glory of the Venetian School at San Marco. Philippus de Monte directed the imperial orchestra in Vienna while Roland de Lassus, known as the "Prince of Music", resided at the Bavarian Court.

(Vlaanderen)



1.1. Assignment

Divide the class into groups of 4/5 students. Each student rephrases one /a few aspect(s) of the Flemish cultural landscape from the 7th to the 16th century.

The result: an outline of our artistic life in the Middle Ages.

2. The Flemish Primitives



Jan van Eyck, The betrothal of the Arnolfini

city of Tournai (located in the province of Hainault), an enclave of the French crown in the middle of Flemish-Burgundian territory that consequently enjoyed a very special status. Tournai was an important city in which the language of communication was French, in contrast to other cities in the region, Brussels included, where Dutch was spoken.

This realism should not be understood as “drawn from life”, but as **lifelike in the execution of the representation**. The human figure has physical warmth, objects and nature are particularized materially and presented in three-dimensional space. In Italy this sense of reality was seen as something extraordinary even at the time, as exemplified by a rare description dating from 1449 by the humanist Cyriac of Ancona of a *Descent from the Cross* by Rogier van der Weyden. Full of wonder, he described the ‘breathing faces, in contrast to the body which was like that of a real dead person’. The colourful garments, meadows, flowers and trees, the hills, the decorated doorways, gold, pearls and gems, seemed to be ‘created directly by nature rather than by human art’. In contrast to the art of Italy, **light** is the key to the appearance of things in northern art, not their geometric definition in space. Painting developed into a system based on transparent layers of paint, with oil as a binding agent; this technique gave the **colours a degree of saturation and depth such had never been seen before**. Reality was not coloured, but made to exude colour.

The representation was usually assembled in the workshop as the subject matter required. **Realism was not an objective in itself, but a means of more effectively shaping a new spirituality**. In this way the divine was

The fifteenth century was, in Western art, the century of the **triumph of reality**. Perhaps for the first time since classical antiquity, a new sense of realism had permeated all the various forms of expression. In Italy this trend was described very early on as *renaissance* (*rinascità*). In the Netherlands, for it is here that the art north of the Alps developed, the phenomenon was not really a rebirth, since historically speaking, it had no forerunner. Because of the relative lack of art-theoretical discourse in the north, a suitable name for the new trend in painting was never found. Nevertheless, it is possible to locate it accurately on the map: the evolution took place in the **area** that now largely corresponds to Flanders, though many artists were of Dutch origin. An adequate explanation has not yet been found as to why the evolution took place where it did, but the fact that painting reached such heights in the Southern Netherlands certainly had something to do with its central political and economical importance. We are concerned here with the art in the former county of Flanders (the present-day provinces of east and west Flanders), the duchy of Brabant (now the provinces of Brabant and Antwerp) and, finally, the

brought closer to humankind, so that the meditation passed via the real, and evangelistic events were projected into one's own familiar environment. This was recommended by the new religious practice known as the *Devotio Moderna*. I cannot help but wonder if it was not thanks to the new realism that the painting started to play an active role in the interaction between the human and the divine. It was not a renouncement of medieval transcendence, but rather a new form of religious experience. By the virtue of the way it was arranged, the real was also the clarification, the embodiment of the symbol.

In the **symbolism of the Middle Ages** nothing had an unequivocal meaning; everything could be applied or explained in several different ways. Indeed, the world of things contained manifold disguises for God's being (...). We have to look at the paintings of the fifteenth century in the same way. Like the reality they reproduce they contain a potential for the symbolism that cannot simply be deciphered like a code. They hold many associative possibilities which can be revealed by the attentive spectator by visual means. The greater the artist, the more ingenious this mechanism of expressive concealment. Erwin Panofsky called it 'disguised symbolism' because the phenomenon involves underlying meanings which the representation as such does not immediately evoke. (...)

The name '**Flemish Primitives**' originated in the nineteenth century, not as a pejorative epithet, but in reference to painters from the Low Countries who, lacking the canons established in the academic revival of the sixteenth century, practised a remarkable art of '**styleless**' *naïveté* in which technical skill was placed at the service of pure religiosity. In the eyes of many Romantics, therein lay the **beginning of modern art**. These days art historians prefer to speak of *Ars nova*, a northern parallel to the Italian renaissance, using a term applied to the new music being developed in the Netherlands at that time. In the fourteenth century, painting consolidated its position as an art and became a well-organised and exclusively profane profession. We know that much was painted on both panel and canvas. The rise of and innovation in painting in the fifteenth century was probably responsible for the disappearance of nearly all earlier, movable painting from places of worship: they were systematically replaced by the new pieces, so that it is next to impossible to form a picture of what was made before 1400. Judging from the surviving wall paintings of the time, however, it seems unlikely that panel painting in these parts possessed any of the traits characteristic of the art of Robert Campin or Jan van Eyck.

The fifteenth century saw the origin of painting as an independent universe, a depiction of ersatz nature. Until the fourteenth century there was the art of painting buildings and the art of painting books: **there were murals and there were miniatures**. The art of painting on panels seems to have had more in common with wall painting in terms of appearance and style. As regards structure or function they were opposites. Murals were an architecturally integrated monumental art which illustrated Christian teaching for the masses in church; structurally, however, they had a decorative, hieratic character. The fresco was more painting than picture. For book illumination it was the other way round. The aristocratic miniature was not essentially decorative but illustrative; it was first and foremost depiction, linked to the book by virtue of its presentation with and within the text. The church building is not erected so that its walls can be painted, whereas the book has no *raison d'être* without its visual and verbal contents. **Innovation therefore occurred in book miniatures**. Other factors are the small format which provides an intense view of illustrations and the window-like aspect of the miniature, which emphasizes the illusionary character of the illustration because of its clearly visible framework. The increasing autonomy of painting manifested itself in the movable "piece of wall furniture" that was created, a kind of flat show-box exerting visual magic.

The evolution coincided with a well-known **socio-economic shift**. The new class of people who elbowed their way in between the common folks and the aristocracy and the clergy, namely the **urban bourgeoisie**, gradually acquired importance and soon became the driving force in society, productive and progressive on both economic and artistic level. Though the now-rich bourgeoisie adopted aristocratic airs, their mentality and vision had scarcely changed. The naturalism may simply be called self-projection of this generally sober-minded middle class. The emergence of the painting as a movable work of art, which could be acquired, bought and sold was no less accidental. Paintings were cultural commodities with a private character, even though they still had a

definite religious function. It is indeed striking how few paintings were destined for the courts, which tended to favour tapestries, silverware and illuminated books. The demand for high-quality paintings on panel in the municipalities of the Southern Netherlands was responsible for the social continuation of painting as a profession. Unlike during the fourteenth century, when Paris was the artistic centre of northern Europe, the relationship between royal patronage and a high standard of painting was no longer self-evident.

In **fourteenth century Paris** the most gifted artists working for the court frequently hailed from the Netherlands. Their more vital attitude injected new life into traditional French miniature painting in a revolutionary way. Only in this internationally oriented court milieu were the conditions created in which the talent of these immigrants was allowed to develop to its fullest extent. In those Franco-Flemish miniature ateliers does one find a production which, by virtue of its nature and perfection, offers an explanation for the kind of panel painting found at the **court of Dijon** around the turn of the century and later in the cities of the Southern Netherlands. The artistic perfection and experience of these court artists, at a time when the artists' guilds in their own regions were expanding, probably made that immediate improvement in quality possible. Robert Campin and his important workshop, active in Tournai, form a subsequent link in this rapid evolution. **It was there that the century of the "Flemish Primitives" began, in a paradox of powerful monumentality and microscopic vision, no longer in a courtly context but in an urban one.**

De Vos, D., *The Flemish Primitives, the masterpieces*, Princeton University Press, 2002

Also:

Stokstad, M, *Art History, second edition volume 2*, New York, Prentice Hall, Inc and Harry N. Abrams, Inc, Publishers, 2002

Art of Flanders: p. 628-646

2.1. Assignments

1. Describe the origin of "Flemish primitive painting". (Think of: 14th century Paris court painters and miniaturists, Tournai and Robert Campin, new urban bourgeoisie)
2. What interpretation is given to the term "realism"? How is it achieved?
3. Explain the religious background of the Devotio Moderna.

3. Manuscript illumination

The earliest surviving illustrated manuscripts are from the period AD 400 to 600. The meaning of these works of art lies not only in their inherent art history value, but in the maintenance of a link of literacy. Had it not been for the (mostly monastic) scribes of late antiquity, the entire content of western heritage literature from Greece and Rome could have perished. The very existence of illuminated manuscripts as a way of giving stature and commemoration to ancient documents may have been largely responsible for their preservation in an era when barbarian hordes had overrun continental Europe.

The majority of illustrated manuscripts are from the Middle Ages, when monks embellished manuscript pages with delicate illuminations and bordered them with a red pigment called “*minium*” from which “*miniature*” later evolved. They were mostly of a religious nature and were produced for their own use in the monasteries, for presentation, or for a commission. From the 13th C onward an increasing number of secular texts, such as chronicles and works of literature, were illuminated. Commercial scriptoria grew up in large cities, particularly in Paris, in Italy and in the Netherlands, and by the late 14th C there was a significant industry producing manuscripts, including agents who would take commissions. The “international Gothic style” (with elegant and soft shapes, refined gestures and postures) became predominant.



A monk tasting wine from a barrel.



Book of hours, illuminations by Jan (de) Tavernier and Loyset Liédet.

Until the beginning of the 15th C France was a major artistic centre, but, from 1420 onwards the manuscript workshops of Oudenaarde, Bruges, Ghent, Brussels, Mons and Valenciennes prospered. Indeed, it was here that the art of miniature painting was most profoundly changed and this seems to have been mostly the work of the powerful guilds of Flemish painters. A more naturalistic style was adopted, tableaus and figures became more realistic, and the depiction of daily life more prominent. Besides religious texts, secular writings such as herbals (encyclopedias of plants), health manuals, and both ancient and contemporary works of history and literature were in great demand.

From the Gothic period onward, wealthy people began to build up personal libraries; Philip the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, is estimated to have had about 600 illuminated manuscripts. Philip the Good and his son, Charles the Bold, were also true collectors. The Burgundian patronage led to large-size manuscripts in majestic Burgundian bastard script. The old grisaille technique, which rejects polychromy, became a real craze in the Netherlands

Most illuminated manuscripts were created as codices, although many were rolls or single sheets. A very few manuscript fragments survive on papyrus, but most medieval manuscripts, illuminated or not, were written on parchment (most commonly calf, sheep or goat skin). However, manuscripts considered important enough to illuminate were written on the best quality parchment, called “vellum”. In the late Middle Ages, manuscripts began to be produced on paper. Many illuminated manuscripts from the Renaissance have also survived. By the end of the period many painters were women, perhaps particularly in Paris.

The Limbourg brothers

The most famous Netherlandish illuminators of the time were three brothers – Paul, Herman and Jean – commonly known as the Limbourg brothers. In the 15th century, people were known by their first names, often followed by a reference to their place of origin, parentage, or occupation. The name used by the three Limbourg brothers, for example, refers to their home region. Similarly, Jan Van Eyck means “Jan from (the town of) Eyck.”



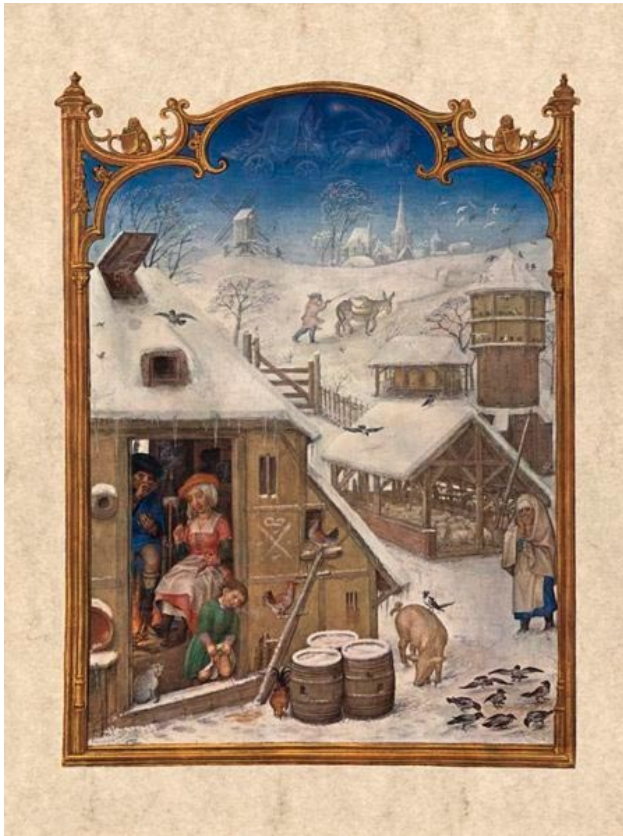
The Belles Heures of the Duke of Berry

The Limbourg brothers are first recorded as apprentice goldsmiths in Paris around 1390. About 1403 they entered the service of the duke of Berry, for whom they produced their major work, the so-called *Très Riches Heures* (*very sumptuous Hours*), between 1413 and 1416. For the calendar section of this Book of Hours – a selection of prayers and readings keyed to daily prayer and meditation – the Limbourgs created full-page paintings to introduce each month, with subjects including both peasant labors and aristocratic pleasures. Like most European artists of the time, the Limbourgs showed the laboring classes in a light acceptable to the aristocrats – that is happily working for their benefit. But the Limbourgs also showed peasants enjoying their own pleasures. Haymakers on the August page shed their clothes to take a swim in a stream, and September grape pickers pause to savor the sweet fruit they are gathering. In the February page, farm people relax cozily before a blazing fire. This farm looks comfortable and well-maintained, with timber-framed buildings, a row of beehives, a sheepfold, and tidy woven wattle fences. In the distance are a village and the church.

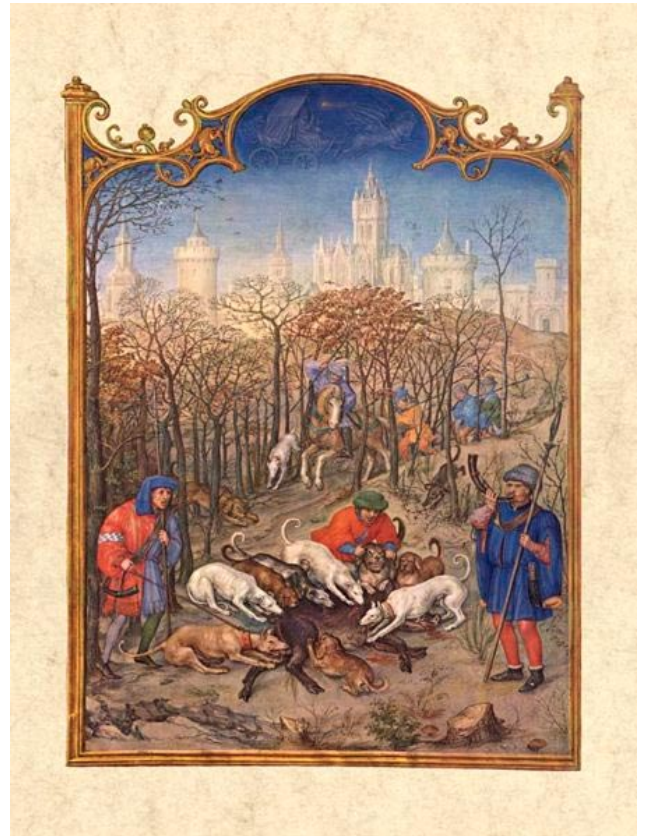
Most remarkably, the artists convey the feeling of cold winter: the breath of the bundled-up worker turning to steam as he blows on his hands, the leaden sky and bare trees, the snow covering the landscape, and the comforting smoke coming from the farmhouse chimney. The painting employs several international Gothic conventions: the high placement of the horizon line, the small size of the trees and buildings in relation to people, and the cutaway view of the house showing both interior and exterior. The muted palette is sparked with touches of yellowish orange, blue, and a patch of bright red on the man’s turban at the lower left. The landscape recedes continuously from foreground to middle ground to background. An elaborate calendar device, with the chariot of the sun and the zodiac symbols, fills the upper part of the page.

Classifications

Since illumination was a complex and frequently costly process, it was usually reserved for special books. Historians classify illuminated manuscripts into their historic periods (including Late Antique, Carolingian, Ottonian, Romanesque, Gothic and Renaissance manuscripts) and types. Whereas in the first millennium Gospel books were most likely to be illuminated, the Romanesque period saw the creation of many huge illuminated complete (Altar) Bibles. Many psalters were also heavily illuminated in both this and the Gothic period. Finally, the books of hours, very commonly the personal devotional book of a wealthy lay person, were often richly illuminated in the Gothic period. Other books, both liturgical and not, continued to be illuminated at all periods: hagiographies, Apocalypse manuscripts, breviaries, bestiaries and aviaries, etc.



February, from *Breviarium Grimani*, by Simon Bening.



December, from *Breviarium Grimani*.

Ornaments

The ornaments which covered manuscripts were called “*eluminures*”, illuminations or miniatures. Despite its limitations, the art of illumination is one of the most charming ever invented; it exacts the same qualifications and produced almost as powerful effects as painting. The ornaments could take several forms :

- initials of chapters or paragraphs
- paintings on the margin
- borders around the text
- full-page paintings or paintings covering a part of the page
- rolls of parchment wholly covered with paintings

Adapted from :

- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Illumination>
- <http://www.newadvent.org>

Adapted and translated from :

Geschiedenis van de Schilderkunst in België, van de 14de eeuw tot vandaag (inleiding door Philippe Roberts-Jones)
Stokstad, op. cit.

Tips :

- <http://users.telenet.be/joosdr/eeuwhandschriftmini.htm>
(een artikel uit De Morgen, Bart Makken, 17 januari 2004)
- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Miniature>



From the Brussels Book of Hours



The Original Sin, from a book of hours,
by Willem Vrelant



Jesus bearing the Cross,
by Jacquemart de Hesdin

3.1. Vocabulary

Find the words from the text.

1. _____ (in Dutch: brevier)
a book containing the hymns, offices, and prayers for the canonical hours (to be said each day by priests).
2. _____ (getijdenboek)
an (abbreviated) breviary containing various prayers, meditations (and psalms) appropriate to seasons, months, days of the week and hours of the day. Often composed for lay people.
3. _____ (codex)
a manuscript book, produced from Late Antiquity through the Middle Ages.
4. _____ (kroniek)
a historical account of facts and events in chronological order. They are often divided into “dead” ... and “live” ...
5. _____ (evangelieboek)
a book containing (one of) the four canonical gospels of Matthew, Mark, Luke and John.
6. _____ (psalmboek)
a book containing the Book of Psalms or a collection of psalms for liturgical use.
7. _____ (heiligenleven)
an idealizing biography of a saint.
8. _____ (bestiarium)
a book (especially of the Middle Ages in Europe) with (physical and allegorical) information on real or imaginary animals, intended to teach moral lessons or to amuse.
9. _____ (aviarium)
the same as 8/ but now with birds.
10. _____ (Openbaring-manuscript)
a manuscript that contains the text of the Book of Revelations (and commentaries).

11. _____ (schilderij in grijze tinten)
a style of monochromatic painting in shades of grey, used especially for the representation of relief sculpture (or a painting or design in this style).
12. _____ (kopiïst)
a (professional) copyist of manuscripts and documents.
13. _____ / _____ (handschriftverluchter)
somebody who decorates manuscripts and makes them more beautiful.
14. _____ / _____ (miniatuurschilder)
a kind of synonym for 13./, but more specific somebody who paints miniatures.
15. _____ / _____ (scriptorium)
a writing room (in- or outside a monastery) for the copying of manuscripts.
16. _____ (boordkantlijversiering)
a decoration running around or along the edge of something (in this case, a sheet of parchment or paper).
17. _____ (perkament)
a writing material made from the skin of a sheep or a goat.
18. _____ (kalfsperkament)
high-quality parchment, made from unsplit calfskin
19. _____
worldly rather than religious or spiritual
20. to i _____ /to i _____ /to e _____ /to o _____
to decorate , to make beautiful (a manuscript)
21. to p _____
to be fortunate or successful, to thrive.
22. to p _____
to be destroyed; to disappear gradually.

3.2. Vocabulary tip

The word “barbarian” is **onomatopoeic**, the *bar-bar* representing the impression of random hubbub produced by hearing a spoken language that one cannot understand, similar to “blah blah” or “babble”. Find more onomatopoeic words (sounds of animals, in pop culture, etc ...)

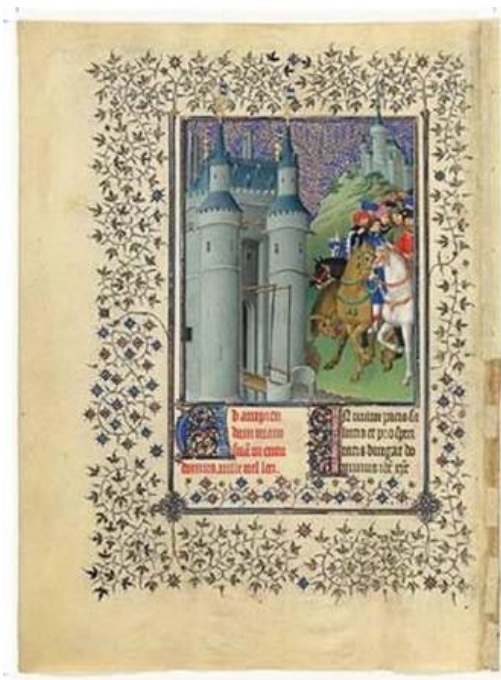
3.3. Reading (and film) tip

Read Umberto Eco’s novel “*The Name of the Rose*” and/or see the Jean-Jacques Annaud film of the same name (pun!). (monastic life; church portals; scriptorium; miniature art; heretics; the Inquisition; etc)



3.4. Assignments

1. In illuminated manuscripts two kinds of **initials** (from the Latin word *initialis*) are used, “historiated” initials and “inhabited” initials. Explain.
2. Before the metal dip pen, the fountain pen, and eventually the ball point pen, **quill pens** and **reed pens** were used. Find more information on these instruments for writing.
3. The **script** depended on local customs and tastes. The sturdy Roman letters of the Early Middle Ages gradually gave way to scripts such as Unical and half-Unical. Stocky, richly textured blackletter was particularly popular in the later Middle Ages. The Burgundians preferred the bastard script. Find more information on these and other forms of script
4. The medieval artist’s palette was surprisingly broad. What **colours** did he use and how did he acquire them?
5. How did the **scribe** and **illustrator** go about their job?



6. The **book of hours** is the most common type of surviving medieval illuminated manuscript and perhaps the most beautiful of all is the “*Very Rich Hours of the Duke of Berry*” (“*Très Riches Heures du Duc de Berry*”) by the **Limbourg brothers**. Find more information on the books of hours in general and/or this one in particular.
7. Another famous book of hours is the “*Turin-Milan Book of Hours*” which may contain the only illuminated work by **Jan van Eyck**. Find more information.
8. The “*Tavernier Book of Hours*” contains 27 large miniatures by **Jan Tavernier** (Jean le Tavernier), an artist from the Burgundian Netherlands, who worked in Tournai, Ghent and Oudenaarde. This artist also painted the grisaille miniatures in the “*Chronicles and Conquests of Charlemagne*” (“*Chroniques et Conquêtes de Charlemagne*”). Find more information and pictures.
9. The illuminator **Loyset Liédet** (a.o. “*L’Histoire de Charles Martel*”) spent most of his career working for the powerful Dukes of Burgundy, Philip the Good and his son Charles the Bold. Born in France, he later moved to Bruges where he became a member of the stationers’ guild in 1469. Find more information.
10. Another miniaturist was **Willem Vrelant**, who was born in Utrecht and settled in Bruges in the second half of the 15th C. He illuminated many books of hours and the second volume of the famous “*Chroniques de Hainaut*”.
11. Well-known miniature painters from the 12th C were **Godevan** (the Bible of Stavelot, the Bible of Lobbes, and a book called “*Flavius Josephus*”) and the monk **Hendrik** (the Bible of Bonne-Espérance). Also dating back to the 12th C are the Bible of Floeffe, the Gospel of Averbode and the Dialogues of St Gregorius. Find pictures and more information.



A crane in Bruges, Simon Bening

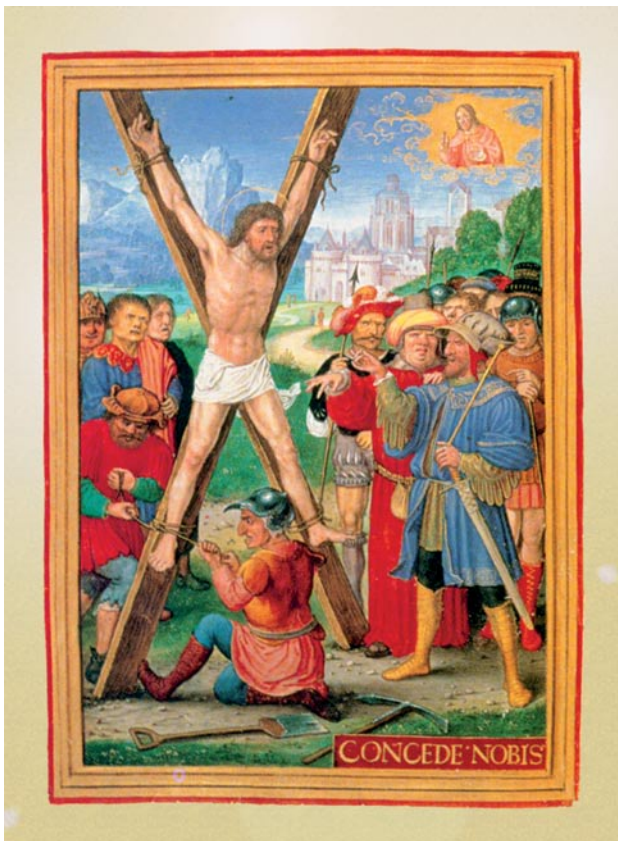


The Annunciation, Simon Bening or Gerard David



The Holy Virgin, by Gerard David or Gerard David

12. From the middle of the 15th C onward, the art of illuminating was concentrated in the Flemish cities and the refined Gothic style was slowly replaced by a more naturalistic style with more authentic portraits of people. This aspiration for more realistic pictures can be seen in the work of miniature artists like **Alexander** and (his son) **Simon Bening** (*"Brevarium Grimani"*), **Gérard Horenbout** (*"Brevarium Grimani"*; the *"Sforza Book of Hours"*) and the **Master of Maria of Burgundy**. Find pictures to illustrate this.

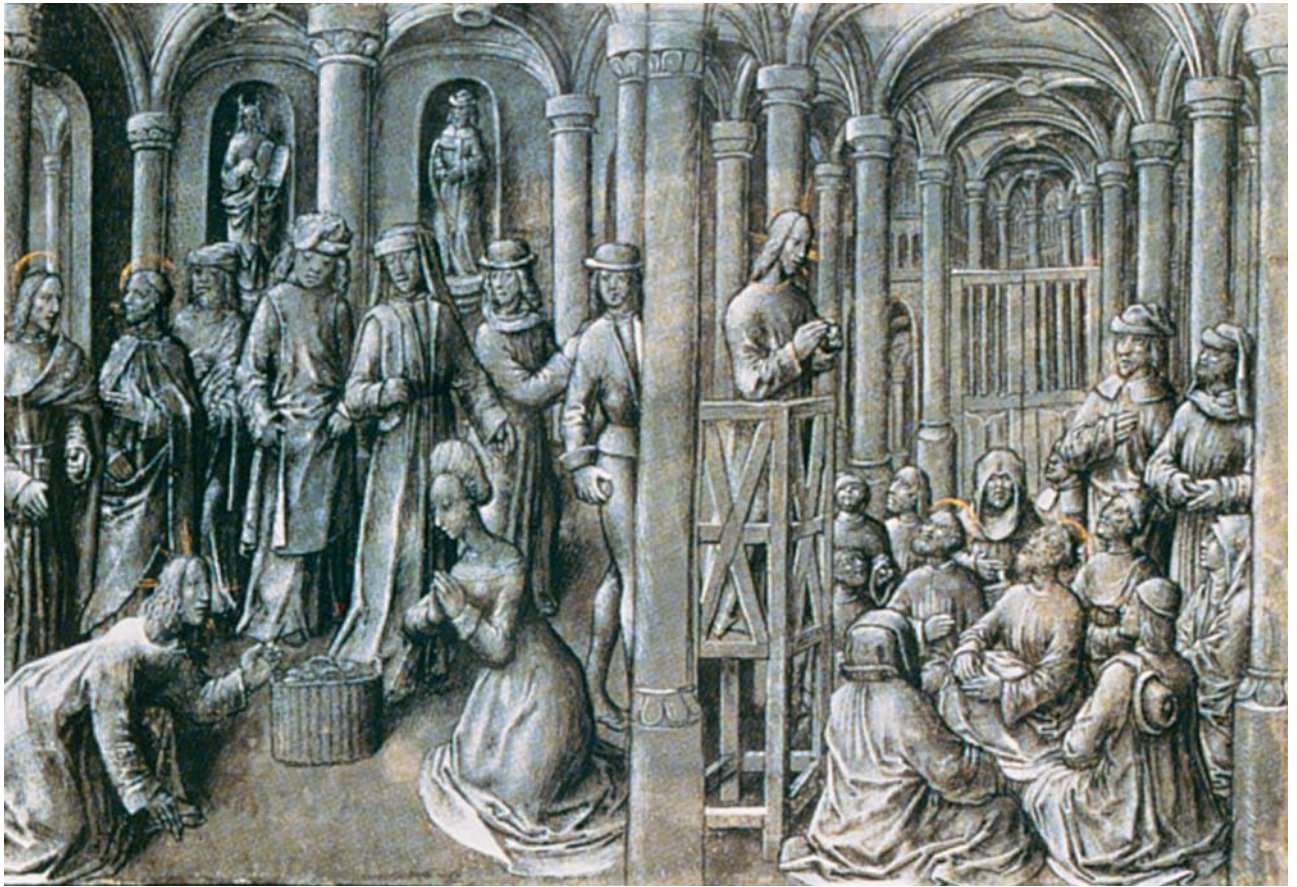


Martyr's Death of St Andrew, by Gérard Horenbout.



Virgin with Child in a Church, by the Master of Maria of Burgundy

13. Gerard Horenbout's son, **Lucas Horenbout**, moved to England in the mid-1520s and worked there as "King's Painter" and court miniaturist to King Henry VIII from 1525 until his death. Find more information and pictures.



Life of Our Lord Jesus Christ, by Alexander Bening.

14. The careful treatment of detail applies especially to the miniatures executed in **grisaille**, in which the absence of colour invited an even stronger accentuation of details. This is perhaps most observable in the grisaille miniatures of northern Flanders. Find more pictures to prove this.

More tips:

- *'Illuminating the Renaissance: the Triumph of Flemish manuscript painting in Europe'*, at the J. Paul Getty Museum, Los Angeles, and The Royal Academy, London.
Apollo, Dec, 2004 by Christopher de Hamel
"Seen by 142,000 people in Los Angeles and 80,235 in London, it was perhaps the most unlikely blockbuster imaginable: an array of illuminated manuscripts from late medieval Flanders. Yet it caught the popular imagination for very good reasons ..."
Go to http://findarticles.com/p/articles/mi_mOPAL/is_514_160/ai_n8585496 and find out why.
- Google the terms "(Flemish) illuminated manuscripts", "miniatures" ... and learn more about this specialty of the Low Countries.

4. Altars , altarpieces and retables

The altar in the Christian church symbolizes both the table of Jesus' Last Supper and the tombs of Christ and the saints. The altar, whether on leglike support or a block of stone, has named parts: the top surface is the *mensa*, and the support is the *stipes*. The front surface of a block altar is the *antependium*. Relics of the church's patron saint may be placed in a reliquary on the altar, beneath the floor on which the altar rests, or even within the altar itself.

Altarpieces are painted or carved constructions placed at the back of the *mensa* or behind the altar in a way that makes altar and altarpiece appear to be visually joined. Their original purpose was to identify the saint or the mystery to which the altar was dedicated. Over time, the altarpiece evolved from a low panel to a large and elaborate architectonic structure filled with images and protected by movable wings that function like shutters. An altarpiece may have a firm base, called the *predella* decorated with images. A winged altarpiece can be a *diptych* in which two panels are hinged in the middle; a *triptych* in which two wings fold over the centre section; or a *polyptych*, in which sets of wings can be opened and closed in different arrangements according to specific liturgical uses through the church year. Wings bear images, usually painted, on both sides. The wings and centre section are sometimes decorated with sculpture.

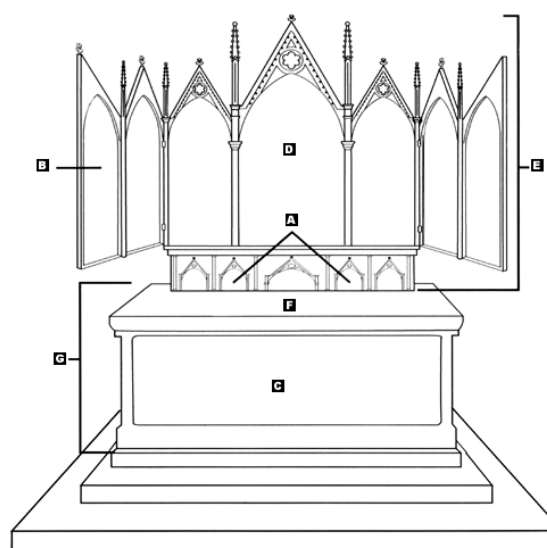
Countless wooden altarpieces were produced in the latter half of the 15th century, mostly in Brussels. These crowded, clear-cut and richly decorated works (often including genre elements) were designed to be appreciated in detail and in their expressive and dramatic nature show the continuing influence of Rogier van der Weyden. The most impressive examples include the Claudio de Villa retable (Brussels), the altar of St Leonard (Zoutleeuw) and the altarpiece of the Passion (Geel).

At the end of the century, the leading master in Brussels was Jan Borreman the Elder, whose St George retable of 1493 is a work of superb technique. It is particularly admired for the naturalistic elegance of its figures, its calm and clear composition and the perfection of detail. The craftsmanship in Antwerp was equally excellent, being marked by a tendency towards vivid characterisation and anecdotal detail. (Stokstad, op. cit.)

4.1. Assignments

1. Give the correct names. Choose from
Movable wing - predella - stationary centre section - altarpiece - mensa - altar - antependium

- A =
- B =
- C =
- D =
- E =
- F =
- G =



2. Find more on wooden Flemish altarpieces of the 15th and 16th centuries.

5. Altarpiece of the last Supper (Dieric Bouts 1464-1467/68)



This painting is one of the few works for which we have the contract with the artist, dated 1464, and the receipt of payment, written in his own hand (though destroyed in the First World War).

It stipulates the subject and the price, 200 Rhineland guilders – at that time the equivalent of 1,000 days' wages for a master bricklayer, materials included. Dieric Bouts spent approximately four years working on the painting, a very interesting detail because, according to the contract, he was not allowed to work on another project during that period.

The work was commissioned by the Confraternity of the Holy Sacrament in St Peter's church in Leuven and was intended for the altar of one of their chapels, the second radiating chapel in the ambulatory on the north side to the Erasmus chapel, which was granted them by the chapter when the confraternity was founded in 1432. Just opposite the altar stood (and indeed still stands) a tabernacle

in which the host was kept, which was installed in the early 1950s. The altarpiece was to be a "costly historical painting, treating the subject of the Holy Sacrament" with *The last Supper* as its main theme and four scenes or "figures from the Old Testament" on the wings. When closed each panel was to have featured additional scenes, none of which has survived (...)

The painter was assisted in his work by two theologians as is apparent in the way the Last Supper has been portrayed. According to the synoptic Gospels, the eve of Jesus' arrest was on Passover, the Jewish feast of unleavened bread at which a sacrificial lamb was slaughtered and consumed. Jesus brought his disciples together around the table to bless the bread and the wine for them which he called his body and blood. This historical moment at which the sacrament of the Eucharist is established is depicted as the liturgy of transubstantiation later adopted by the Church. What is new in this depiction is that Christ himself, in the role of a modern priest, presents the liturgy of the consecration of the host; in this way, the continuity of its existence throughout human history is graphically emphasized. This stands in stark contrast to the more customary representation of the breaking of bread and the communion of the apostles, or of Judas' betrayal.

The meal has taken place in a patrician dwelling, which should be seen more as a cloister refectory than as a dining-room in a large house. On the ornamental arch of the doorway leading into a corridor is an image of Moses, the prefiguration of Christ. Christ sits in the middle of the large room and faces us head-on, while the hand with which he performs the blessing corresponds to the exact centre of the painting. He looks at the spectator while he pronounces with half-open mouth the words "this is my body". His face is the *Vera Effigies*, the portrait of the true likeness of Christ, the Holy Countenance as it was depicted in bust form in the fifteenth century. This idealized portrait conforms to the medieval representation of Christ as laid down in the detailed description in the apocryphal Roman letter of Lentulus.

We recognize some of the apostles sitting round the table. On Jesus' right is Peter; on his left, John, and next to him James the Lesser. As half-brother of Jesus, there is some resemblance. Most of the apostles are in a state of surprised rapture at the unexpected institution of the ritual. Those sitting closest to Christ express their intense adoration for the consecration of the host. The moment was more important than the communion, and was performed only by the priest. The spiritual assimilation of the sacrificed body, the Eucharist, filled people with the mercy that would lead them to eternal bliss. James looks at Judas with pity; the latter holds himself aloof, recognizable by his distinctly Jewish profile, which painters always liked to emphasize. He is looking at the pewter plate, which still contains the blood and the cooking juices of the carved lamb along with a few pieces of bread. It is an allusion to the bloodshed of Christ which comes about as a result of his betrayal; it also refers to

a remark Christ has just made regarding the traitor in their midst. Christ had said: "It is the one to whom I give this piece of bread when I have dipped it in the dish". Though they have partaken of the lamb, the tablecloth and the long communal napkins are still clean, for the table is intended to symbolize an altar. A moment or two later Christ, as priest, will pour the wine out of the crystal jug into the chalice and pass it around as his blood. This imperceptible switch from anecdotal reality to sacral symbolism is typical for Bouts, and proceeds from the same spirit as the new, realistic perception embodied in the exhortations of the *Devotio Moderna*.

In this scene Dieric Bouts is the first artist to use a systematic one-point perspective with a precise and proper course of diagonals in the tiles on the floor, a new geometrical technique for depicting the correct reduction in the size of bands of equal width as they recede into the distance. The vanishing point is high, in the middle of the lintel above the fireplace. This provides an aerial view of the table, but one also has the feeling the room itself is located at a certain height – perhaps an allusion to the "large upper room" referred to in the Gospels.

The almost square shape of the table is probably evidence of the guiding hand of the theologians as can be seen in the Church of St John Lateran, where it is kept as a relic. The theologians also specified the themes of the side panels, which depict the Old Testament prefigurations of the Eucharist. Those prefigurations were frequently illustrated with prints for the benefit of the uneducated worshipper. The most popular such book was the *Biblia Pauperum*, the poor man's bible, in which illustrations from the New Testament were depicted between the prefigurations from the Old. In an illustrated edition of another devotional text, the *Speculum Humanitae*, *The Last Supper* is followed by three prototypes, the *Gathering of Manna*, the *Passover*, and the *Meeting of Abraham and Melchizedek*. These three prefigurations were chosen for the altarpiece, supplemented by a fourth, the rarely depicted *Elijah in the Desert*. The collective name for all these scenes together is the fortifying bread. Melchizedek is the prefiguration of Christ, and the lamb signifies his future sacrifice, which opens the gates to the promised land or paradise.

This work is a high point in an oeuvre imbued with sacred solemnity, restrained pathos and contemplative power.

5.1. Assignments

1. Explain the way modern theology influenced the painter and his subject.
2. What prefigurations can you find in the painting.
3. Hugo van der Goes' *Portinari Altarpiece* (Uffizi, Florence) is perhaps the single most studied Flemish painting of the later fifteenth century. Introduce the artist and make a presentation about this masterpiece.
4. Altarpieces figure prominently in churches and cathedrals. Describe one (wooden or painted).

http://www.rijksmuseum.nl/aria/aria_encyclopedia/00048862?lang=en (zeer goede site)

<http://www.wga.hu/tours/flemish/index.html>

<http://www.nga.gov/collection/gallery/gg40/gg40-main1.html>

6. Relics, Reliquaries and Shrines

Christian belief in the power of **relics**, the physical remains of a holy person or of a holy site, is as old as the faith itself and developed alongside it. It started early in connection with the remains of martyrs. After St Ignatius was devoured by lions in 107, only the larger bones remaining, these were carried to his native city of Antioch and kept "as an inestimable treasure left to the Church by the grace which was in the martyr". Relics were more than mementos. The New Testament refers to the healing power of objects that were touched by Christ or his apostles. The body of a saint provided a spiritual link between life and death, between man and God.



Reliquary of St Ursula



Reliquary of St Vincent Madelgar, Soignies (Zinnik)

Belief in the efficacy of such relics led to the division of remains among many churches and believers. Until the 10th C the body of a saint had to be preserved entirely intact and it was forbidden to present body parts (except such things as hair, teeth and finger and toe nails) as relics. However, the growing need for them led to the idea that a holy person was present in each part of his body, even in a tiny splinter of a bone. Soon things were getting out of hand and theft, trade, and deception were added to the cult (e.g. the bodies of St Francis and St Elizabeth). St Augustine (354 – 430) complained how persons, disguised as monks, wandered about selling relics of the martyrs and other fake amulets. And, although Alcuin, the ecclesiastical adviser of Charlemagne, said that it was better to copy the example of the saints than to treasure their bones, the cult continued with vigour throughout the Middle Ages. Fuelled by the Christian belief in the afterlife and resurrection, in the power of the soul, and in the role of the saints as advocates for humankind in heaven, the veneration of relics came to rival the sacraments in the daily life of the medieval church.

The most common relics were associated with the apostles and those local saints who worked miracles. All relics bestowed honour and privileges upon the possessor, and monasteries and cathedrals sought to hold the most prestigious. Some were even stolen from one church, only to find a new home in another. Very soon all kinds of objects became relics : ribs, shoes, hands, fingers and heads of the saints; the ears of Balaam's ass; the lung of the cock that called Peter to repentance; etc. However, the holiest of relics were those associated with Christ and his mother. Because of the belief in the resurrection of Christ and the bodily assumption of the Virgin into heaven, physical relics of Christ and his mother were – with a few rare exceptions like the baby teeth of Jesus or the Virgin's milk – usually objects that they had touched in their lifetime. Thus, relics of the True Cross or pieces of Mary's veil became very popular from the 9th C onwards. Since it was believed that spiritual value could be transmitted through the relics of a person who in life was blessed with miraculous powers, pilgrims travelled far and wide to see or touch them. Accordingly, relics had an economic as well as religious importance since important pieces would attract numerous pilgrims. In 1236 Emperor Frederik II (who had been excommunicated) went to Marburg to visit the grave of St Elizabeth and took the body from the grave ('translatio') in order to demonstrate his independence from the Church (addressing the saint as intermediary of God).

Since relics were considered “more valuable than precious stones and more to be esteemed than gold” , they were enshrined in **reliquaries**. Many of these receptacles were designed with portability in mind, often being exhibited in public or carried in procession on the saint’s feast day or on other holy days. They could range in size from simple, small boxes or caskets to coffin-like containers to very large, ornate and magnificent reliquaries, crafted or covered by gold, silver, ivory, gems and enamel. From about the end of the 10th C they were sometimes designed in shapes that reflected the nature of their contents. For example, Pope Alexander I’s skull was housed in a head-shaped reliquary (cf. the silver bust of Charlemagne, containing his skull under the crown, at Aachen Cathedral). Similarly, the bones of saints were often housed in reliquaries that recalled the shape of the original body part, such as an arm or a foot.

Reliquaries were often covered with narrative scenes from the life of the saint whose remains were held within. They were provided with a lock to prevent theft, but also to prevent the contents from coming out and performing miracles at unreasonable times. They were also fashioned into full-body statues. Set on an altar and carried in procession, they must have made an indelible impression on the faithful. In the 11th C Bernard of Angers wrote: “It is not an impure idol that receives the worship of an oracle or of sacrifice. It is a pious memorial, before which the faithful heart feels more easily and more strongly touched by solemnity, and implores more fervently the powerful intercession of the saint for its sins”. During the Late Middle Ages, the ‘monstrance’ was introduced, as were reliquaries in the form of jewellery, housing tiny relics such as pieces of the Holy Thorn.

It should also be remembered that great medieval buildings were often erected to house these reliquaries, and so, were regarded by extension as reliquaries or shrines themselves

Adapted from :

- <http://www.answers.com>
- http://www.metmuseum.org/toah/hd/relc/hd_relc.htm
- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Reliquary>

Reading Tips :

- a. Ellis Peters, ‘*A Morbid Taste for Bones*’, a medieval who-dunnit, starring Brother Cadfael.
- b. In ‘*Pignora Sanctorum*’ (*Relics of the Saints*), Guibert Nogent wrote about the almost incredible stories of deception and theft of relics.
- c. Koeck, P., *Heilige Huisjes*, Antwerpen: N.V. Scriptoria, 1981.

6.1. Comprehension

1. Why were relics so important to people? How did they hope to benefit from them?
2. Were the bodies of saints and martyrs always kept intact?
3. Relics also had an economic importance. Explain.
4. Explain: ‘translatio’
5. How were reliquaries designed? What did they look like? What materials were used?
6. Is a reliquary/shrine always small?



6.2. Assignments

1. Find good definitions for these three words, making clear the difference in meaning (if there is one): relic – reliquary – (relic) shrine
2. The cult of relics, which may also be linked to the medieval fascination with death, was an important aspect of Romanesque churches. Find more information, e.g. in the interesting book *Romaanse Kunst*, composed by Rolf Toman or on the internet, <http://www.newadvent.org/> (the Catholic Encyclopedia).



Reliquary of the Holy Blood



Reliquary of the Cross, Floreffe

3. Here are some of the most famous reliquaries of Christianity, linked to Christ. What are they? Where can they be found? Find more information (e.g. on the internet, <http://nl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Relikwie> and <http://www.newadvent.org/>)
 - the Holy Blood of Christ
 - the Holy Lance/Spear or the Lance/Spear of Longinus
 - the Shroud of T
 - the Sudarium of O
 - the Image of E
 - the Holy Grail
 - the Holy Coat of T and of A
 - the reliquary of the Crown of Thorns, which may have belonged to Mary, Queen of Scots, at the Cathedral Treasury of St Bavo's Cathedral, Ghent)

4. Other famous relics were the bones of saints, martyrs and other holy persons. Where can we find the reliquaries/shrines/churches of :
 - the apostles Peter and Paul
 - the apostle Jacob/St James
 - the Holy Bernadette Soubirous
 - the Magi (or Three Kings)
 - St Nicholas
 - St John the Baptist
 - St Francis of Assisi
 - etc.
5. The Roman Catholic Church classified relics into three classes. Find more information (e.g. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Relics> and <http://www.newadvent.org/>)
6. One of the receptacles designed for the exhibition of objects of piety was the Monstrance or Ostensorium (from "*ostendere*", "to show"). Find more information.
7. The Mezquita of Córdoba was long regarded as not only the largest Islamic shrine in the world but also as one of the holiest sites to be visited by Muslim pilgrims. The mosque contained an original copy of the Koran and a foot bone of Mohammed. Find more information on this building and on other holy places of Islam.

7. Sculpture

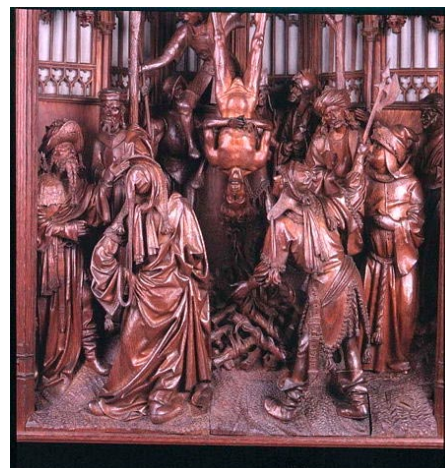
There is not much **Romanesque** sculpture in Belgium. Some of the finest surviving works are the Mosan ivories dating from the 10th and 11th C (e.g. in the Musée du Cinquantenaire (Jubilee Museum) in Brussels). Excellent “champlevé enamel” was produced in the Meuse region in the 12th C, e.g. by Godefroy de Huy, who used it for most of his work, in particular his reliquary of Pope Alexander. Mosan art also produced high quality metalwork, including the wonderful bronze font at St Barthélemy (St Bartholomew’s Church) in Liège by Renier de Huy (Renier van Hoesi). Another beautiful baptismal font may be seen at the St Laurence Church in Zedelgem. Besides goldsmithing, and melting and beating copper, Mosan art also produced superb woodcarvings such as the Tongeren Christ, the famous “Sedes Sapientiae” and simple but eloquent wooden crucifixes. The Mosan style led to the mysterious iconography of the ancient portals of Ste Gertrude at Nivelles and the lovely *Virgin of Dom Rupert*, originally from the Abbey of St Laurent, Liège.



Virgin of Dom Rupert



Baptismal font, Renier van Hoesi



Saint George retable, Jan Borremans

The Belgian **Gothic** style exhibits great originality, particularly in the decoration of interiors (and exteriors) of ecclesiastical or civic buildings. The woodwork (altarpieces, statues, choir stalls, beams) is as remarkable as the stonecarving, as illustrated by the flamboyant rood screens in Lier, Walcourt and Tessenderloo. The altarpiece at Hakendover and the St George (St Joris) retable (by Jan Borremans the Elder) are magnificent, and the same picturesque quality marks the carving on choir stalls. The armrests and misericords in Brabant churches are decorated with satirical figures full of imagination, unforgiving illustrations of human vices. Those in Diest are among the most remarkable.

The two outstanding Mosan sculptors of the end of the 14th C were Jean Pepin de Huy and Jean de Liège, who both worked mostly for French courts. The most skilled Mosan goldsmith of the 14th C was Hugo d’Oignies, many of whose exquisite works are displayed in the treasury of the convent of Notre-Dame at Namur. During the late Gothic period the revolutionary work of the Dutch sculptor Claus Sluter had a deep impact on Flemish sculpture. Echoes of his vivid individual figures can be seen in the eight prophets from Brussels Town Hall (now in the Musée Communal). Further relics from this exquisite period are the restrained and beautiful effigy of Isabella of Bourbon (now in Antwerp Cathedral) and the bronze effigy of Mary of Burgundy on her mausoleum in the Church of Our Lady in Bruges.

Although much 14th and 15th C sculpture was destroyed during the Iconoclasm, it is beyond dispute that northern French and Flemish sculptors had an international influence and the sculpture of this period was once held in the same esteem as Flemish painting.

During the **Renaissance** mass production of wooden altarpieces reached its apogee at the beginning of the 16th C (e.g. the Auderghem altar, the Lamentation altar from Averbode, now in the Vleeshuis in Antwerp, the St Dymphna altarpiece in the church at Geel, etc). After the Burgundian lands were absorbed by Charles V’s empire, the new artists became increasingly preoccupied with Italy. This attitude is reflected in the presence of

Michelangelo's Madonna and Child in the Church of Our Lady in Bruges. An important Italianist was Jacques du Broeucq, who decorated the church of St Waudru in Mons, where a number of his reliefs and alabaster statues have been preserved. The most influential sculptor was Cornelis Floris II de Vriendt, the architect of the town hall in Antwerp. His most exuberant work is the tabernacle of St Leonardus in Zoutleeuw. The works of Jérôme Duquesnoy the Elder, renowned for his Manneken Pis, bear a resemblance to those of Cornelis Floris, especially the Aalst tabernacle. He was the court sculptor of the Archdukes Albert and Isabella. Another artist from this period was Lancelot Blondeel.



During the **Baroque** the early 17th C was a period of relative peace after the Wars of Religion and Independence. Since the iconoclasts had destroyed the interiors of many churches, new furnishings (confessionals, pulpits, communion rails, etc) were required to adorn the churches, and to inspire the faithful and convince them once again of the value of the Catholic Religion. Spain was represented by the Archdukes Albert and Isabella, whose sumptuous court was in Brussels. These Catholic sovereigns had many ecclesiastical buildings constructed. Many churches dating from this period have interiors decorated with sculptures by Artus Quellin the Elder, who was strongly influenced by Rubens, or by his nephew, Artus Quellin the Younger. Other Baroque artists were Lucas Faydherbe, who mainly worked in Mechelen (see picture on the left, from the monumental tomb of Archbishop Cruesen) and the Liège sculptor Jean del Cour, well-known for his elegant effigies of Madonnas and saints. His most famous work is the *Fontaine de la Vierge* in Liège. The most influential figure, however, was François Duquesnoy (the son of Jérôme Duquesnoy the Elder), who worked mainly in Rome. He was famous for his cherubs or putti, graceful figurines made of marble, terracotta or ivory. He is also credited, together with his brother Jérôme Duquesnoy the Younger, with producing numerous ivory crucifixes notable for their delicacy and the elegance of their craftsmanship. Antwerp artist Hendrik Frans Verbruggen produced a prototype of the pulpits known in Belgium as 'chaires de vérité' (truth pulpits), featuring the expulsion of Adam and Eve from Paradise (e.g. in St Michael's Church in Brussels).

Although Baroque sculpture was still very much in evidence in churches in the 18th C, by the end of this century the **Rococo** and **Neo-Classical** style had begun to spread. Laurent Delvaux made the elegant pulpit in oak and marble in St Bavo's Cathedral in Ghent. Theodoor Verhaeghen made several pulpits (e.g. in Our Lady of Hanswijk Church in Mechelen) and a splendid confessional with majestic figures carved in wood in Ninove. Michiel van der Voort the Elder also produced pulpits and confessionals decorated with statues, such as the ones in St Carolus Boromeus Church in Antwerp. Delvaux's pupil, Gilles Lambert Godecharle, carved the pediment of the Palais de la Nation in Brussels (the one you can see today is a copy, less subtle than the original).

In the **19th and 20th C** sculpture was influenced by two French artists, working in Brussels: François Rude, who lived in exile in Brussels, and later, Auguste Rodin, who worked on the decoration of the Stock Exchange. The 19th C quest for national identity led cities to put up statues of historical figures from the past. One of the most impressive of these patriotic works is Eugène Simonis' equestrian statue of Godfrey of Bouillon on the Place Royal in Brussels. The semicircle of ten historical figures in the Parc du Petit Sablon is another appealing example of this romantic tendency. Thomas Vinçotte was highly acclaimed for his *Belgium between Agriculture and Industry* on the pediment of the Royal Palace, and for the horses of the quadriga on top of the triumphal arch of the Palais du Cinquantenaire (Jubilee Palace).

The Botanical Gardens in Brussels include works by most of the important Belgian sculptors of the 19th C, including the sculptor and painter Constantin Meunier, whose romantic sculptures of heroic workers struck a chord in industrialised Europe. Much of his work was based on the Borinage mining district, near Mons, where the deplorable conditions also shocked Van Gogh.



St Bartholemew, J. Du Broeucq



Well of Moses (Dijon), Claus Sluter

Here are just a few other names from this period :

- The exuberant nude figures of Jef Lambeaux often proved too sensual for late 19th C tastes. His large relief of the *Human Passions* remains locked up in a Neo-classical pavilion (in the Parc du Cinquanteaire) designed by Victor Horta. His exceptional talent can be judged from the Brabo fountain in Antwerp.



Abundance, Jef Lambeaux



Everard 'T Serclaes, Julien Dillens

- The Flemish sculptor Juliaan (Julien) Dillens created works that are Symbolist or even Art Nouveau in style. His affinity with Art Nouveau was strengthened by his use of ivory imported from the Belgian Congo. His *Homage to Everard 'T Serclaes* on the Grand Place is probably the most photographed sculpture in Belgium.
- Another Flemish sculptor, Jules Lagae, is best known for his *Expiation* in the Ghent Fine Arts Museum, in which he captures the pathos of struggling prisoners and for his statue of Albrecht Rodenbach. He co-operated with Thomas Vinçotte on the quadriga of the Palais du Cinquanteaire.
- Victor Rousseau produced small figures in bronze and marble based on classical forms.
- Illustrator and sculptor George Minne is best known for his elongated kneeling boys on a fountain opposite Ghent Cathedral.

- The painter Rik Wouters began his career as a sculptor (*Het Zotte Geweld*).

Adapted from :

Blyth, D., *Belgium*, 9th edition. London: A&C Black, 2000 (Blue Guide)

Belgium, Grand Duchy of Luxembourg, 2004 (Green Guide)

Inspired by :

Waegeman, T., D. Vandeweerdt, *Culturele Geschiedenis van Vlaanderen. Kunstgeschiedenis* (deel 6), Deurne/Ommen: Uitgeverij Baert pvba, 1983

De Geest, J., *Het Belgisch Kunstboek*, Lannoo

Gijpen, L., L. Vermeiren, *Vlaanderen mijn land*, derde druk. Antwerpen-Utrecht: Standaard Uitgeverij, copyright 1967

7.1. Vocabulary 1

How is it said in the text?

1. a..... : a dense translucent, white or tinted fine-grained gypsum or a hard calcite. As in : a woman in a painting with an ... skin.
2. a..... p..... : a decorative screen above and behind an altar, generally forming a frame to a picture, bas-relief, or mosaic. It's a synonym for 'retable'.
3. ch..... or p..... : a (representation of a) small angel, portrayed as a child (with an innocent and chubby face).
4. ch..... st..... : a seat with a high back (often covered with a canopy), for clergy and singers in a church. Set up in a line with other seats. In Dutch : koorbank, koorgestoelte.
5. c..... : a closet-like piece of furniture used in Roman Catholic churches for auricular confession.
6. e..... : a likeness or image, usually sculpted, and usually of a person. It is a kind of substitute for the individual it represents. The term is usually associated with the full-length figure of a deceased person depicted in stone, wood (or other material) on church monuments. In Dutch : beeltenis, ligbeeld.
7. e..... : made longer, drawn out, as in some of the figures in Romanesque sculpture , or in the illuminations of 'The Very Rich Hours of the Duke of Berry', or in the compositions of the painter El Greco, etc.
8. e..... s..... : a statue of a mounted rider.
9. e..... : in Dutch : boetedoening.
10. f..... : a small sculpted figure, a statuette.
11. f..... : a receptacle for holding holy water (as for baptizing). E.g. a 'baptismal ...' or a 'holy water ...'
12. I..... : somebody (e.g. an artist) who feels attachment to, or sympathy for Italy and its culture.
13. i..... : an article made of ivory or of something resembling ivory.
14. m..... : a small wooden shelf underneath folding seats (in church stalls) installed to provide some level of comfort for those standing during long periods of prayer or church service. They often

feature depictions of (humorous and satirical) secular or pagan images and scenes, entirely at odds with the Christian iconography and aesthetic of the churches. Beautiful examples can be found at Our Lady's Church (Aarschot), St Saviour's Cathedral (Brugge), and St Sulpitius (Diest).

15. p..... : in Dutch : geveldriehoek, fronton, timpaan.
16. p..... : a doorway, entrance or gate, especially one that is large and imposing.
17. q..... : a two-wheeled chariot drawn by four horses abreast. Examples galore: on top of the Brandenburg Gate in Berlin, on the Wellington Arch in London, the Triumphal ... in Venice, on top of the Arc du Triomphe du Carrousel in Paris, etc.
18. r..... : a work of art (in sculpture) in which the figures and forms project from a supporting background, usually a plane surface. If the design projects only slightly it is called a 'bas-r.....'. If the forms project at least half or more of its natural circumference, we call it a 'high r.....'.
19. r..... : a receptacle (such as a coffer or a shrine) in which the relics of saints and other sacred objects of the Christian religion are kept.
20. r..... s..... : also called 'choir screen' or 'chancel screen' ('kooorhek' in Dutch), it was a common feature in late medieval architecture. It is an ornamental screen, constructed of wood, stone or wrought iron, which separates the nave from the choir or chancel. The carving or construction of such a screen often includes latticework, which makes it possible to see through the screen. It is part of the 'rood loft' ('doksaaal' in Dutch).
21. s..... s..... : also called the 'Seat(s) of Wisdom' is a (sculpture of a) seated Madonna, representing Mary seated on a throne with the Holy Child on her lap. It associates the Blessed Virgin with glory and with teaching.
22. t..... : a fixed, locked box, in which the consecrated host and wine of the Eucharist are 'reserved' (stored). It is to be distinguished from a less obvious container, set in a wall, called an aumbry. In the late 14th C, special stone constructions for the Eucharist began to be built, especially in German, Netherlands and Flemish churches. These tall sacramental towers, known in German as 'Sakramentshäuser' and in Dutch as 'sacramentstorens', were usually placed to the north of the altar and often reached almost to the ceiling. E.g. in St Martin's Church, Kortrijk; St Peter's Church in Leuven; St Leonard's Church in Zoutleeuw.
23. t..... : in Dutch : triomfboog.
24. m..... : monumental tomb ('praalgraf' in Dutch).
25. c..... r..... : 'communiebank' in Dutch.



Godfrey of Bouillon, Eugène Simonis



Triumphal Arch, Thomas Vinçotte

7.2. Assignments and tips

1. Listen to 'Effigy', one of John Fogerty's most haunting songs, from the CCR album 'Willy and the Poor Boys'.
2. The oldest effigy in England is thought to be that of Abbot Gilbert Crispin, who died in 1117 and was buried in the cloisters at Westminster Abbey. It was cut from stone imported from Tournai, a dark limestone, commonly called black marble.
3. 'Equestrian Statue' is the title of a 1967 song by the Bonzo Dog Doo-Dah Band, in which a town square is enlivened by the presence of a rather lively equestrian statue of a former dignitary.
4. What are the motto and symbol of the University of Leuven? ('Our Lady, Seat of Wisdom' is a medieval statue by Nicolaas de Bruyne)
5. The word "rood" is derived from the Saxon word "rode", meaning "cross". Find more information on the origin and meaning of rood screens and their symbolic significance.
6. Find more information on tabernacles (also in Judaism).
7. A "cherub" (plural: cherubim) is an angel of the second of the nine orders of angels in medieval angelology. A "cherub" (plural: cherubs) is a representation of a small angel, portrayed as a child. Find more information on cherubs/cherubim and other angels, e.g. archangels, seraphim (or seraphs), etc. Are they also to be found in Judaism and Islam?
8. The most striking pulpits of the Baroque period are those of Belgium. Find more information and pictures.

7.3. Vocabulary 2

There are quite a few "strong" adjectives in this text (e.g. exuberant), describing the sculptors and their work. Find the other ones in the text and add some more of your own choice.

7.4. Vocabulary 3

In the text, four expressions are used for 'to be famous for'. Find these synonyms.

7.5. Vocabulary 4

Find the verbal expressions in the text :

1. Rubens was **undoubtedly** one of the greatest painters ever.
= It is b d that Rubens was one of the greatest painters ever.
2. Flemish painting **reached its highest point** with the Flemish Primitives.
= Flemish painting reached its a with the Flemish Primitives.
3. Breughel is **greatly respected and admired** all over the world.
= Breughel is held i g e all over the world.
4. In a way Dirc Bouts's style **resembles** Rogier van der Weyden's technique.
= In a way the paintings of Dirc Bouts b a r to the works of Rogier van der Weyden.
5. A visit to the open-air museum at Bokrijk will **remind** the visitor of Breughel.
= A visit to the open-air museum will s a c Breughel is not far away.



7.6. More assignments



The Miner (Monument to Labour), Constantin Meunier



Monumental tomb of Bishop Triest, Hieronymus Duquesnoy the Younger

1. The dominant feature of the Parc du Cinquantaire (Jubilee Park) is the Palais du Cinquantaire (Jubilee Palace) with its triumphal arch. Describe this structure, its history and location.
2. The Musée **Constantin Meunier** occupies the 19th C home and studio of the sculptor Constantin Meunier in Brussels. Find more information (and pictures).
3. Contemporary trends in Belgian sculpture can be appreciated at the outstanding open-air museum of late 19th and 20th C sculpture, established at Middelheim, Antwerp. The rolling lawns are dotted randomly with beautiful works. Make a survey/list/ presentation of its sculptures and sculptors.
4. The Flemish sculptor **Johannes Michel** (or Michael) **Rysbrack** (1694 – 1770) is one of England’s most important 18th C artists. Find more information on his life and works.
5. In the late 14th C special stone constructions for the Eucharistic bread began to be built, especially in northern Europe. In Belgian, German and Netherlands churches, such tabernacles in the shape of tall sacramental towers (“sacramentstorens”) can still be seen. Find more information.
6. Find more information on **Jacob Jonghelinck** (1530 – 1606) and his effigy of Charles the Bold at the Church of Our Lady in Bruges. How did Charles the Bold die? Where was he buried (the riddle of the corpse)? Who ordered to bring his body to Bruges? What is the effigy made of? Why was the gilding carried out by criminals who had been sentenced to death? What do you know about the other mausoleum and effigy of Mary of Burgundy, in the same church?
7. Find more information on **Jules Bertin** (1826 – 1892) and his statue of Ambiorix. What is the link with Vercingetorix?



8. Find more information on the Renaissance sculptors **Cornelis Floris II de Vriendt** (Antwerp Town Hall; the rood loft at the Cathedral of Our Lady, Doornik), and his brother Frans Floris (They are mentioned by Carel van Mander in his famous *'Hetschilder-boeck'*); **Alexander Colijn** (monumental tomb of Emperor Maximilian I of Austria at Innsbruck); and **Jan Mone** (born in Metz and town sculptor of Mechelen)

9. Like Brussels (on the Zenne) and Leuven (on the Dijle), Zoutleeuw was situated on a river, the Kleine Gete, on the border between the Duchy of Brabant and the Prince Bishopric of Liège. And just like the other two, it lay between Lower Belgium and the plateaux of Central Belgium where the rivers were no longer navigable. Thus, Zoutleeuw (like Brussels and Leuven) became an ideal inland port and market town. In the 13th C it became even more prosperous as a cloth town. Although it has become a sleepy little place nowadays, it still boasts one of Belgium's most magnificent Gothic churches. This Church of St Leonard(us) is a real cave of Ali Baba, containing fantastic works of art. E.g. the tallest stone tabernacle ('sacramental tower', "sacramentstoren") in the world; a Sedes Sapientiae from the 13th C; the wooden altarpiece of St Anne (by Cornelis Floris II de Vriendt); etc. Make a more complete list and find more information for a (virtual) guided tour of the church.

10. Find more information on the Baroque sculptors (and brothers) **Francois and Jérôme Duquesnoy**. Find pictures, e.g. the Rococo tomb of Bishop Triest in the cathedral of Ghent. Why was Jérôme Duquesnoy burnt at the stake on the Korenmarkt?

11. The most important northern European sculptor of his (Gothic) age (who hugely influenced Flemish artists) was **Claus Sluter** from Zeeland. Find more information and pictures of his *Well of Moses*, created for the Carthusian monastery of Champmol (Burgundy, France) and the Tomb of Philip the Bold at Dijon.

12. One of the most important and most beautiful art treasures in Belgium is the Treasure of Hugo d'Oignies at the Convent of the Sisters of Our Lady (Notre Dame) in Namur. Friar **Hugo (d'Oignies)** made this splendid collection of religious artefacts for the priory in the town of Oignies. Find more information.

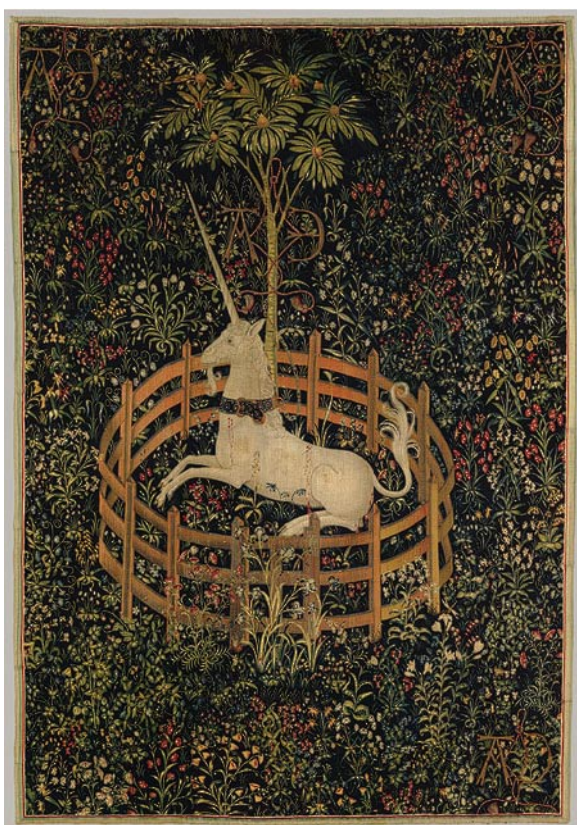
13. Find more information on Belgian goldsmiths and silversmiths and the work they produced. E.g. the Reliquary of the Holy Blood by **Jan Crabbe**, etc.

14. Write a touristic leaflet/brochure on Campo Santo Cemetery, St Amandsberg, and Schoonselhof Cemetery, Wilrijk.

8. Luxury arts: tapestries

The lavish detail with which textiles are depicted in Flemish panel paintings and illuminated manuscripts reflects their great importance to 15th century society. In the 15th and 16th centuries, Flemish tapestry making was considered the best in Europe. Major centers at Brussels, Tournai and Arras produced intricately designed wall hangings for royal and aristocratic patrons, important church officials, and even town councils. Among the most common subjects were foliage and flower patterns, scenes from the lives of the saints, and themes from classical mythology and history.

Tapestries provided both insulation and luxurious decoration for stone walls of castles, churches and municipal buildings. Often they were woven for specific places or for festive occasions such as weddings, coronations, and other public events. Many were given as diplomatic gifts and the wealth of individuals can often be judged from the number of tapestries listed in their household inventories.



Hunt of the Unicorn (detail)

One of the best-known tapestry-suites (now in The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York) is the *Hunt of the Unicorn* (1495 - 1505). The unicorn, a mythological horselike animal with cloven hooves, a goat's beard and a single long twisted horn, appears in stories from ancient India, the Near East, and Greece. The creature was said to be supernaturally swift and, in medieval belief, could only be captured by a young virgin, to whom it came willingly. Thus, it became a symbol of the Incarnation, with Christ as the unicorn captured by the Virgin Mary, and also as a metaphor for romantic love, suitable as the subject in wedding tapestries.

Each piece in the suite exhibits many people and animals in a dense field of trees and flowers, with a distant view of a castle, as in the *Unicorn at the Fountain*. The letters A and E, hanging by a cord from the fountain, may be a reference to the first and last letters of Anne of Brittany's name or the first and last letters of her motto, *A ma vie* ("By my life", a kind of pledge). The unusually fine condition of the piece allows us to appreciate its rich coloration and the subtlety in modeling the faces, creating tonal varieties in the animals' fur, and depicting reflections in the water.

Because of its religious connotations, the unicorn was an important animal in the medieval **bestiary**, an encyclopedia of real and imaginary animals that gave information about both moral and practical value. For example, the unicorn's horn was thought to be an antidote to poison. Thus, the unicorn purifies the water by dipping its horn into it. Other woodland creatures included here have symbolic meanings as well. For instance, lions, ancient symbols of power, represent valor, faith, courage, and mercy; the stag is a symbol of Christian resurrection and a protector against poisonous serpents and the evil in general; and the gentle leopard was said to breathe perfume. Not surprisingly, the rabbits symbolize fertility and the dogs fidelity. The pair of pheasants is an emblem of human love and marriage, and the goldfinch is another symbol of fertility. Only the ducks swimming away have no known message.

The plants, flowers and trees, identifiable from their botanically correct depictions, reinforce the theme of protective and curative powers. Each has both religious and secular meanings, but the theme of marriage, in particular, is referred to by the presence of such plants as the strawberry, a common symbol of sexual love; the pomegranate for fertility; the pansy for remembrance; and the periwinkle, a cure for spiteful feelings and jealousy.

The trees include oak for fidelity, beech for nobility, holly for protection against evil, hawthorn for the power of love, and orange for fertility. The parklike setting with its prominent fountain is rooted in the biblical love poem the *Song of Songs*: “You are an enclosed garden, my sister, my bride, an enclosed garden, a fountain sealed. You are a park that puts forth pomegranates, with all choice fruits ... You are a garden fountain, a well of water flowing fresh from the Lebanon. Let my lover come into his garden and eat its choice of fruits.”

The Unicorn Tapestries are among the most popular attractions at The Cloisters, which houses part of the Metropolitan Museum’s splendid collection from medieval Europe. Little is known about their early history, though the seven hangings are thought to have been designed in Paris and woven in Brussels (then part of the Netherlands) between 1495–1505, and might have originally come from several sets. They are among the most beautiful and complex works of art to survive from the Middle Ages.

Traditionally known as *The Hunt of the Unicorn*, these tapestries were woven in wool, metallic threads, and silk, and include the depiction of 101 species of plants, of which over 85 have been identified. The vibrant colors still evident today were produced with three dye plants: weld (yellow), madder (red), and woad (blue).

The earliest document listing the seven tapestries is a 1680 inventory that details the possessions in the Paris residence of François VI de La Rochefoucauld. The tapestries were subsequently moved to the family’s château in Verteuil, from which they were looted during the French Revolution. It was not until the 1850s that the tapestries were returned to the family. Descriptions of the tapestries since then mention only six large hangings; the seventh hanging, much destroyed during its disappearance, was reduced to two small fragments.

In 1922 the six large tapestries were sent for exhibition in New York where they were seen and purchased by John D. Rockefeller, Jr. They remained in his apartment until 1937, when Mr. Rockefeller presented them to The Cloisters. The two fragments were purchased separately, from Count Gabriel de La Rochefoucauld of Paris, in time to join the other six hangings for the opening of The Cloisters in 1938.

http://www.metmuseum.org/explore/Unicorn/unicorn_

8.1. Vocabulary

Foliage: twigs and leaves

Intricately: complicated

Suite: group of related things intended to be used together; a set

Weld: wouw (*reseda luteola*)

Madder: meekrap (*rubia tinctorum*) alizarine

Woad: wede (*Isatis tinctoria*)

8.2. Comprehension

1. What were tapestries used for and what were the most common subjects?
2. Why is the unicorn ideally suited to feature on a wedding tapestry? Explain.



8.3. Assignments

Find more on:

- Major tapestry production centres like Brussels, Oudenaarde, Tournai, Arras ...
- Royal Tapestry Factory “Gaspard De Wit”
- The Spanish Royal Collection
- Weld, madder, woad

9. Renaissance painting in the Netherlands

In the Netherlands, the 16th century was an age of bitter religious and political conflict. Despite the turmoil the Netherlanders found the resources to pay for art. Strong affluent art centers, such as Utrecht developed in the north. Antwerp and Brussels were centers of painting and tapestry weaving which received such commissions as the Sistine Chapel tapestries, for which Raphael provided the cartoons. Although the Roman Catholic church continued to commission works of art, the religious controversies led artists to seek private patrons. A market existed for small paintings of secular subjects that were both decorative and interesting conversation pieces for homes. Certain subjects were so popular later in the century that some artists became specialists, rapidly producing variations on a particular theme, with the help of assistants.

According to scholars like Herman Pleij and Paul Vandenbroeck late medieval Dutch literature and painting between 1400 and 1600 were the vehicle for a coherent cultural program driven by the urban elites to discipline individual and collective behavior according to a similar set of values. With the support of the old landed aristocracy or courtly cultures of the Low Countries, this culminated in the “bourgeoisizing” of noble culture in the 17th century Dutch republic.

In this respect the work of Hieronymus Bosch, who depicts a world of fantastic imagination associated with medieval art, has led to many interpretations. A challenging example is the triptych *Garden of earthly Delights* which led modern critics to label him scholar, mystic and social critic. The subject of the overall work is sin. Because only the damned are shown in the Last Judgment, the work seems to caution that damnation is the natural outcome of a life lived in ignorance and folly, that people ensure their damnation through their self-centered pursuit of pleasures of the flesh, the sins of gluttony, lust, avarice and sloth. In *The Strawberry Plant* the subject of sin is reinforced by the suggestion that life is as fleeting and insubstantial as the taste of a strawberry.



Christ carrying the cross (1564) detail

So popular did the work of Bosch remain that, nearly half a century after his death, Pieter Bruegel (c. 1525 – 69) began his career by imitating Bosch's work. Fortunately, Bruegel's talents went far beyond those of an ordinary copyist, but like his predecessor he often painted large narrative works crowded with figures and chose moralizing or satirical subject matter.

Bruegel maintained shop in Antwerp from 1554 until 1563, then moved to Brussels. His style and subjects found great favor with local

scholars, merchants, and bankers, who appreciated the beautifully painted, artfully composed works that also reflected contemporary social, political and religious conditions. Bruegel visited country fairs to sketch the farmers and townspeople who became the focus of his paintings, whether religious or secular he depicted characters not as unique individuals but as well-observed types whose universality makes them familiar even today. Nevertheless, Bruegel presented Flemish farmers so vividly and sympathetically while also exposing their faults that the middle-class artist earned the nickname Peasant Bruegel.

True to his Mannerist heritage, Bruegel adopted Mannerist tricks of composition. The main subject of his pictu-

res is often deliberately hidden or disguised by being placed in the distance or amid a teeming crowd of figures, as in the *Carrying of the Cross*. While searching for the principal action - Jesus carrying his cross to Golgotha - the viewer is constantly distracted by minor dramas going on among the crowd milling about the large open field or surging around the dire events central to the painting. Bruegel's cynical view of crowd psychology is illustrated by the people gathering on a hill early to get a good place in the circle around the spot where the crosses will be set up.

Bruegel was also one of the great landscape painters of all time. His ability to depict nature in all seasons and in all moods shines forth in his cycles – series of paintings on a single allegorical subject such as the Five Senses or the Seasons, frequently commissioned as decorations for elegant Netherlandish homes. The *Return of the Hunters* of 1565 is one of a cycle of six panels, each representing two months of the year.

Bruegel died young in 1569, leaving two children, Pieter the Younger and Jan, both of whom became successful painters in the next century. The dynasty continued with Jan's son, Jan the Younger. (In the 17th century the spelling of the family name was changed from Bruegel to Breughel)

(Stokstad op.cit.)

9.1. Vocabulary

Fill in the missing words

Turmoil - resources - controversies - depict - fleeting - teeming - shine forth - dire - find favor - caution

1. Investors shied away from American companies after the economic forecasts.
2. The shallow waters around the islands of the Pacific are with life.
3. Because of the following the car bomb explosion, rescue services couldn't get through.
4. We could only catch a glimpse of the pop star passing by in the limo.
5. No great advance has ever been made in science, politics, or religion, without
6. Magritte a dreamlike world.
7. Africa is a continent with plenty of natural
8. The qualities of the athlete in his list of victories.
9. Spielberg's movies with international audiences.
10. Parents often their children for rude play.

9.2. Comprehension questions

1. In what way did the urban elite influence the work of both Bosch and Bruegel?
2. What qualities did they appreciate in Bruegel's work?
3. Give an example of Mannerist influence in Bruegel's work.

9.3. Assignments

1. Find more on art production in Utrecht, Antwerp, Brussels ...
2. Explore the work of Bosch.
Do you think the moralistic traits support the theories of Pleij and Vandenbroeck?

10. Pieter Paul Rubens (1577 – 1640)

Rubens was born in Siegen, Westphalia, to Jan Rubens and Maria Pypelincks. His father, a Calvinist, and mother fled Antwerp for Cologne in 1568, after increased religious turmoil and persecution of Protestants during the rule of the Spanish Netherlands by the Duke of Alba. Jan Rubens became the legal advisor (and lover) to Anna of Saxony, the second wife of William I of Orange, and settled at her court in Siegen in 1570. Following imprisonment for the affair, Peter Paul Rubens was born in 1577. The family returned to Cologne the next year. In 1589, two years after his father's death, Rubens moved with his mother to Antwerp, where he was raised Catholic. Religion figured prominently in much of his work and Rubens later became one of the leading voices of the Catholic Counter-Reformation style of painting.

In Antwerp Rubens received a humanist education, studying Latin and classical literature. By fourteen he began his artistic apprenticeship with the little-known Tobias Verhaeght. Subsequently, he studied under two of the city's leading painters of the time, the late mannerists Adam van Noort and Otto van Veen. Much of his earliest training involved copying earlier artists' works, such as **woodcuts** by Hans Holbein the Younger and Marcantonio Raimondi's **engravings** after Raphael. Rubens completed his education in 1598, at which time he entered the Guild of St. Luke as an independent master.

Italy (1600–1608)

In 1600, Rubens traveled to Italy. He stopped first in Venice, where he experienced first-hand paintings by Titian, Veronese, and Tintoretto, before settling in Mantua at the court of duke Vincenzo I of Gonzaga. The coloring and compositions of Veronese and Tintoretto had an immediate effect on Rubens's painting, and his later, mature style was profoundly influenced by Titian. With financial support from the duke, Rubens traveled to Rome by way of Florence in 1601. There, he studied classical Greek and Roman art and copied works of the Italian masters. The Hellenistic sculpture *Laocoön and his Sons* was especially influential on him, as was the art of Michelangelo, Raphael and Leonardo da Vinci. He was also influenced by the recent, highly naturalistic paintings by Caravaggio. He later made a copy of that artist's *Entombment of Christ*, recommended that his patron, the duke of Mantua, purchase *The Death of the Virgin* (Louvre), and was instrumental in the acquisition of *The Madonna of the Rosary* (Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna) for the Dominican church in Antwerp. During this first stay in Rome, Rubens completed his first altarpiece commission, *St. Helena with the True Cross* for the Roman church, Santa Croce in Gerusalemme.

Rubens traveled to Spain on a diplomatic mission in 1603, delivering gifts from the Gonzagas to the court of Philip III. While there, he viewed the extensive collections of Raphael and Titian that had been collected by Philip II. He also painted an equestrian portrait of the *Duke of Lerma* during his stay (Prado, Madrid) that demonstrates the influence of works like Titian's *Charles V at Mühlberg* (1548; Prado, Madrid). This journey marks the first of many during his career that would combine art and diplomacy.

He returned to Italy in 1604, where he remained for the next four years - first in Mantua, and then in Genoa and Rome. In Genoa, Rubens painted numerous portraits, such as the *Marchesa Brigida Spinola-Doria* (National Gallery of Art, Washington, D.C.), in a style that would influence later paintings by Anthony van Dyck, Joshua Reynolds, and Thomas Gainsborough. He also began a book illustrating the palaces in the city. From 1606 to 1608, he was largely in Rome. During this period Rubens received his most important commission to date for the high altar of the city's most fashionable new church, Santa Maria in Vallicella (or, Chiesa Nuova). The subject was to be St. Gregory the Great and important local saints adoring an icon of the Virgin and Child. The first version, a single canvas (Musée des Beaux-Arts, Grenoble), was immediately replaced by a second version on three **slate panels** that permits the actual miraculous holy image of the "Santa Maria in Vallicella" to be revealed on important feast days by a removable copper cover, also painted by the artist. The impact of Italy on Rubens was great. Besides the artistic influences, he continued to write many of his letters and correspondences in Italian for the rest of his life, signed his name as "Pietro Paolo Rubens", and spoke longingly of returning to the peninsula - a hope that never materialized.

Antwerp (1609–1621)

Upon hearing of his mother's illness in 1608, Rubens planned his departure from Italy for Antwerp. Unfortunately, she died before he made it home. His return coincided with a period of renewed prosperity in the city with the signing of Treaty of Antwerp in April 1609, which initiated the Twelve Years' Truce. In September of that year Rubens was appointed court painter by Albert and Isabella, the governors of the Low Countries. He received special permission to base his studio in Antwerp, instead of at their court in Brussels, and to also work for other clients. He remained close to the Archduchess Isabella until her death in 1633, and was called upon not only as a painter but also as an ambassador and diplomat. Rubens further cemented his ties to the city when, on October 3, 1609, he married Isabella Brant, the daughter of a leading Antwerp citizen and humanist Jan Brant.

In 1610, he moved into a new house and studio that he designed. Now the Rubenshuis museum, the Italian-influenced villa in the center of Antwerp contained his workshop, where he and his apprentices made most of the paintings, and his personal art collection and library, both among the most extensive in Antwerp. During this time he built up a studio with numerous students and assistants. His most famous pupil was the young Anthony van Dyck, who soon became the leading Flemish portraitist and collaborated frequently with Rubens. He also frequently collaborated with the many specialists active in the city, including the animal painter Frans Snyders, who contributed to the eagle to Prometheus Bound, and his good friend the flower-painter Jan Brueghel the Elder.



Altarpieces such as *The Raising of the Cross* (1610) and *The Descent from the Cross* (1611–1614) for the Cathedral of Our Lady were particularly important in establishing Rubens as Flanders' leading painter shortly after his return. *The Raising of the Cross*, for example, demonstrates the artist's synthesis of Italian art - with its heroic nude figures, dramatic lighting effects, dynamic diagonal composition and intense emotions - and Flemish tradition with its minute attention given to varied structures and forms.

Rubens had created a powerful, expressive visual language that was appropriate for the secular rulers who engaged him as it was for the Catholic Church. Moreover, his intelligence, courtly manners and personal charm made him a valuable and trusted courtier to his royal patrons, who included Philip IV of Spain, Queen-Regent Marie de Medici of France and Charles I of England. In 1630, while on a peace mission, Charles I knighted him and commissioned him to decorate the ceiling of the new Banqueting Hall at Whitehall Palace.

The Marie de' Medici Cycle and diplomatic missions (1621–1630)

In 1621, Marie de' Medici, who had been regent for her son Louis XIII, asked Rubens to paint the story of her life, to glorify her role in ruling France and also to commemorate the founding of the new Bourbon royal dynasty. In twenty-four paintings, Rubens portrayed Marie's life and political career as one continuous triumph overseen by the gods. In fact, Marie and her husband, Henri, appear as companions of the Roman gods themselves.

Last decade (1630–1640)

In 1630, four years after the death of his first wife, the 53-year-old painter married 16-year-old Hélène Fourment. Hélène inspired the voluptuous figures in many of his paintings from the 1630s, including *The Feast of*

Venus (Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna), *The Three Graces* (Prado, Madrid) and *The Judgment of Paris* (Prado, Madrid). In the latter painting, which was made for the Spanish court, the artist's young wife was recognized by viewers in the figure of Venus. In an intimate portrait of her, *Hélène Fourment in a Fur Wrap*, also known as *Het Pelsken*, Rubens's wife is even partially modeled after classical sculptures of the Venus Pudica, such as the Medici Venus.

In 1635, Rubens bought an estate outside of Antwerp, the *Château de Steen* (Het Steen), where he spent much of his time. Landscapes, such as his *Château de Steen with Hunter* (National Gallery, London) and *Farmers Returning from the Fields* (Pitti Gallery, Florence), reflect the more personal nature of many of his later works. He also drew upon the Netherlandish traditions of Pieter Bruegel the Elder for inspiration in later works like *Flemish Kermis* (c. 1630; Louvre, Paris).

On May 30, 1640, Rubens died at age 63 of gout, and was interred in Saint Jacob's church, Antwerp. Between his two marriages the artist had eight children, three with Isabella and five with Hélène; his youngest child was born eight months after his death.

His Art

Rubens was a prolific artist. His commissioned works were mostly religious subjects, "**history**" paintings, which included mythological subjects, and **hunt scenes**. He painted **portraits**, especially of friends, and self-portraits, and in later life painted several **landscapes**. Rubens designed tapestries and prints, as well as his own house. He also oversaw the ephemeral **decorations of the Joyous Entry into Antwerp** by the Cardinal-Infante Ferdinand in 1635.

His **drawings** are mostly extremely forceful but not detailed; he also made great use of **oil sketches** as preparatory studies. He was one of the last major artists to make consistent use of **wooden panels** as a support medium, even for very large works, but he used **canvas** as well, especially when the work needed to be sent a long distance. For altarpieces he sometimes painted on **slate** to reduce reflection problems.

Paintings can be divided into three categories: those painted by Rubens himself, those which he painted in part (mainly hands and faces), and those he only supervised. He had, as was usual at the time, a large workshop with many apprentices and students, some of whom, such as Anthony Van Dyck, became famous in their own right. He also often sub-contracted elements such as animals, costumes, landscapes or still-life in large compositions to specialists such as Frans Snyders, or other artists such as Jacob Jordaens.

Wölfflin's The Principles of Art History

In 1915, Swiss art historian Heinrich Wölfflin published a book called *The Principles of Art History*. In it, he described five pairs of characteristics based on style (formal qualities) that he used to distinguish between renaissance and Baroque art – and by extension, between any "classical" and "nonclassical" style, such as Classical Greek art versus Hellenistic art. His ideas can be a useful tool for learning the rudiments of formal analysis. Wölfflin compared and contrasted the paintings of Raphael and Rubens to illustrate and clarify his principles

1. *Linear vs. painterly*: sharp outline drawing and sculptural modeling vs. loose, free brushwork and emphasis on color
2. *Plane vs. depth*: elements arranged parallel to the picture plane vs. diagonal recession in depth
3. *Closed form vs. open form*: self-contained composition closely related to the picture frames. Figures spilling over and beyond the frame
4. *Multiplicity vs. unity*: each element being free and complete but all being coordinated within the frame vs. elements interlocking to create a single, total effect.
5. *Clarity vs. unclarity*: clear and intellectually understandable vs. suggestive and intuitive

<http://www.ibiblio.org/wm/paint/auth/rubens/>
<http://arts.guardian.co.uk/features/story/0,11710,903646,00.html>
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peter_Paul_Rubens

(Stokstad, op. cit.)

10.1. Assignments

1. What is Mannerism?
2. Summarize the impact of Rubens's stay in Italy (1600- 1608)
3. Make a presentation on Rubens's main work in Britain, Banqueting Hall (London)
http://www.hrp.org.uk/BanquetingHouse/The_storiesRubensceilingpaintings.aspx
4. Apart from painting, what (artistic) activities did Rubens indulge in?
5. What evidence is there in the text that Rubens was respected all over Europe?
6. Make a list of all the art forms / materials printed in bold.

11. Nineteenth and twentieth century painting

The most famous Belgian painter of the end of the 19th and the beginning of the 20th C is **James Ensor** (1860 – 1949). Macabre and fantastic, he used skeletons and masks to make social comments in works such as *Christ's Entry into Brussels* of 1889 (now in the Getty Museum). Following the tradition of Bosch, these paintings still have the capacity to shock and intrigue. Even in his early works, Ensor can be penetrating, as in *Sombre Lady* (Brussels Museum) and the *Oyster Eater* (Antwerp Museum). Despite being very much an individual, Ensor was one of the founding members of the group Les XX and its successor La Libre Esthetique. They recognized the importance of combining every art and style. In their exhibitions, held annually, they included poetry readings and concerts as well as displays of Impressionist, neo-Impressionist, Symbolist, Art Nouveau and decorative works of art from Belgium, France and England. Several members of the group, including Theo van Rijsselberghe, Alfred 'Willy' Finch (who may be considered to be the precursor of Finnish design), Anna Bloch, and Henry van de Velde, took up pointillism. Two other authentic and individualist painters from the turn of the century were Henri Evenepoel and Léon Spilliaert.



The Oyster Eater, James Ensor



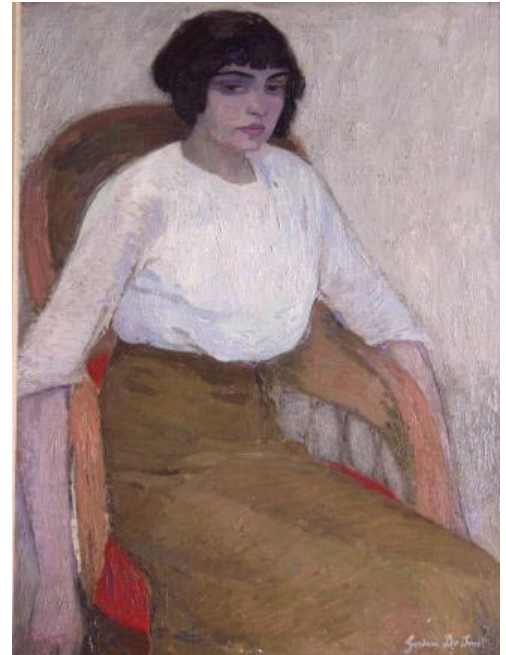
Intrigue, James Ensor

In the 20th C the village of Sint Martens Latem, on the river Leie (Lys) near Ghent, became the centre for two schools of Flemish Expressionism. **The First Lathem School**, the so-called 'mystics', was established by the sculptor George Minne (1866 – 1941) and the artists Valerius de Saedeleer (1867 – 1941), who painted landscapes as they should be and made use of photography for his paintings, Gustave van de Woestijne (1881 – 1947), Albijn van den Abeele (1835 – 1918), who became mayor of Lathem in 1868, and Albert Servaes (1883 – 1966). These artists were influenced by Symbolist painters and writers in Brussels, though they also drew inspiration from medieval Flemish religious painting. Minne's sculpture of *Three Martyrs at the Tomb*, Servaes' series of the *Stations of the Cross* and Van de Woestijne's *Crucifixion* illustrate their religious subject matter. Albijn van den Abeele, whose paintings exhibit a certain Gothic mysticism, and Valerius de Saedeleer painted Flemish landscapes with a cold stillness and contemplation that harks back to Pieter Breughel the Elder.

The **Second Lathem Group**, the 'expressionists', was established c 1909 by Constant Permeke (1886 – 1952), a master of emotional realism, **Gustave de Smet** (1877 – 1943) and **Frits van den Berghe** (1883 – 1939), who became a newspaper illustrator and made one of the first Flemish strip cartoons. Their works betray a slight Cubist influence, though they remain figurative painters using cubic forms. Flemish Expressionism was largely independent of German Expressionism. It was more humane, evoking pathos by depicting fishermen and peasants in predominantly earthly colours. The landscapes and figures of Permeke have a calm vigour about them, and, like



The Horse Riders, G. van de Woestijne



Sitting Woman, Gustave de Smet

his sculptures, are endowed with a somewhat primitive lyricism (e.g. his *Fisherman's Wife* in the Royal Museum of Fine Arts in Antwerp). The main collections are at the Permeke Museum in Jabbeke, the Gustave and Leon de Smet museums at Deurle and the Fine Arts Museum in Ghent.

Fauvism was as important a movement in Brabant as Expressionism was in Flanders. A group of artists known as the **Brabant Fauvists** developed a bold use of colour modelled on French Fauvism. One of the leading artists of these colourists was **Rik Wouters** (1882 – 1916) whose paintings showed a tendency towards Constructivism



The Gig, Constant Permeke



Young Woman Arranging Flowers, Jean Brusselmans

(influenced by Cézanne). With Matisse, he was one of the few painters who really mastered the use of red paint (one of the most difficult colours). E.g. *The Education* (private collection), a portrait of his wife and muse, Nel.



Woman Ironing, Rik Wouters



Portrait of Nel, Rik Wouters

He used Cézanne's technique of leaving white patches on the canvas, which made the surrounding colours more sparkling. The group also included Leon de Smet (1881 – 1966), brother of the expressionist Gustave de Smet, Edgard Tytgat (1879 – 1957), the unjustly neglected Jean Brusselmans (1884 – 1953), the sculptor and painter Fernand Schirren (1872 – 1944), etc.

Most critics regard **Surrealism** as a French movement, but it has something in common with the eccentric tradition in Belgian art, as seen in the works of Bosch and Breughel. Indeed Surrealism is so much a part of Belgian culture that major Surrealist murals have been commissioned for the Congress Palace and Bourse Metro station in Brussels and the casinos at Knokke and Ostend. The most famous of the Belgian Surrealists was **René Magritte** (1898 – 1967) who was born in the industrial belt of Wallonia and lived most of his life in Brussels. His paintings use the unexpected juxtaposition of ordinary objects to create a strange dissonance. His famous painting *The Empire of Lights* of 1952 (Brussels Museum) is reminiscent of Willem Degouve de Nuncques' *House of Mystery* painted 60 years before (also in the Brussels Museum). Between 1927 and 1930 he participated in the birth of Surrealism in Paris, and then returned to Brussels. **Paul Delvaux** (1897 – 1994) began in 1935 a somewhat obsessive career in which he produced enigmatic paintings featuring dreamy nude women, antiquated Brussels trams and skeletons. A large 1978 mural hangs in the Bourse metro station in Brussels. The Paul Delvaux Museum in Sint Idesbald has a large collection of his works.

Finally, here are some other artists, movements and groups from the 20th C :

- The **Nervia** group aimed to develop a distinctive Walloon art. The group included Anto Carte, Louis Buisseret and Leon Devos.
- Before 1945, Belgian art was dominated by Expressionism and Surrealism, but a few **isolated artists** adopted other international styles: Jules Schmalzigaug was the only Belgian artist to play a part in Futurism. He attempted to represent speed and light in his canvases. The first experiments in abstraction were carried out between the two world wars by such artists as Paul Joostens, Michel Seuphor, Joseph Lacasse, Victor Servranckx, Prosper de Troyer, Felix de Boeck, etc.
- **La Jeune Peinture Belge** (1945 – 1950) paved the way for the fully-fledged abstract art of the 1950s. Its adherents included Gaston Bertrand, Louis van Lint, Anne Bonnet, Marc Mendelson, etc. Dutch, Belgian and Danish artists founded the **Cobra** (an acronym of Copenhagen, Brussels and Amsterdam) group in a Paris café in 1948. They favoured a spontaneous and often child-like art. The leading Belgian mem-

bers were Pierre Alechinsky and Christian Dotremont.

- Roger Raveel changed styles frequently, from abstract to figurative and hyper-realistic. E.g. the *Human Couple*. Marcel Broodthaers enjoyed international success in the 1960s with his quirky installations, such as his mock Museum of Modern Art and Department of the Eagles. The artist Henri Van Herwegen creates assemblages inspired by aircraft. He works under the name Panamarenko.
- A striking trend in recent years has seen art being exhibited **outside museums**. The Brussels public transport authority has been incorporating works by contemporary Belgian artists in its metro stations since the 1970s: the cartoon artist Francois Schuiten at the Porte de Hal/Hallepoort, Roger Somville's *Our Time* at the underground station of Hankar and Benoît at Maelbeek station.

Adapted from : - Blyth, D., *Belgium*, 9th edition. London: A&C Black, 2000 (Blue Guide)



11.1. Assignments

1. Inspired by Courbet's *Stone Breakers*, which was exhibited in Belgium in 1851, Charles de Groux (1825 – 1870) and Constantin Meunier (1831 – 1905) launched the **Realist movement**, which concentrated on depicting the lives of the poor (or the upper-class). Find more information on this movement and its painters (Eugène Laermans, *A Pariah*; Louis Dubois, *The Storks*; Charles Herman, *At Dawn* and *The Honeymoon*; the notorious Felicien Rops, etc.).
2. Frans Van Leemputten (1850 – 1914) was inspired by the Kempen for his social-realistic (and religious) paintings, such as *Palm Sunday in the Kempen*. Gradually his paintings became brighter and almost luministic. Find more pictures.
3. An early work by Emile Claus (1849 – 1924), *The Leie at Astene* (Groeninghemuseum, Bruges), marked the transition to **Luminism**, named after the group *Vie et Lumière* and influenced by the French Impressionists of the 1870s. During his exile in London in the First World War, Claus painted an interesting series of Luminist paintings of the Thames. Find more information on these painters (A.J. Heymans, Georges Morren, etc)



Cows crossing the Leie, Emile Claus



De Ijsvogels, Emile Claus

4. Find pictures of Ensor's paintings to illustrate the evolution in his painting (from realistic scenes in a somber style to ...).
5. **Antoine Joseph Wiertz** (1806 – 1865) is famous for his gruesome scenes of haunting beauty and passionate and sometimes hysterical paintings. He was highly popular during his life but subsequently forgotten, only to be celebrated later as the precursor of the symbolists and surrealists. Find pictures and more information. There is a Wiertz Museum in Brussels.



Two Young Girls or the Beautiful Rosine, A.J. Wiertz



Are you Dead, Infernal Resurrection, F. Masereel



Woodcut from *The City*, Frans Masereel

6. Find more information on Vincent van Gogh's stay in Belgium.
7. The most famous Fantast of all is René Magritte. His pictures are the result of an uninhibited imagination which has been allowed to run riot, often to the confusion of the observer. Find examples of this.
8. One Belgian artist whose fame is as wide-spread as that of Ensor and Magritte is **Frans Masereel** (1889 – 1972), who was famous for his paintings, drawings and, above all, his woodcuts. He became the most famous 20th-century exponent of this particular art form. Find pictures and more information.
9. Here are some other interesting artists from the 19th and 20th C:
 - Gisbert Combaz (1869 – 1941) was a graphic artist who designed (Art Nouveau) posters, covers of books and magazines, etc. (*The Peacock*)
 - Jules De Bruycker (1870 – 1945) was an etcher, who portrayed the miserable life in the bleak working-class districts of Ghent. (*The Black Fair*)
 - Louis Gallait (1810 – 1887) was one of the most valued painters of the 19th C. (*Last Homage to the Counts of Egmont and Hoorn*).
 - Privat Livemont (1861 – 1936) made Art Nouveau posters even before Mucha did.
 - Jan Verhas (1834 – 1896) was the precursor of the School of Dendermonde. (*The Master Painter*).
 - Guillaume Vogels (1836 – 1896) inspired the young James Ensor. (*The Snow. Evening*).
10. Find a brief, but good definition for these terms :
 - Cubism
 - Expressionism
 - Fauvism
 - Futurism
 - Luminism (or Belgian Neo-Impressionism)
 - Pointillism
 - Realism
 - Surrealism
 - Symbolism

11. After the French Academy's Salon consistently rejected most of their works, a group of French painters held their own exhibition in 1874 (seven other exhibitions followed). A critic described them derisively as "impressionists", and they adopted the name as an accurate description of their intent. This group was to revolutionize Western painting. The most important members were : Paul Cézanne, Edgar Degas, Edouard Manet, Claude Monet and Pierre-Auguste Renoir.

a. Link the names of these painters to one of the following information bits :

1. _____ : favoured open-air painting and focused on the effect of changing light on everyday subjects and landscapes / *Water Lilies*, painted in his garden at Giverny / painted a series of haystacks / long white beard and straw hat.
2. _____ : a close friend of 1. / produced some of the movement's most famous images of carefree leisure, in which men and women openly and casually enjoy a society diffused with warm, radiant sunlight (e.g. *Lunch after a Boat Trip*) / started his artistic career as an apprentice in a porcelain factory / later on, he broke with his Impressionist colleagues and adopted a more linear style indebted to the Old Masters / painted *The Swing*.
3. _____ : painter, pastellist, sculptor, photographer and collector / the son of a well-to-do banker / unlike the others he preferred to paint indoors / produced many paintings and pastels of the racecourse, music hall, café, and ballet (e.g. *The Ballet Class*) / the placement of each detail is calculated in terms of every other to establish a remarkably clever and subtle balance / later on, he began to suffer from failing eyesight and became more and more of a recluse.
4. _____ : friend of 1. and 2. / never exhibited with the other Impressionists / caused a lot of commotion with his paintings and was considered a renegade by the French Academy, who rejected his paintings *Absynthe Drinker* and *Luncheon on the Grass* / was supported by Baudelaire and Zola / by some not considered to be a real Impressionist / his painting is notable for its brilliant 'alla prima' painterly technique / contrary to the other painters he often used black (a 'difficult' colour) in his paintings.
5. _____ : had the same kind of offspring as 3. / the precursor of the 20th C art / unlike the others he emphasised the structure of objects rather than the vision presented by the light that emanated from them, basing his compositions on cubic masses, patches of colour, and architectonic lines / *Ginger Jar and Fruit*, *Mont Sainte-Victoire*.

b. One or more students (each) show(s) five paintings, one by each French Impressionist. The other students try to make out who painted them.

c. This kind of exercise can also be done with Belgian painters, mentioned in the reading-text (e.g. Ensor, de Saedeleer, Wouters, Claus, and Rops)

12. James Ensor has been paid homage by painters and artists in other media. Can you find examples? (Wikipedia)

File 9

Iconography

1. The Mérode Altarpiece ...



Do an oral presentation of this painting, the *Mérode Altarpiece*, by Robert Campin (also known as the Master of Flémalle)

1. First, give some background information and describe the painting in general: What is it (hinged triptych; three-panel painting)? What does it represent? What's it about? Who made it? When was it made (Early Netherlandish)? Is it an important painting? Where is it now? Who commissioned it? The charm of the domestic setting and townscape outside the windows. Etc..
2. Then, describe the second layer of the painting, the things you don't notice at first sight, the iconography, the religious symbolism. Point out the details and what they symbolize. E.g. the scroll and book (in front of Mary), the lilies (in the earthenware vase on the table), the table and its sixteen sides, the lion finials (on the bench), the vestments of the archangel Gabriel and Mary, the arrangements for washing (at the back of the room), the mousetraps, the other objects in Joseph's workshop (which prefigure the instruments of the Passion), etc. The painting relates the Annunciation to the mass and the sacraments of the Eucharist.

Check:

- Wikipedia (Robert Campin / Mérode Altarpiece)
- <http://www.haberarts.com/campin.html> (article, *Robert Campin's Uncanny Leap*)
- http://www.metmuseum.org/works_of_art/collection_database (the Annunciation Triptych)
- etc.

1.1. ... and other paintings

Do the same for one of these paintings:

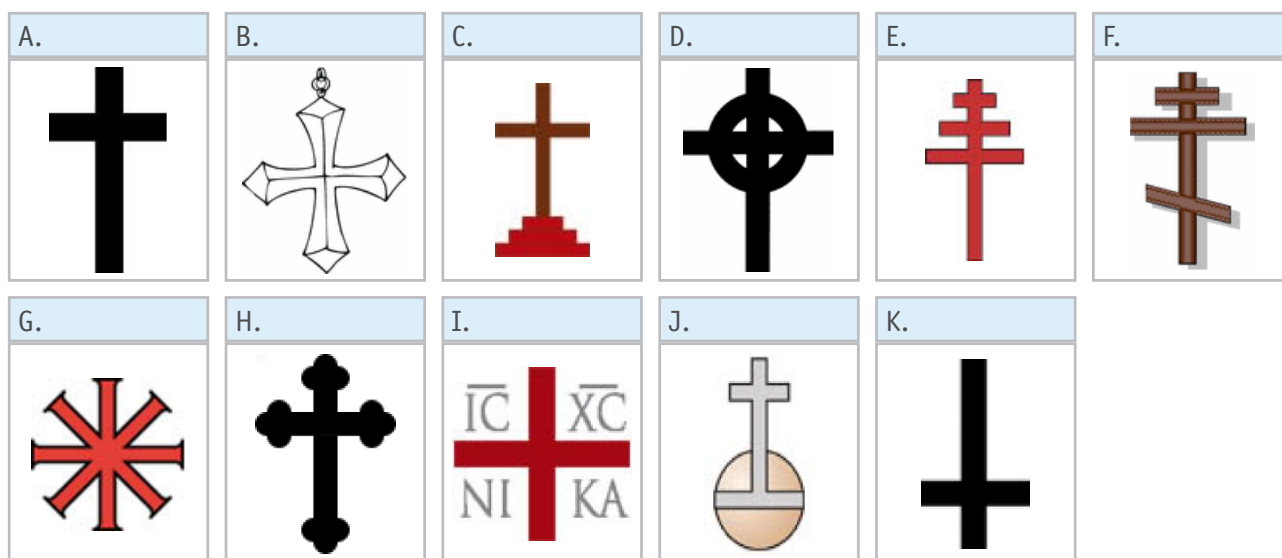
- *Seven Joys of the Virgin* (or, *Life of the Virgin*), by Hans Memling
- *The Annunciation*, by Jan Van Eyck
- *The Holy Virgin with female Saints*, by the Master of the Lucia Legend, Royal Museum of Fine Arts, Brussels
- *Triptych of the Seven Sacraments* (or, *Seven Sacraments Altarpiece*) by Rogier van der Weyden
- *Madonna in front of a Wicker Fire Screen*, by Robert Campin

1.2. Assignment

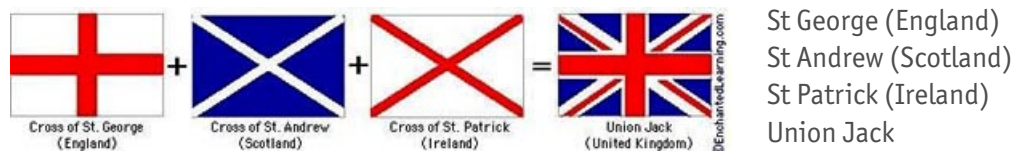
The Church of St Paul, Antwerp, has a curious row of 15 paintings (in the north aisle) illustrating the Fifteen Mysteries of the Rosary. These vivid Baroque works were painted by leading Flemish artists such as Antoon van Dyck (*The Carrying of the Cross*), Jacob Jordaens (*The Crucifixion*), Rubens (*The Scourging at the Pillar*), David Teniers the Elder (*The Garden of Gethsemane*), Frans Francken the Younger (*The Visitation*), Cornelis de Vos (*The Nativity and Presentation in the Temple*), etc. Find more information on the Fifteen (Twenty) Mysteries of the Rosary.

2. It crossed my mind ...

Read the description and combine



Extra: the Union Jack



1. The **triumphant cross with orb** represents Christ's reign over the world. It is often shown atop Christ's scepter in Christian art.
2. The **Russian Orthodox cross** consists of three bars, the lowest bar low and slanted. The top bar represents the "INRI" sign placed over Jesus' head. The meaning of the slanted bar is not known for sure, but probably represents St. Andrew's cross (which looks like an X). St. Andrew is believed to have introduced Christianity to Russia.
3. The **budded cross** is a common form of the cross. Its trefoils represent the Trinity.
4. An inverted cross is the **cross of St. Peter**, who, according to tradition, was crucified upside down because he felt unworthy to die the same way as Christ. As Catholics believe the pope to be a successor of St. Peter, the inverted cross is frequently used in connection with the papacy (papal throne and in papal tombs)
5. The **Celtic cross** is distinguished by the circle around the cross bar and intricate designs throughout.
6. The **cross of Calvary** or Graded Cross has three steps leading up to it, which can represent the hill of calvary or faith, hope, and love.
7. The **Greek cross**, with arms of equal length, is the most ancient cross.
8. The **papal cross** is the official symbol of the papacy, and may be used only by the Pope. The three bars of the cross most likely represent the three realms of the Pope's authority: the church, the world, and heaven.

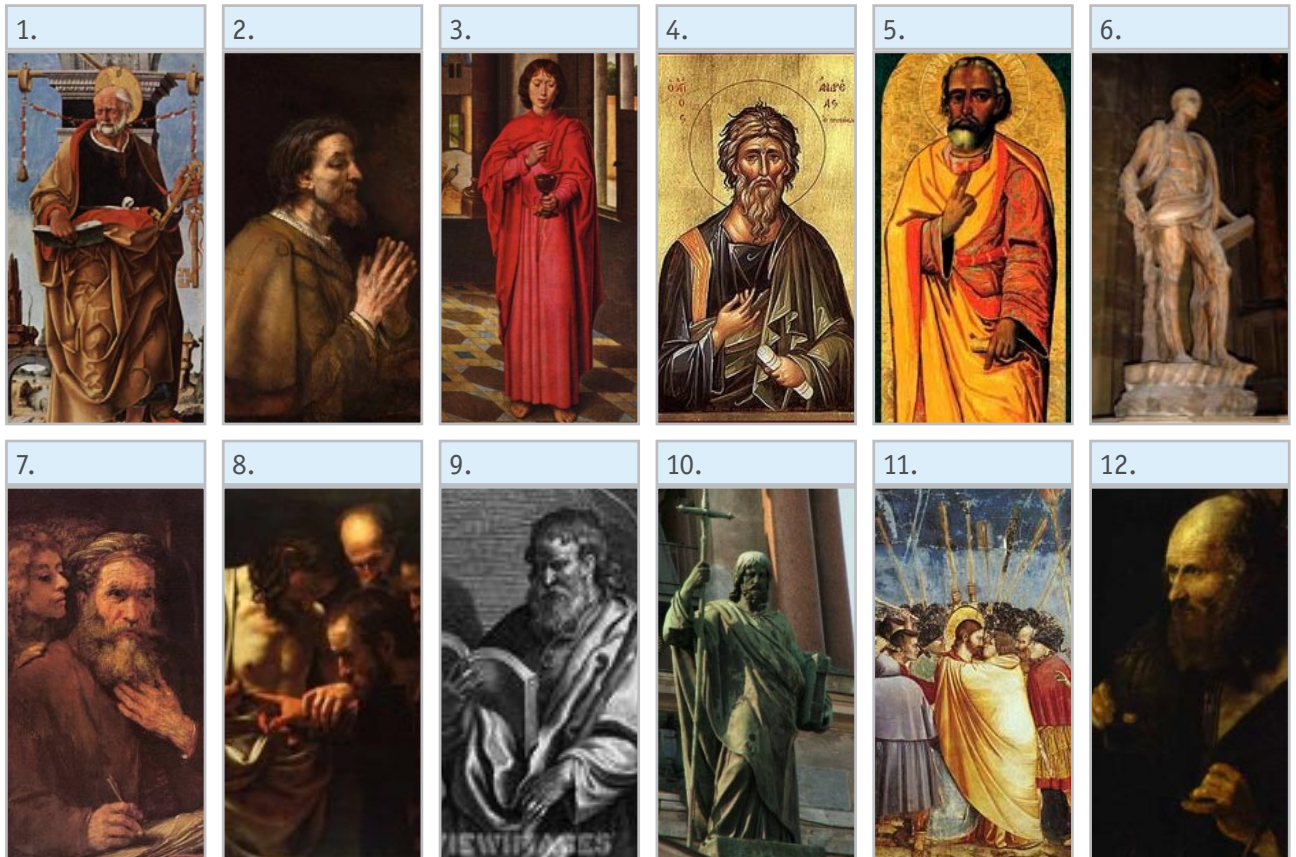
9. The simplest and most common cross is the **Latin cross**, pictured at left. It may not have come into use until the 2nd or 3rd century. The empty cross, usually favored by Protestants, reminds Christians of the resurrection, while the crucifix, with Jesus on it, favored by Catholic and Orthodox churches, is a reminder of Christ's sacrifice.
10. The **baptismal cross** has eight points, symbolizing regeneration. It is formed by combining the Greek cross with the Greek letter chi (X), the first letter of "Christ" in Greek.
11. The **conqueror's** or **victor's cross** is the Greek cross with the first and last letters of "Jesus" and "Christ" on top, and the Greek word for conquerer, nika, on the bottom. The lines over the top letters indicate that they are abbreviations.

(Wikipedia)

3. Apostles

Who's who?

Read the description and match with the painting / sculpture



- **Thomas (Didymus)** / placing his finger in the side of Christ, spear (means of martyrdom), square (his profession, a builder)
- **James (son of Zebedee and older brother of John)** also called “James the Greater” - Bible writer / Scallop, traveller’s hat
- **Judas Iscariot**, who also betrayed him.
- **Andrew (brother of Simon Peter)** / Old man with long (in the East often untidy) white hair and beard, holding the Gospel Book or scroll, sometimes leaning on a saltire cross
- **Thaddaeus-Judas (Lebbaeus)**, brother of James the Lesser and brother of Matthew (Levi) of Capernaum. / axe, club, boat, oar, medallion
- **Philip of Bethsaida** / Elderly bearded man holding a basket of loaves and a Tau cross
- **Bartholomew (Nathaniel)** - He was one of the disciples to whom Jesus appeared at the Sea of Tiberias after His resurrection. He was also a witness of the Ascension. / One of the Twelve Apostles. Probably a close friend of Saint Philip. In works of art he is often represented with a large knife, or, as in Michelangelo’s Last Judgment, with his own skin hanging over his arm. Tradition holds that in Armenia he was flayed alive and then crucified upside down. This fate has led to him being adopted as the patron saint of tanners.
- **Simon Peter (brother of Andrew)** Bible writer / Keys of Heaven, pallium, Papal vestments, man crucified head

downwards, vested as an Apostle, holding a book or scroll. Iconographically, he is depicted with a bushy white beard and white hair

- **Matthew** (Levi) of Capernaum / tax collector
- **Simon the Zealot** (the Canaanite) / boat; cross and saw; fish (or two fish); lance; man being sawn in two longitudinally; oar
- **James (son of Alphaeus)** also called “James the Lesser” - Bible writer / carpenter’s saw; fuller’s club; book
- **John** (son of Zebedee and brother of James) - Bible writer / book, a serpent in a chalice, cauldron, eagle

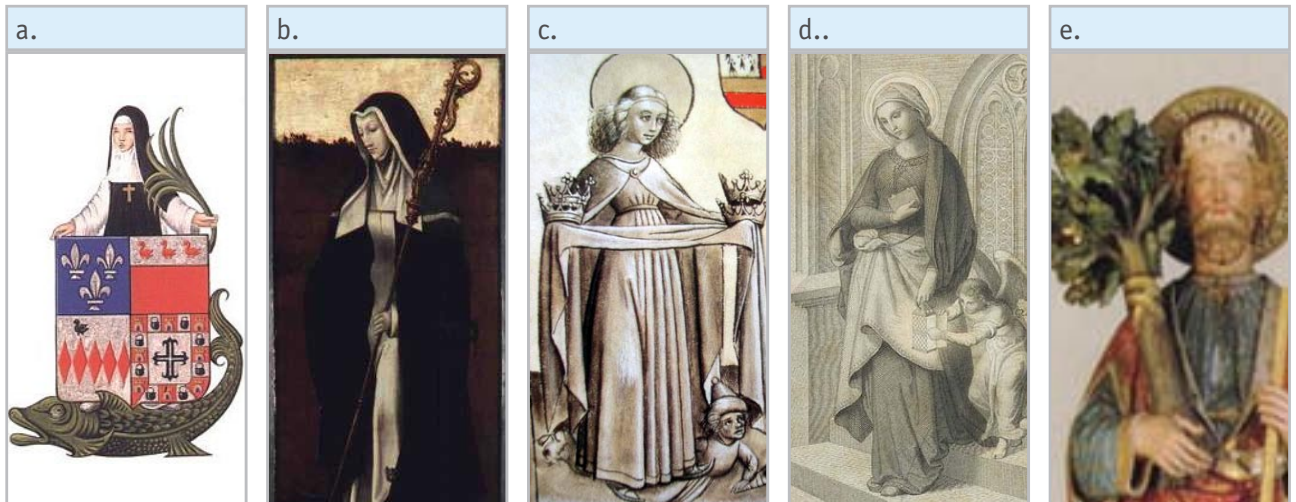
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saint_symbology

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Apostles>



4. Saint Symbology

4.1. Of saints and sinners and their wondrous lives ...



Find the names of these five saints, greatly worshipped in Belgium, match them with a picture, and find out how they are represented in iconography.

1./ /

She was the daughter of Pepin of Landen and Blessed Itta. When she refused to marry the Merovingian king Dagobert I, she and her widowed mother went to live in a convent, which had been founded (on the site of today's Collegiate Church of St ...) in 639 by her mother, who had brought the remains of her husband to this place of worship. Itta appointed her daughter as the first abbess (Benedictine) of the first convent of the Low Countries. She was known for her hospitality to travellers and aid to Irish monks. She gave land to St Folian, on which he built the monastery of Fosses, and helped St Ultan in his evangelization. Her cultus spread widely in the Lowlands, neighbouring countries, and England. As late as 1822, offerings of gold and silver mice were left at her shrine in Cologne; mice represented souls in Purgatory.

- The Collegiate Church of St ... at Nivelles was named after her
- She became the patroness of travellers and gardeners. Her patronage also includes: insanity and mental illness, pilgrims, recently dead people, suriphobia (also known as musophobia); etc.
- People invoked her to get rid of rats and mice.
- She is represented

2./ /

She was born in northern France and was married off to one Bertolf, the son of a local lord, who abandoned her before the wedding feast was over. She was abused by her in-laws, especially her mother-in-law, who called her "black crow", because of her black hair, and sent her to the fields to act as a scarecrow. The wicked woman arranged for her to be strangled with her own scarf by two henchmen. When she took a long time to die, she was held head first in a pool. The water where she was drowned subsequently assumed miraculous powers and a Benedictine convent was established here. The present-day (Benedictine) Abbey of the Well (Abdij ten Putte) was built on the same site in 1891. These days it is a place of pilgrimage with the miraculous well, the Crow Chapel, the Sewing Chapel with a miraculous seamless shirt, supposed to have been made by ... herself. Her skeleton is still preserved in a reliquary.

- The Abbey of the Well (Abdij ten Putte) in Gistel, near Ostend was dedicated to her.
- Patroness of difficult marriages, in-law problems, throat diseases, victims of abuse, and victims of spouse abuse.

- She is represented

3./...../.....

She was the daughter of Count Witger and St Amelberga, and was educated by St Gertrude of Nivelles. She dedicated herself to God in 664 and was known for her great charity. Every morning she went to pray at a little church in Moorsel. And every day the devil blew out the candle in her lantern, so that she would get lost and fail to reach the church. However, every time an angel was sent by God to light her lantern again. When she died she was buried in front of the church door of her hometown in Hamme (Moorsel). Later her relics were “translated” to Moorsel and in 1047 to the Collegiate Church of St Michael in Brussels. In 1579 the Calvinists destroyed her shrine and scattered her relics.

- The Church (now Cathedral) of St Michael in Brussels was also dedicated to her in the 12th C.
- Patroness of Brussels and of single laywomen.
- The flower called *tremella deliquescens* bears fruit in the beginning of January and is known as “*Sinte Goulds lampken*” because not even the winter can extinguish it.
- She is represented

4./...../.....

A niece of Pepin of Landen, she was married early to Count Witger. She was the mother of St Gudula, Saint Emebert (Emembertus), and St Reineldis (Reinilda). When the youngest child was grown, both she and her husband retired to Benedictine monasteries, the Count to Lobbes, she to Maubeuge. She once escaped an importunate suitor by crossing the river Scheldt on the back of a giant sturgeon. She was buried beside her husband at Lobbes monastery, and her relics have been in Saint Peter’s Abbey church in Ghent since 1073.

- She is commemorated in Temse by a procession on Whit Tuesday.
- Patronage : against arm pain, bruises and fever; Ghent.
- She is represented

5./...../.....

He was born in Brabant as the son of the Lord of Emblem. He married a shrewish noble woman, but they had no children. Apparently in order to escape his nagging wife, he became a soldier in Pepin the Short’s army, serving eight years in the field in Lombardy, Saxony, and the Aquitaine. In his absence his wife abused the servants and withheld funds for their support. On his return, he tried to convert her, failed, and they separated in their later years. He became a hermit. Many wondrous stories are told about him. He even mended a broken tree with his belt.

- The Church of St ... in Lier bears his name.
- Patronage : since he himself suffered from a broken marriage and because he performed the miracle with the broken tree he is invoked for broken marriages and broken bones as well. His patronage also includes childless people, courtiers, cowherds, hernia; glovemakers, Lier, and woodcutters.
- He is represented

Adapted from:

- Blyth, D, *Belgium*, 9th edition. London: A&C Black, 2000 (Blue Guide)
- De Vries, A., *Flanders. A Cultural History*, Oxford: Signal Books, 2007
- <http://www.catholic.org/saints/stindex.php?Ist=G>
- <http://saints.sqpn.com/patron02.htm> (patron saints alphabetically)
- <http://www.newadvent.org/> (the Catholic Encyclopedia)

4.2. Who's who?

Link the images of these 'Belgian' saints (1 – 11) to the correct information bit (a – j) and fill in their names. One saint is represented twice.



- a. _____
Also called ... of Egypt or ... the Great – Father of Western Monasticism lived in the desert for 20 years – His sister was a nun – His relationship with pigs and patronage of swineherds is a little complicated.
- b. _____
One of the most popular saints in Europe in the Middle Ages – She was the daughter of a rich heathen who kept her shut up in a tower in order to preserve her from the outside world – When her father found out that she had secretly become a Christian, he beheaded her – In punishment for this he was struck by lightning on the way home – Her patronage list is very long – one of the Fourteen Holy Helpers.
- c. _____
A 4th C Bishop of Rheims – His relics were relocated to Torhout – Later, Charles the Bald gave the relics to Earl Baldwin of Flanders, who translated the relics to Bruges, to the church (later cathedral) named after this saint – The painter Jan van Eyck was buried in this church (demolished by the French in 1799).
- d. _____
She was the daughter of a pagan Irish chieftain, who made advances to her after the death of his wife – She fled to Belgium and was killed by her father in Geel – Known for her miraculous healings of the insane and possessed.
- e. _____ (painting by Petrus Christus)
An extremely skillful metalsmith – Counsellor to King Dagobert I – He was generous to the poor and ransomed slaves – Bishop of Tournai in 641 – Preacher in Antwerp, Ghent and Kortrijk.
- f. _____
A soldier and a martyr, who protected women and fought evil. Patron saint of the Teutonic Knights, archers, Boy Scouts, England, etc... etc...
- g. _____
Grandson of the King of Toulouse – A husband and a father – First Bishop of Liège – Apostle of the Ardennes – Known for his excellent preaching and generosity to the poor – Jägermeister
- h. _____
Born in 1599, Diest – Son of a shoemaker – He had a dream of helping and teaching migrants and studied all the chief languages of Europe – He made kindness, courtesy, and constant fidelity an important part of his holiness
- i. _____
Born to nobility, he became a missionary in Toxandria (Brabant) with St Willibrord in the late 7th C – He was murdered for defending sanctity of marriage – Stabbed through the heart by a javelin – Buried in Maastricht and translated to Liège by Saint Hubert.
- j. _____
One of the outstanding woman mystics of the Middle Ages – She became a Black Benedictine nun and later joined the Cistercian nuns, who were stricter – Blind for the final eleven years of her life.

4.3. Same exercise ...

10 saints (k – t), 12 pictures (12 – 23). Two saints are represented twice.



k. _____

Also known as St ... of Ghent – His shrine, carved by Hugo de la Vigne, is kept at St Bavo's Cathedral in Ghent – Died of the plague.

l. _____

Worked as a teenage maid at an inn in Leuven – Murdered by thieves and thrown into the river Deel (Dijle) – A devotion developed after miracles occurred near her original gravesite beside the river – Known as Proud Margaret ("Fiere Margriet").

m. _____

Also known as ... the Merciful or The Glory of Gaul – He was born to pagan parents and joined the Roman army at age 15 – Cut his cloak in half and gave it to a beggar.

n. _____

Born blind to a noble family and given to a peasant family, she gained her sight upon being touched by chrism during her baptism – Traditionally thought to be one of St Ursula's 11,000 virgins – The Cistercian convent of Klooster Marienhof near Borgloon has her reliquary, one of the oldest examples in Belgium of painting on wood.

o. _____

She was married against her will and had twin sons – Abused by her husband for 18 years, she was admitted to the monastery of St Mary Magdalen at age 36 – Had a chronic head wound (cf. crown of thorns) which bled for 15 years – Near the end of her life, her only request was a rose from her family's estate – Patron of desperate, seemingly impossible situations – Bees.

p. _____

French noble who gave his fortune to the poor and became a mendicant pilgrim – He ministered the sick but contracted the plague – Walked into the forest to die but was saved by a dog that brought him food – In jail for five years.

q. _____

Benedictine monk – Bishop of Dublin – Missionary with St Willibrord in Holland and Brabant – Martyred c. 775 near Mechelen, where his relics are kept in a golden shrine.

r. _____

Son of a wealthy Roman family – Officer of the Imperial Roman army – Charged with being a Christian, he was tied to a tree, shot with arrows and left for dead, but survived this ordeal – Associated with the plague.

s. _____

Both her father, a watchmaker, and her mother, a lace maker, were declared Venerable by the Church – A Carmelite nun, she defined her path to God as "*The Little Way*", consisting of love and trust in God

t. _____

Before she was to be married she wanted to undertake a pan-European pilgrimage in the company of 11,000 (or was it 11?) fellow maidens – They went to Rome and then set out for Cologne, which was being besieged by (Attila's) Huns – They were tortured to death to get them to renounce their faith (or because she refused to marry their leader).

4.4. Assignments

1. Choose the name of a saint (mentioned above or not) and find out more about him or her:
 - name(s), and meaning of the name
 - biography and historicity
 - feast (day)
 - folklore and stories
 - patronage
 - only venerated in Roman Catholic Church?
 - prayers, poems, songs, etc.
 - **representation in iconography**, attributes or emblems, images
 - churches and relics

Check:

- the Patron Saints Index on <http://saints.sqpn.com/>
- http://nl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Categorie:Belgische_heilige_of_zalige
- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Iconography> (with more links, e.g. 'Saint symbology')

Here are just a few tips:

- St John the Baptist (the bonfires in Belgium and the Netherlands on 24 June, his feast day, to celebrate the summer solstice (which is actually on 21 June); etc.
 - St Hubert/Hubertus (the link with Jägermeister)
 - St Willibrordus (the "christening pits" and Willibrordus churches in the Kempen)
 - St Amandus (the Apostle of Flanders)
 - St Nicholas, bishop of Myra
 - St Dymphna (Irish princess)
 - St Ursula and the 11,000 virgins
 - St Christopher, one of the *Fourteen Holy Helpers*
 - St Medard, patron saint of good weather (eagle)
 - etc
2. Since there were so many saints, people started to put them into categories. Find out more about: the *Fourteen Holy Helpers*, *Pest Saints*, *Fire Saints*, *Rain Saints*, *Cattle Saints*, *Winter Saints*, etc.
 3. In many religions water is a very strong symbol, purifying and healing. Sometimes it is a river (e.g. the River Jordan in which Jesus was baptised by John the Baptist), but usually it is a spring or well. Although some of these holy wells have disappeared, many have survived to this day. Probably pagan in origin, they were linked to the saints who "found" and/or christened them. Some of these "spring/well saints", like St Domitian(us) of Huy had a special gift for finding wells. Primus inter pares, however, was St Willibrord of Echternach. The Willibrordus "christening pits" and churches may be found all over The Netherlands, the Kempen and the rest of Flanders. Find more information on the power of water, the holy wells and their saints, and holy rivers. (Music Tip: gospel and blues traditionals like *River Jordan*, *Down by the Riverside*, etc.)

5. Symbols

5.1. Christian symbols

Find the names of these symbols.

Find more information: description, origin, symbolic meaning, variations, only in Christianity?, etc.



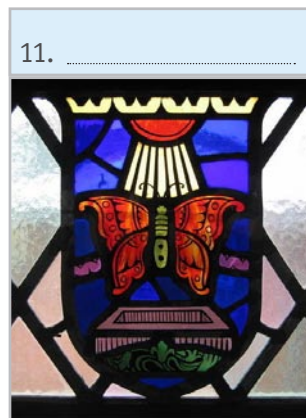
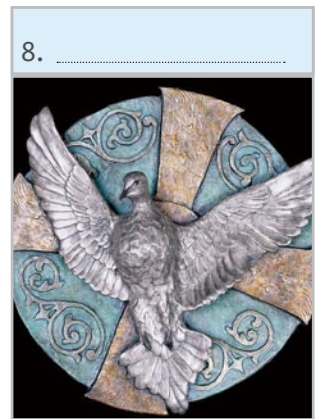
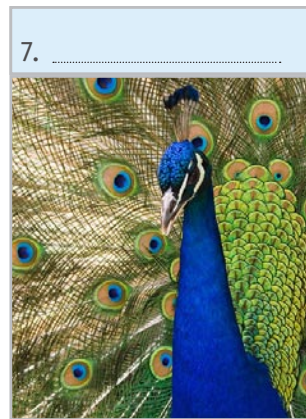
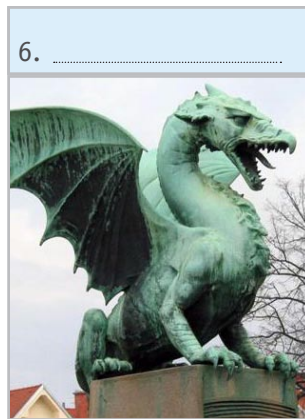
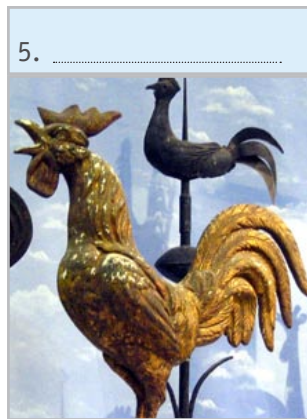
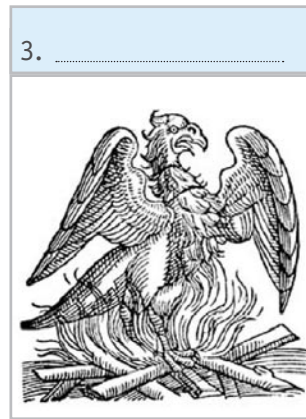
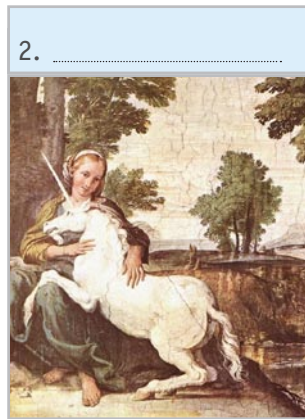
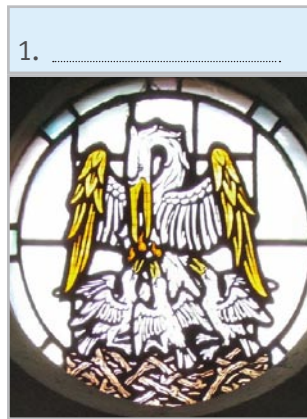
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.
11.
12.
13.
14.
15.
16.
17.

Check:

- <http://www.religiousfacts.com/symbols/>
- <http://www.fisheaters.com/symbols.html>

5.2. Christian animal symbols

Fill in the names and find more information.



For information:

- <http://fisheaters.com/symbols.html> (great website!)
- wikipedia

5.3. Typology

Typology is the interpretation of some events, stories and characters in the Old Testament as allegories foreshadowing the New Testament. Thus the 12 prophets in the Old Testament prefigure the 12 apostles, and Elias's fiery wagon is a prefiguration of the Ascension of Christ. Daniel in the lion's den relates to Christ's Descent into Hell, followed by the Resurrection. Etc. Find more examples of typology.



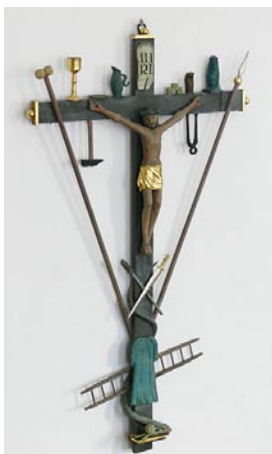
In this tragic and obsessive painting, *The Scapegoat*, William Holman Hunt instituted the Jewish sacrificial religious tradition of driving a goat out into the wilderness to die as a symbolic expiation of sin, as a type of Christ. Find more information on this painting and its typology.

Find information:

- Wikipedia
- Hoozee, R., *British Vision. Observation and Imagination in British Art 1750 – 1950*, Brussels: Mercatorfonds (Museum voor Schone Kunsten, Ghent)

5.4. More items for assignments

Find information on one of these items:



- (symbols of) the Four Evangelists
- (symbols of) the devil, evil, sin
- (representation of) the Trinity
- the Ark of the Covenant and the Mercy Seat
- the 4 cardinal virtues and the 3 theological virtues
- the 7 corporal Works of Mercy and the 7 spiritual Works of Mercy (“Werken van”)
- the 7 deadly sins (or capital vices, cardinal vices)
- the Weapons of Christ or Arma Christi (photo left)
- Tree of Jesse (photo right)



5.5. Symbology of numbers

What do these numbers stand for? 1 – 2 – 3 – 4 – 5 – 6 – 7 – 8 – 9 – 10 – 12 – 13 – 16 – 33 – 40 – 666 – 1000

5.6. Non-Christian symbols

Find the names of these symbols.

Indicate which "religion" they belong to: Buddhism (B), Christianity (C), Judaism (Ju), Hinduism (H), Islam (I), Jainism (Ja), Paganism (P), Taoism (T), Gnosticism (G), Norse mythology (Nm), etc.

Find more information on one of these symbols: description, origin, symbolic meaning, variations, colours, etc.

(Name of) Allah – Anarchism – Chaos – Hands of God – Lotus Flower – Menorah – Ohm/Aum –
 Ouroboros – Pentagram – Star and Crescent (Moon) – Star of David – Sun Cross – Swastika –
 Triquetra – Wheel of Dharma – Yin and Yang



1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.
11.
12.
13.
14.
15.
16.

Sites:

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Iconography>

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Symbolism>

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_religious_symbols

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Christian_symbols

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Animals_in_Christian_art

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Category:Christian_symbols

<http://www.religionfacts.com/christianity/symbols>

<http://home.scarlet.be/~hlvb/het%20land%20van%20beveren/symboliek.htm> (Symbolen en tekens, Richard Willems)

<http://www.bible-researcher.com/symbolism.html>

<http://www.religiousfacts.com/symbols/>

<http://www.fisheaters.com/symbols.html>

6. Symbols, attributes, emblems ...

"The whole visible universe is but a storehouse of images and signs to which the imagination will give a relative place and value; it is a sort of pasture which the imagination must digest and transform." - Charles Baudelaire

6.1. National symbols

A national symbol is a symbol of any entity considering itself and manifesting itself to the world as a national community – namely sovereign states, but also nations and countries in a state of colonial or other dependence, (con)federal integration, or even an ethnocultural community considered a 'nationality' despite the absence of political autonomy.



National symbols intend to unite people by creating visual, verbal, or iconic representations of the national people, values, goals, or history.

These symbols are often rallied around as part of celebrations of patriotism or aspiring nationalism (such as independence, autonomy or separation movements) and are designed to be inclusive and representative of all the peoples of the national community.

Common official national symbols

the flag, coat of arms, seal or stamp of the land and/or ruling dynasty, the associated device and/or motto, the national colours, emblematic animals and plants/flowers, crosses, national anthems, royal and imperial hymns; the national symbol value of very popular songs, the office of the Head of State, and in case of a monarchy certain of its regalia, such as crown jewels, the Father/Mother of the Nation and other founding fathers/mothers

Common unofficial national symbols

National myths/epics about the country's history or founding

National dishes, dress, day, instrument

Folk dances, folk hero, folk instrument, music, culture hero

Monuments and clichés associated with tourism, national personifications

Various other national emblems, including special plants, animals and objects associated with the nation,

In a nation largely stamped by a particular religion, some of its most revered symbols may be adopted as national symbols (occasionally even officially), e.g. the patron saint or equivalent deity, a major pilgrimage site, church or temple



6.2. Assignment

A tour leader can either introduce the country of destination by means of facts and figures or in a more playful way. Choose for the latter and use the above list with (un)official symbols.

- for a short introductory text
- as a geography quiz for your fellow students

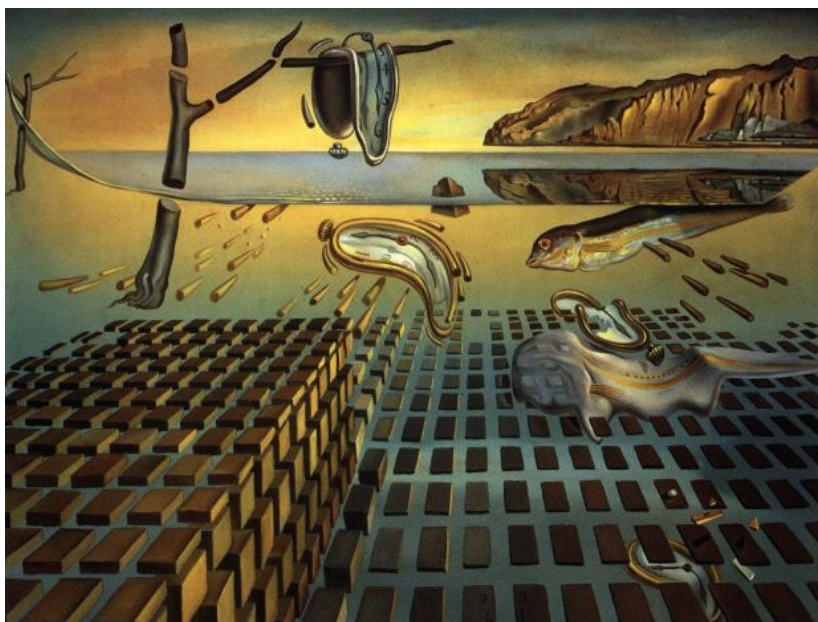
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_common_symbols (alphabetical list)

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_symbols

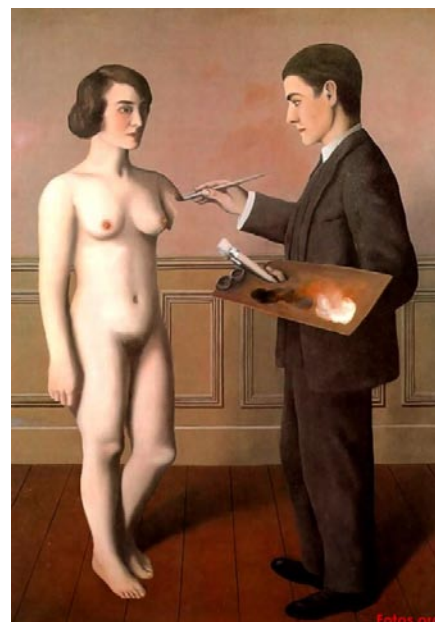
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_symbol

6.3. Surrealism and symbolism

Unlike their predecessors of the Middle Ages (religion) and the Renaissance (Antiquity), symbolist and surrealist painters - influenced by psychoanalysis - gave a new, highly personal interpretation to symbols.



Disintegration of the Persistence of Memory (1954) Dalí's way of ushering in the new science of physics above psychology



Attempting the impossible (Magritte)



6.4. Assignment

Present a modern artist to your fellow students and concentrate on the "intrinsic meaning or content" (Panovsky) of his work

<http://www.discovery.mala.bc.ca/web/martinar/surrealism/surrealism.htm>

(surrealist symbols: Dalí, Magritte!)

File 10

Cultural spectrum

1. Flemish culture in general

In days gone by, the thriving international trade led to a natural openness towards other cultures that then gave Flanders its own rich and internationally-oriented culture. Flemish painting reigned supreme and has now become a by-word in the worldwide history of art. At the moment, our region can be proud of painters like Luc Tuymans, Roger Raveel and Octave Landuyt.

Contemporary art in Flanders often occupies an avant-garde position due to the mix of international and local cultural elements. This applies to theatre as well as to dance, sculpture, music, fashion and literature. With her dance company 'Rosas' and international dance school P.A.R.T.S., Anne Teresa De Keersmaeker



Anne Teresa De Keersmaeker



dEUS

has put contemporary choreography on the map. Other prominent dance figures are Wim Vandekeybus and Alain Platel. Performing and plastic artist Jan Fabre and artist-designer Panamarenko regularly produce provocative or ingenious works of art. They are all contemporary interpreters of the Flemish cultural character.

Flemish fashion designers such as Ann Demeulemeester, Walter Van Beirendonck or Dries Van Noten are no strangers in the international fashion world. While the Antwerp Six are known throughout the world, artists such as Raf Simons, Kaat Tilley and Veronique Branquinho herald the arrival of a new breed of designers.

In recent years the number of Flemish bands and singers headlining and appearing on stages abroad has continued to increase, with stars such as Hooverphonic, dEUS, K's Choice, Ozark Henry, Novastar, Soulwax, 2 Many DJ's, Millionaire, Admiral Freebee and Axelle Red to name but a few.

In the light classical genre, Helmut Lotti continues to outsell everyone worldwide.

Classical music is popular in Flanders. Klara, one of the Flemish Radio and Television (VRT) radio stations, is totally devoted to classical music. It's no surprise that Flanders can count on some big guns where classical music is concerned: Philippe Herreweghe's Collegium Vocale, Jos Van Immerseel (Anima Eterna), Sigiswald Kuijken's

La Petite Bande, Huelgas Ensemble (Paul Van Nevel), Paul Dombrecht and the Il Fondamento baroque orchestra, opera conductor and counter-tenor René Jacobs, composers Dirk Brossé and Luc Brewaeys... Under the umbrella of the 'Festival of Flanders', hundreds of classical concerts are organized every year throughout Flanders.

And let's not forget the contribution made by numerous Flemish top-class musicians on the jazz scene. Toots Thielemans virtuoso harmonica style has long made him a household name and a star in his own throughout the international concert scene. Neither can we forget the new generation of jazz musicians like Bert Joris, Erwin Vann and Frank Vaganée. Flanders actually boasts one of the best big bands at a European level: the Brussels Jazz Orchestra.

However, you cannot measure the level of culture in society exclusively by the number of its top artists. Culture, in all its guises, is spread throughout Flanders and the Flemings. Everyone should be able to enjoy and take part in culture, and the Flemish Government ensures that culture is accessible to everyone. It subsidises theatre producers, choreographers, musicians, cabaret artists and a wide variety of artistic companies. Flanders supports them all in the development of their creative talents.

Various cultural institutions, such as cultural centres, community centres and public libraries, can count on the support of the Flemish Government. The most important condition for this support is that the cultural institutions take up the Flemish creative provision. In that way, Flanders boosts both demand and supply, which leads to a better cultural dissemination.

<http://www.flanders.be>

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Folklore_of_the_Low_Countries

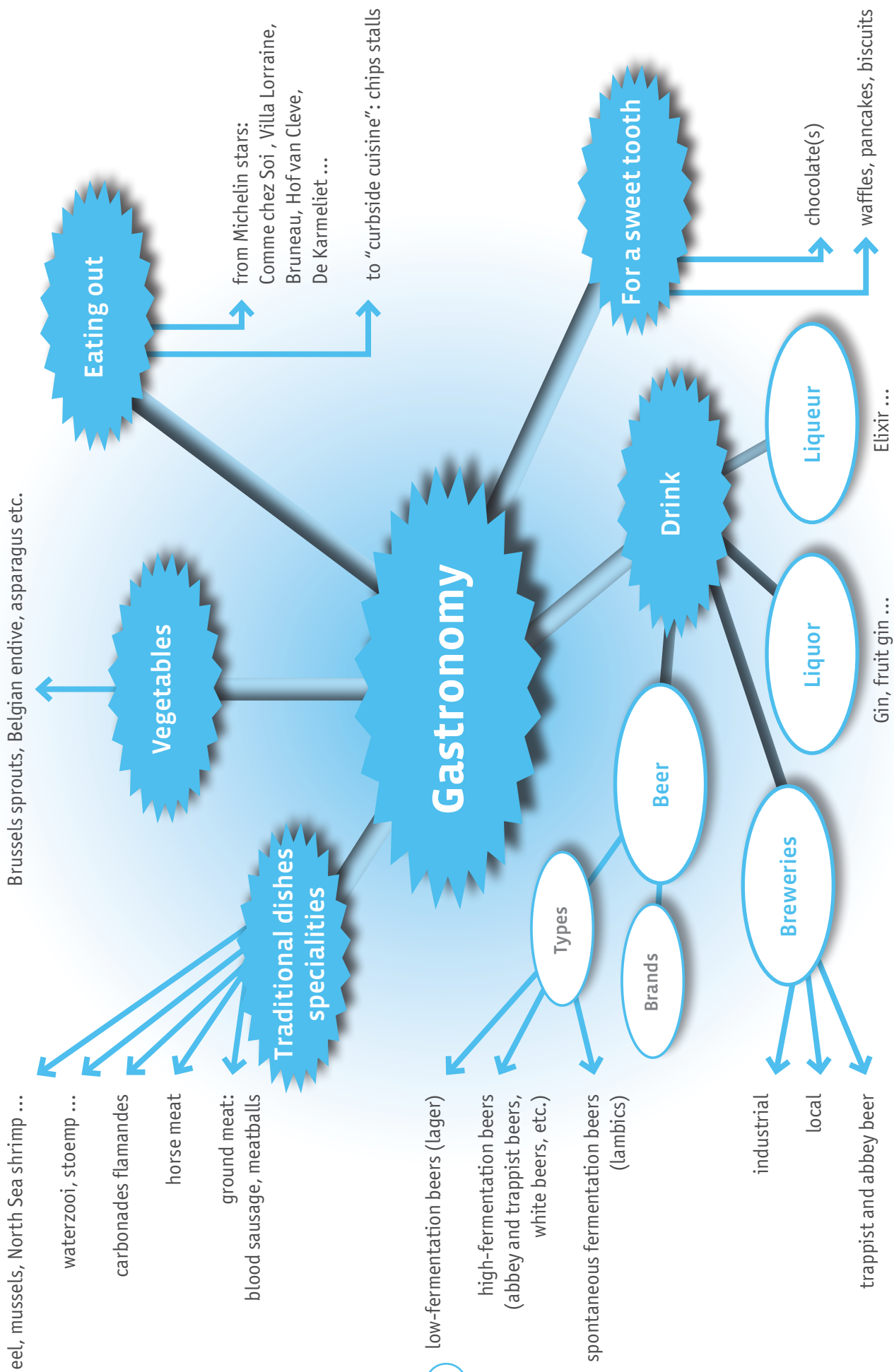
1.1. Vocabulary

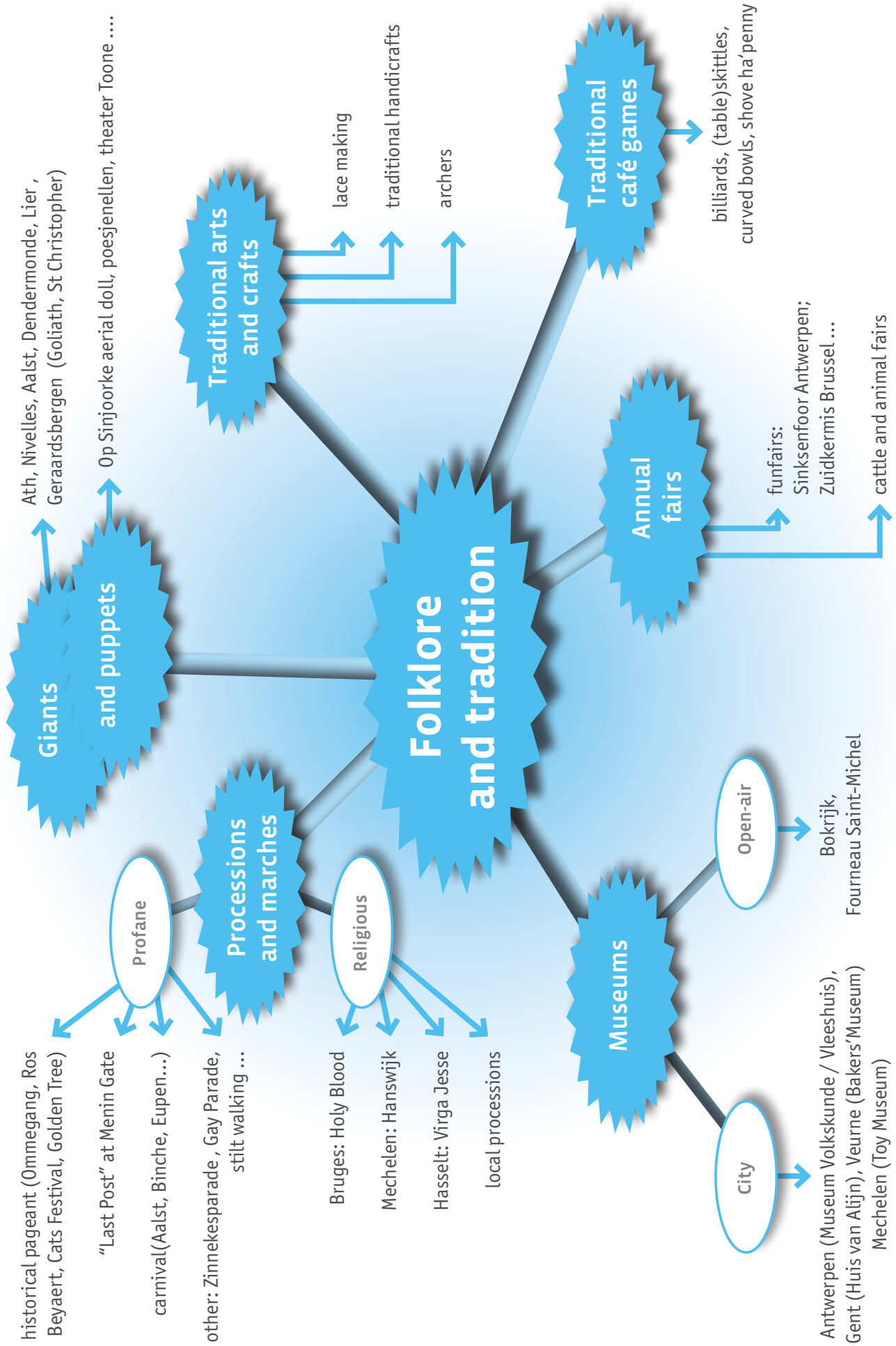
Replace by an underlined synonym from the text

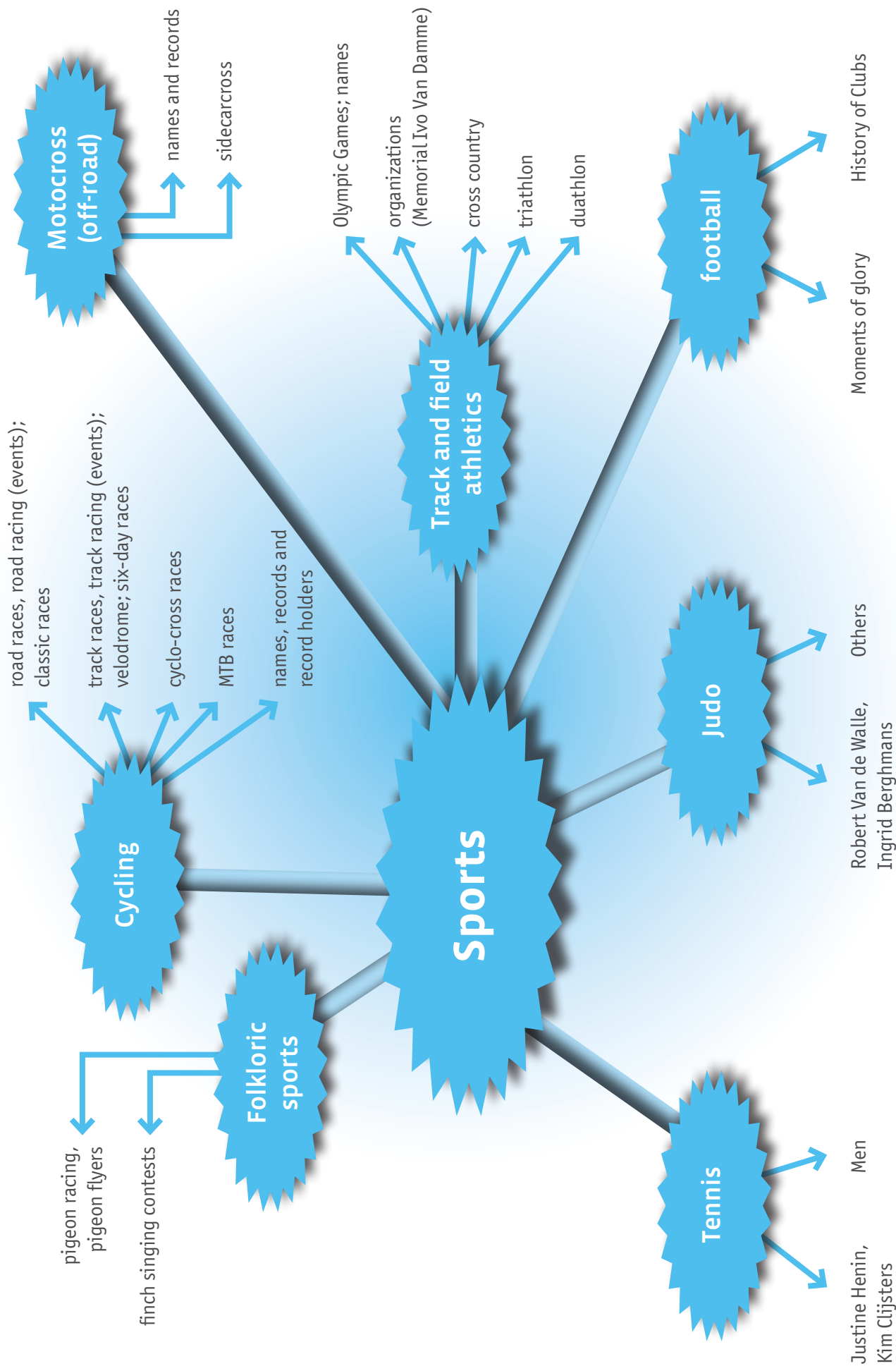
1. Real Madrid (disposes of some world players) to defend the title.
2. "Belgian" has become a (an epithet) for quality beer.
3. His career is taking off: his name (appears) on every bill.
4. The committee had to choose from the Flemish (pool of talent).
5. "Flandria" has become a (famous brand) in kitchens and hotels.
6. In his days Eddy Merckx (was the undisputed number one) in cycling.
7. These days culture in all its (different shapes) is an important part of the economy.

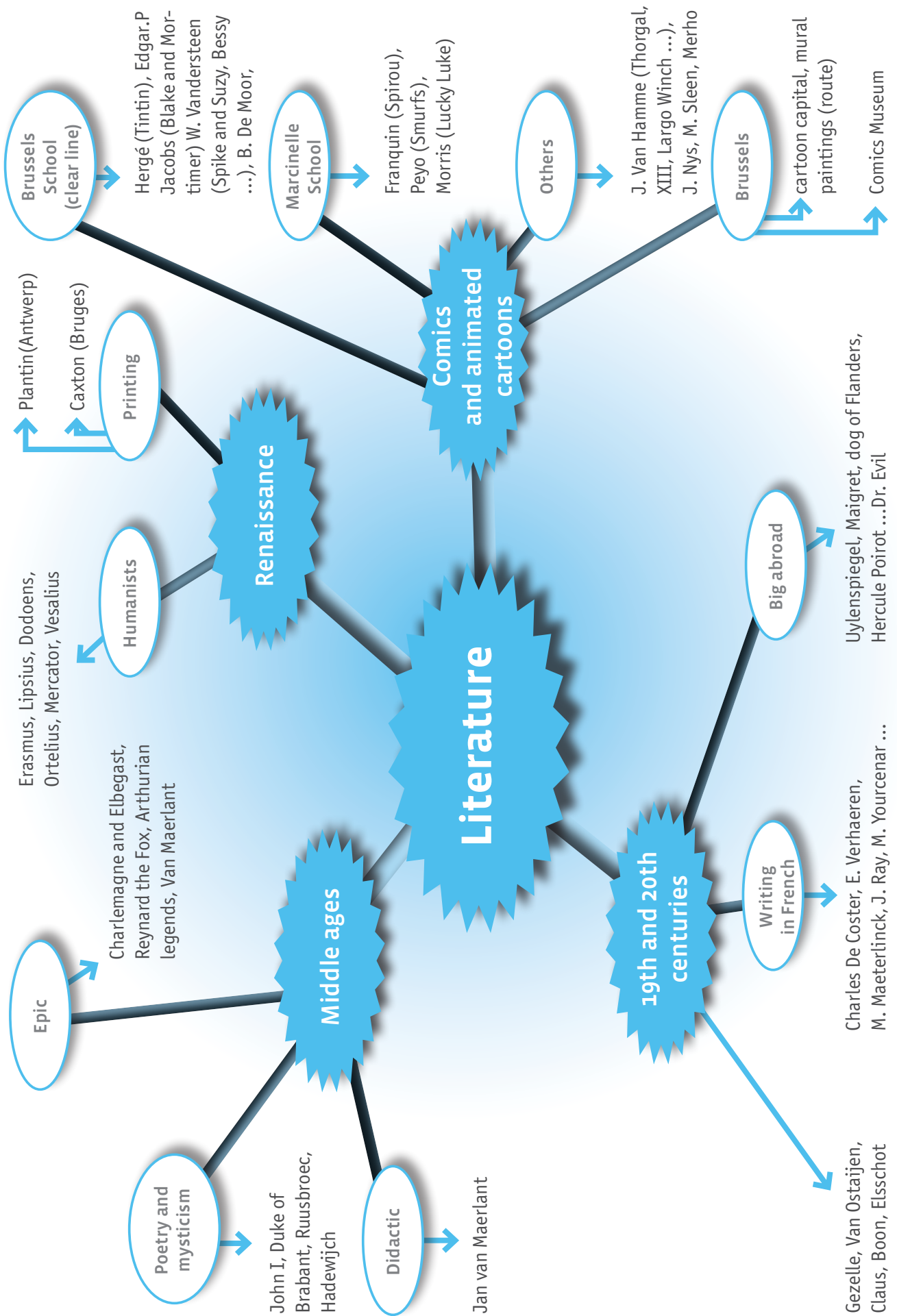
1.2. Assignment

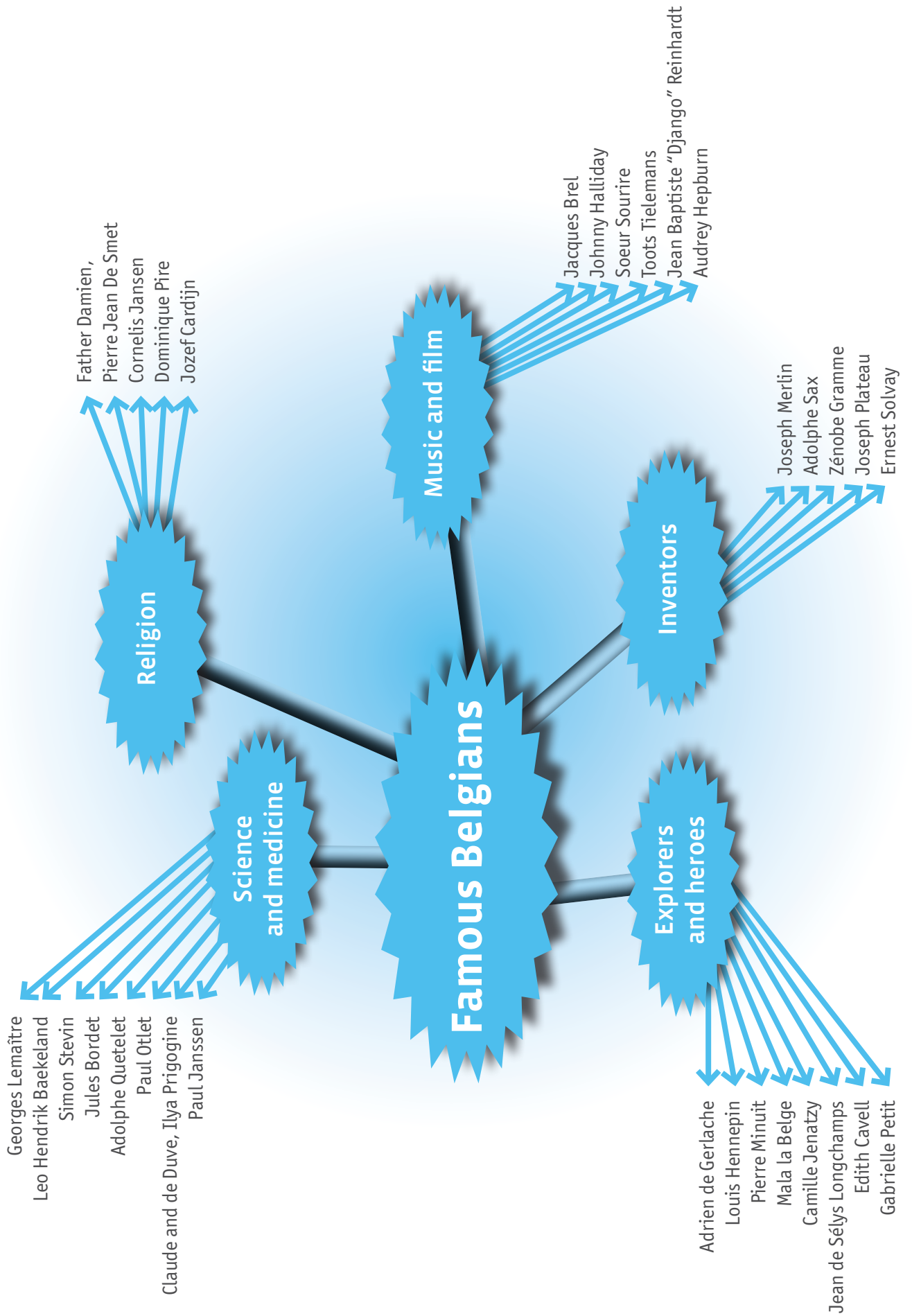
The mind maps on the following pages visualize, structure and classify aspects of the Flemish present-day cultural spectrum. Use them for further oral and written assignments.

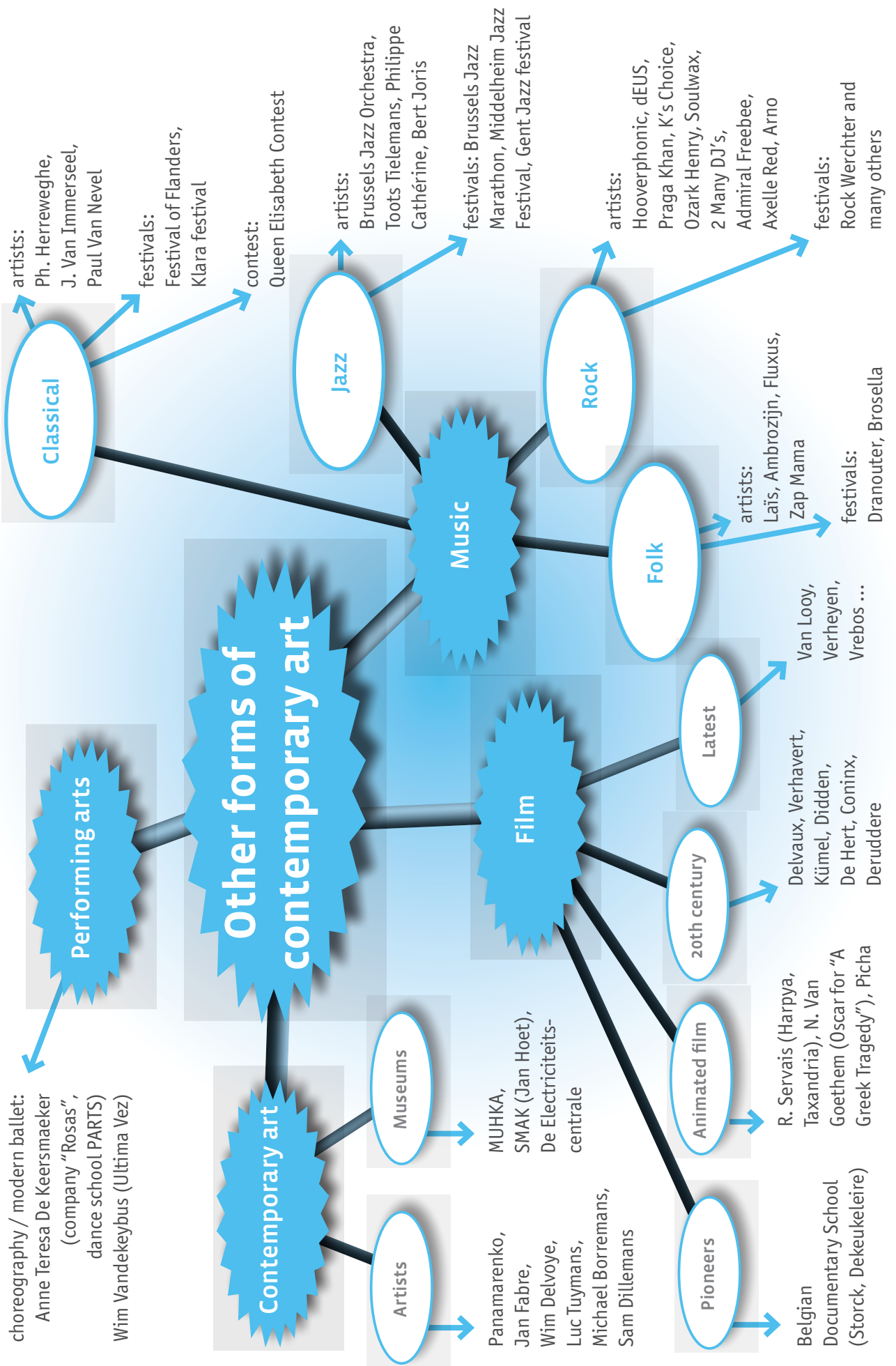












File 11

Geography and nature

1. Geographical description of Belgium and Flanders

1.1. Replace the Dutch words with the suitable translation

extends	pastures.	bordered	nerve centre	remnant
surface area	sluices	heathlands	wooded	spans

Belgium is situated in the west of Europe, **begrensd (1)** to the north by the Netherlands, to the east by Germany and the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg and to the south and the west by France. Although its **oppervlakte (2)** of 32,545 km² makes it a small country, its location has made it the economic and urban **zenuwcentrum (3)** of Europe.

Belgium **meet (4)** 2 degrees in latitude, from 51 degrees 30 minutes N at Meerle (northernmost point) to 49 degrees 30 minutes N at Torgny (southernmost point). In longitude, it spans less than 4 degrees, from 2 degrees 33 minutes E to 6 degrees 24 minutes E.

The geography of Belgium shows it to have three major areas: *lower Belgium* (up to 100m above sea level), central Belgium (between 100 and 200m above sea level) and *upper Belgium* (from 200 to over 500m above sea level). Lower Belgium begins in the west at the coast, with beaches and dunes which **zich uitstrekken (5)** in a straight line for 65 km. Inland from the coast lie the “polders”. This flat and fertile land used to suffer from flooding by the sea in the past but is now totally dry, thanks to the **sluizen (6)** which protect it from tidal erosion. Between the western polders, the Leie and the Scheldt, are the Flemish lowlands, a sandy region which is hilly in places such as the Kemmelberg and the Kluisberg. The Kempen lie in the east of the country. The soil in the Kempen is poor and the landscape comprises conifer woods, **heide (7)**, ponds, marshes, pastures and corn fields.

Behind the Flemish lowlands and the Kempen, gradually rising to the Sambre and Meuse valleys, lies central Belgium, with its low and very fertile clay plateaus. The heavily urbanised Brabant has its own lush green carpet, the forest of Soignes, a forest area and a **overblijfsel (8)** of the earlier Forest of Cologne, which covered a large part of the country in Roman times. Furthermore, central Belgium boasts Hainaut in the west and Hesbaye in the east, both fertile areas with large farms and extensive fields and **weiden (9)**.

Upper Belgium, the most sparsely populated and densely **bebost (10)** part of the country, begins south of the Sambre and the Meuse at the Condroz plateau, a fertile area which is regarded primarily as a tourist attraction on account of the beautiful valleys of the Meuse and the Ourthe and its numerous historical monuments. Between the Vesder and the Meuse lies the Country of Herve which due to its rich clay soil is suitable for grazing and cattle rearing. To the south of the Condroz lies the area of Fagnes and Famenne, which, although a poor agricultural region, is well known for its many mysterious caves, the most interesting examples being those at Han-sur-Lesse and Remouchamps. Further to the south are the Ardennes, a region alternating between a magnificent, wooded area with natural beech forests and specially grown fir trees, and plateaus and deep valleys. The Ardennes are a natural tourist attraction, and its southernmost part, Belgian Lorraine, has a milder climate than the rest of the country.

<http://www.belgium.be>

1.2. Combine word pairs / opposites referring to the props in the first column.

	SYNONYM	OPPOSITE
soil		
“up and down”		
landscape elements		
populated, wooded		
Equator, Greenwich		

2. Flanders mud

2.1. Complete the text with words from the box:

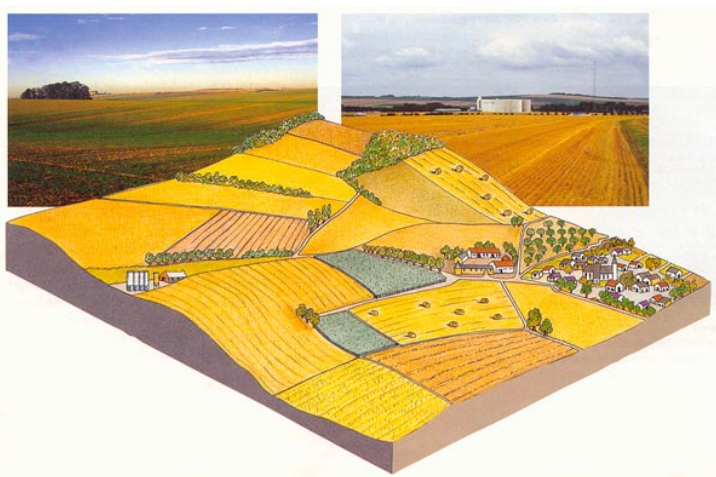
rate of flow - era - silted up - layer - swath - deforestation - deposits - soils - washed away - Ice Ages

The Flemish have had to work hard to make something out of what they were given by nature. While Flanders appears to be quite fertile, the Flemish were less fortunate than those in the southern French-speaking half of Belgium. Starting 55 million years ago in the Tertiary **1.**(tijdperk) almost all of Belgium was under the sea, and below the sea was a **2.** (laag) of clay some 330 feet deep. Further flooding over thirty million years deposited more layers of clay.

The **3.**(IJstijd) that began two million years ago caused the sea level to drop drastically, so much that it would have been possible to walk from Belgium to England. The big freeze also increased the **4.**(debiet) of the main rivers, the Scheldt and the Leie, which in turn carved out deep valleys. These were filled by shifting sand and particles of loam blown by the north wind, but as sand is heavier than loam and travels a shorter distance, most of the sand ended up in Flanders, roughly down to a line north of Ghent, while the more valuable loam **5.** (bodem) blew further south. Some of the better soil ended up in south-west Flanders and East of the Scheldt, with the best landing between Veurne and Diksmuide. There are also regions of heavy clay, where the original tertiary **6.**(afzetting) have not been covered by later wind-blown soil, in particular around Ypres and further south – as the soldiers of the First World War discovered.



Dunes at Het Zwin



Haspengouw

The Flemish coast as it appears today looked very different in the past. A whole **7.**(strook) of coast from Cap Gris Nez in France as far as the Kempen in Limburg first emerged from the sea around 2000 BC. When Julius Caesar arrived in 57 BC, the coast extended at least a mile further out to sea. In the Roman era the coastline was affected by a lengthy period of flooding caused by global warming. What is known as the *First Dunkirk Transgression* came to an end in the first century AD. The coastal plain was at that time mostly made up of peat, protected by a cordon of dunes.

The Second Dunkirk Transgression took place in the third and fourth centuries, so that the whole coastal region had to be abandoned. At this time there were wide channels running inland as far as Diksmuide and Bruges. The channels **8.**(verzilten) and created a new landscape of salt meadows, the *schorren*, only suitable for grazing sheep. It takes about sixty years for the salt to be washed out of the *schorren*.

Once the land dried out, and with the end of the Viking menace in 900 AD, there came a period of rapid economic expansion and population growth, which led to large-scale **9.**(ontbossing) and the creation of *wastinas* or heathlands. These are visible on old maps on the border of east and West Flanders where they appear under the name of “veld”, meaning not “field” but “wasteland” in Flanders.

The *Third Dunkirk Transgression* lasted from 1000 to 1150 and destroyed many of the sea defenses that had been built. The flooding had the effect of clearing a channel almost all the way to Bruges, the Zwin, as well as widening the Scheldt estuary, making it possible for Antwerp to develop as a port. More flooding in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries **10.**(wegspoelen) islands at the mouth of the Scheldt and cleared wider channels to Antwerp.

(De Vries, A., *Flanders, a cultural history*, Oxford: Signet Books, 2007)

2.2. Flanders and the Panama canal

April 3 2008, sandandgravel.com LR-Fairplay reports that the Panama Canal Authority has awarded its largest contract to date, for the dredging of the Pacific entrance to the Canal, to Dredging International.
<http://www.sandandgravel.com/news/article.asp?v1=10851> (8 April 2008)

George Washington Goethals (29 June 1858 - 21 January 1928) was a United States Army officer and civil engineer, best known for his supervision of construction and the opening of the Panama Canal. The Goethals Bridge between Staten Island, New York City and Elizabeth, New Jersey is named in his honor, as is the Goethals Medal. Goethals' parents left Stekene in East-Flanders in the early 1850s.
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington_Goethals

2.3. Flanders and dike-building

The Morini built their houses on the edges of the wet polders, on reclaimed land drained away for expandable farming, and on man made hills in the polders called *pol* or *terp*. Reminders of those pols can still be observed. They were successful farmers as polders are very fertile. Traces were found of dikes. They traded with other tribes, like the ancient (Kentish) Britons of nearby Great Britain and the Batavi of present-day Holland.
Wikipedia.com

2.4. Assignment

Find out more on the international role in building port infrastructure and reclaiming land by Flemish companies. (see: www.jandenuil.be www.decloedt.be www.deme.be www.dredging.com ...)



3. Nature and natural history

Belgium is one of the most densely populated countries of the world, especially Flanders. Many Dutchmen call Belgium a “planological disaster”. But the nature is unique, resembling that of the Netherlands and northern France for Flanders, but very different for Wallonia.

Belgium has 67 km of coastline along the North Sea, in the province of West Flanders. Places to visit here include De Panne, Ostend, De Haan and Knokke-Heist. Accommodation is very good, and there is plenty of choice, as the whole coastline is one big city, so to speak. Knokke-Heist has the natural reserve The Zwin, an estuary. The Zwin is a must see for bird watching. There is one nude beach, in Bredene, and it is one of the most crowded in Europe.

The part of Wallonia south of the river Meuse and Samber is generally known as the Ardennes. It is an ancient mountain range, comparable to the German Eifel and the most natural region of Belgium with the highest peak at 694 m (Signal de Botrange). The Ardennes attracts a lot of tourist in all seasons. In summer, people from all over Europe like to enjoy the calm and the nature, the forest and rivers. In winter, it is possible to do some winter sport like skiing, especially in the Haute Fagnes (high fens), in the east of the country, near the German border.

The Ardennes region is rich with caves offering spectacular shows of stalactites, stalagmites, underground rivers, etc. Many of them can be visited, with the sophistication ranging from sound and light shows, via boat trips on underground rivers, to exploring caves with a candle.

The Ardennes also contains many castles in varying states of repair, many of which can be visited. During the summer many of them offer exhibitions of falconry or host special events. Several offer hotel facilities, usually with a special gastronomic theme.

Belgium is famous to paleontology fanatics for its Iguanodon collection. The Royal Belgian Institute of Natural Sciences in Brussels houses 30 skeletons of Iguanodon bernissartensis. Also of interest is the Walloon town of Spy, where in 1879 the remains of a Neanderthal were found, at the Grotte de Spy.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tourism_in_Belgium#Nature_and_Natural_History



The Hautes Fagnes, or High Fens, is a plateau of swampy heath, woods and windswept moors that sweeps over to Germany’s Eifel hills. The area is popular with walkers and cyclists. This rainy and boggy area is the largest reserve in Belgium and a perfect spot to walk off some of that beer and chocolate along its many trails and wooden boardwalks.

Start a visit at the Botrange Nature Centre, located 2.5km from the sturdy stone Signal de Botrange that marks Belgium’s highest point (694m/2277ft). Wildlife in the area include deer and the rare black grouse.



Border park De Zoom – **Kalmthoutse Heide** is a cross-border nature reserve with many pools, heathland, inland dunes and vast forests.

The whole area measures 3750 ha (9375 acres) and is home to some real ecological treasures. Moreover the entire park constitutes a landscape with great cultural-historical value. The area is cut through by the Belgian-Dutch border and is owned by varied bodies and parties: along the natural and forest areas that belong to the Dutch and Flemish authorities one can find large private estates, small scale agricultural areas, and small forest properties scattered all over the region. This diversity makes the park well worth a visit.

3.1. Assignment

Make a Powerpoint presentation on your favourite regions, e.g. the seaside with the Zwin, the Ardennes with its rivers and caves, the Kempen and Limburg, the green belt around Brussels, cycling opportunities in the Scheldt valley ...

<http://www.flemishcoast.co.uk/>

<http://www.ardennes-info.be/index.en.html>

<http://www1.limburg.be/bokrijk/eng/index.html>

4. National Botanic Garden

Within a stone's throw from Brussels, you find one of the world's largest botanical gardens. Situated in the historical Bouchout domain in the small village of Meise, grows a treasure trove of plants from all over the world. We offer you an ever-changing view on the fascinating world of plants.

But a botanic garden is much more than a park or garden. On our site we will attempt to convey some of the tasks that botanic gardens in general, and the National Botanic Garden of Belgium in particular, undertake.

Botanic Gardens are both the research centres and curators of the plant world. In our gardens, laboratories, herbaria and greenhouses plants are constantly being studied, classified and cultivated. Without this vital knowledge we stand in danger of losing many aspects of biodiversity, our planet's richest asset.

Important Collections at the National Botanic Garden of Belgium



The Botanic Garden is home to several internationally important collections. Undoubtedly, one of the most important is our living collection, containing many rare and beautiful plants.

The living collection is used for research, conservation and education. Two of the most important elements of the living collections are the collection of wild beans and members of the family Rubiaceae, the fourth largest family of flowering plants.

No less important are our collections of non-living material, which includes an substantial herbarium of over 3 million specimens. Our collections of African plants are some of the best in the world and are frequently used by visiting scientists.

In addition there are special collections of wood, fruits and algae; microfilms of historical herbaria such as that of Linneaus; a pollen collection; a color slide collection and Iconotheca of algae, fungi and myxomycetes

www.br.fgov.be

4.1. Assignment

Find out about national and other famous gardens in neighbouring countries.

<http://www.gardenvisit.com/g/roy2.htm> (Kew gardens)

<http://www1.limburg.be/bokrijk/eng/html/museum3xanders.html> (Bokrijk)

www.toerismelimburg.be

5. The Royal Greenhouses of Laeken, a City of Glass

The Royal Greenhouses in Laeken cover six acres of neoclassical rotundas, domes and galleries. Twenty full time gardeners tend the giant ferns, fruit-bearing banana trees, grottoes, glades and grassy vistas. Highlights include the Azalea House, the rotunda, a colony of birds and the orange trees. Walkways are filled with climbing geraniums and fuchsias, whose blossoms form an overhead canopy. The visit ends with a short walk through the Royal Park (160 hectares).

Besides the greenhouses, the visit includes the Queen Elisabeth's workshop and the stables of the castle which were built in the beginning of the 20th century during the reign of King Leopold II and King Albert I. They are a masterpiece of the architects Girault and Flanneau.

The origins of the Royal Castle of Laeken, the official residence of the Belgian royal family, go back to 1782 when Marie Christine of Austria and her husband Albert of Sachsen-Teschen built a French-style residence in the beautiful wooded landscape north of Brussels. The park, however, was not laid out in the baroque fashion of the day but in the form of an English garden with simulated wild and untamed nature.

After the Austrians lost their power, Napoleon made Laeken his residence and thoroughly restored the palace. During his stay he also signed the fateful order for the advance of his armies into Russia (1812).

King William I moved into Laeken and assured his place in posterity by building an orangery. It was barely finished when the patriots revolted and Leopold I took residence in Laeken. His son, Leopold II set out to enlarge the garden and - with the help of architect Balat - built massive greenhouses against the lush green background of the wooded park. These greenhouses formed the largest connected glass structure in Europe. They were kept at a constant temperature throughout the year and contained everything from orange trees to rubber plants, rhododendrons to exotic plants. The gardens of Laeken grew into a city of glass. Leopold spared no cost. The exterior construction of the representative Winter garden with its eighty-foot-high glass cupola used for royal receptions cost the king half a million gold francs. Nevertheless Leopold continued to plan for further expansion: the Congo House, a glass pleasure palace with five domed towers presented the excitement of Central Africa and at the same time resembled a Byzantine church.



Leopold II

Later Leopold commissioned a real church, the Eglise de Fer, in light, airy glass. It was based on the king's own design and provided an artificial home for tropical plants in the sacristy. A long glass corridor connected the church to the palace. Leopold died in his own magic green world, in a private apartment in the Palm House on December 17, 1909. His private life had been shadowed by tragedy: his only son, the heir to the throne, had died at the age of nine of pneumonia, following a fall into the pond in the garden of Laeken.

5.1. Vocabulary

1. Make a list of the *plants and trees* mentioned in the text. Can you pronounce them correctly (dictionary or answers.com)
2. The following words / expressions refer to nature in combination with architecture. Look up the meaning / translate / find synonyms
 - rotunda:
 - dome(d):
 - grotto:
 - glade:
 - walkway:
 - canopy:
 - wooded landscape:
 - simulated wild and untamed nature:
 - orangery:
 - a long glass corridor:
 - a pond:

6. The Castle of Belœil

The Château de Belœil is situated in the municipality of Belœil in the province of Hainaut, Belgium. Since the fourteenth century it has been the residence of the Prince de Ligne. The castle lies in the middle of a magnificent baroque garden designed in 1664. Castle and gardens can be visited during spring and summer.

History

Belœil came into the possession of the Ligne family in 1394. At the beginning of the 15th century the local castle was chosen as the principal residence of the family. The old castle was a fortified rectangular building with a moat surrounding it and had four round towers at each angle. This basic structure is still preserved, although the facades and interiors were greatly altered during the following centuries.

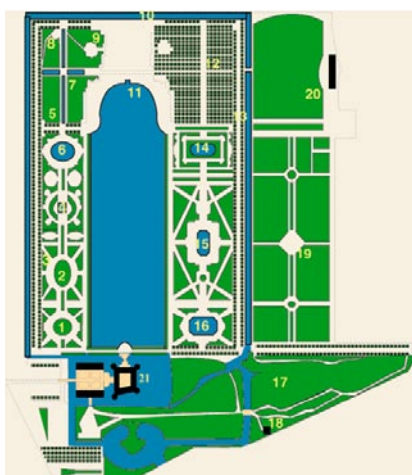


Beloeil Castle



Charles - Joseph de Ligne (1735 – 1814)

In the 17th and 18th centuries the fortified castle was adapted into a luxurious country house following the French example. From 1664 onward the magnificent park, with its straight alleys, geometrical ponds and imposing perspectives was created. The typical 'bosquets' - garden chambers enclosed by high hedges - were preserved in spite of the changing fashion in the 18th and 19th centuries when English landscape gardens were preferred. A small landscape garden with a 'ruin' was laid-out in the direct vicinity of the château by the famous Charles Joseph, Prince de Ligne.



The interiors were luxuriously furnished with fine furniture and the art collections of the family. During the New Year's celebrations of 1900 disaster struck the château when it burned down completely. Most of the furniture, including the library of 20,000 rare volumes, and the art collection, were saved. The castle was rebuilt in the following years by the French architect Samson, while the interiors were sumptuously redecorated using the finest pieces from the Ligne collection.

The 120ha/296 acre park of Belgium's "**Little Versailles**" was designed and laid out in the 18th C by Prince Claude Lamoral II with the aid of the French architect Chevetot. A series of small hedged gardens, several with pool, are arranged in typical Rococo fashion around the 460 m/1,500 ft long ornamental lake known as La Grande Pièce d'Eau, at the far end of

which stands a Neptune group by Henrion. The splendid 5 km/3 mile Allée grande Vue extends beyond the boundaries of the park itself.

English gardens

With English-style gardens very much in fashion at the end of the 18th century, Prince Charles-Joseph had one laid out to the side and rear of the left-hand wing. This part remains private and not open to the public.

Each year in Spring, Beloeil castle hosts a flower show with 2,000 amaryllis and 600 orchids exhibited in the various rooms of the castle that are open to the public

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Castle_of_Bel%C5%93il

<http://www.chateaudebeloeil.com/visit-our-gardens>

<http://www.belgiancastles.be/>

<http://www.visitbelgium.com/gardens.htm>

http://www.eupedia.com/belgium/belgian_castles.shtml

6.1. Assignments

1. What exactly is the difference between a French-style garden and a landscape (English) garden. Illustrate with some (famous) examples in the Low countries, Britain or France.
2. Throughout the Middle Ages and the Renaissance the Low countries pioneered in gardening. Find more information on
 - botanists like Rembert Dodoens, Charles de l'Escluse, and Matthias de l'Obel
 - the garden of the Plantin museum
3. Hasselt boasts the largest Japanese garden in Europe. What are the main differences between European and Japanese gardens. (typical features, styles, famous examples ...)

7. Ignace Schops wins prestigious Goldman Prize 2008

Let's do at least what we expect from others. If densely populated, well developed and prosperous regions don't take responsibility for biodiversity and nature conservation, why should undeveloped regions be held to different standards? It's up to us. Let's give a sign to our precious world!"

Europe 2008



Ignace Schops

After years of campaigning, Ignace Schops has led the effort to establish Belgium's first and only national park. Raising more than US\$90 million by bringing together private industry, regional and European Union (EU) government, local stakeholders, and NGOs, Schops has created a new model for land conservation in the EU and beyond.

After Coal, Conservation

The province of Limburg in northeastern Belgium contains large woodlands, extensive pine groves, flowering meadows and many rare and unique animals. Since 1901, when coal was discovered in the region, the amount of open space has dwindled, making way for industrial and community infrastructure to support the population employed by the mines. For almost a century, the coal industry thrived in Limburg, but in 1990, the area's seven mines closed, leaving 40,000 people unemployed.

The region around the old mines, a highly industrial and densely populated area owned by the government, is adjacent to Hoge Kempen, an area within the province that has retained its natural beauty, despite nearby development. Following the closing of the mines, jobs were badly needed in the region and several corporations wanted to build factories in the Hoge Kempen. However, very few precious open spaces remained in the province and a conflict arose between conservation and development.

In response to pressure from industry, the largest coal company and the largest NGO for nature conservation in Belgium, Natuurpunt, founded Regionaal Landschap Kempen and Maasland (RLKM) in 1990. Their goal was to conserve the land in the province and continue to provide jobs and economic development.

Through his engagement in nature conservation and his field study on herpetology (amphibians & reptiles), Schops began to see that nature conservation and biodiversity could be helped with a different, progressive approach based on enthusiasm and connectivity.

In 1997, Schops and a group of friends began working with RLKM to campaign for permanent protection of a piece of the Limburg landscape through the creation of Belgium's first national park. They believed that the park could provide jobs and revenue through eco-tourism, as well as conserve open space for the future.

Since beginning his work in conservation in 1990, Schops had built a network of politicians, including mayors, parliament members and ministers who were willing to work with him. For six years, RLKM, Schops and his friends lobbied the government and funded the national park campaign. Under Schops' leadership, over the next four years, more than US\$90 million was raised from sources such as the Flemish government, the European Rural and Regional Development Fund, municipal and provincial development funds, the European Union, local stakeholders and the private sector. Many of the funds he secured were new funding sources for nature conservation and sustainable development which had not yet been utilized. In 2002, the minister of environment agreed to protect the area if a master plan was created and funding was secured. In 2004, Schops became director of RLKM and has spearheaded the final steps to securing the park's future.

Belgium's First National Park

In early 2006, the Hoge Kempen National Park was officially opened by the European Commissioner for Environment. It has become a source of inspiration for environmental protection in Belgium. More than six million people live within one hour's drive of the park, and since its opening four hundred thousand people have visited. The projected economic revenue generated by the national park after operating for five years is US\$48 million per year. The park has created 400 jobs for the local community and has conserved nature and brought economic revenue to the region. Five gateways to the park have been established. Car parks, camp sites and information kiosks are being built, and walking and bike trails have been developed. Souvenir stores and a cafeteria have been completed as well as shops to rent and purchase hiking and bicycling equipment. Additional attractions are planned over the next three years for increasing revenue, while still maintaining free entrance to the park. The first and only national park in Belgium, it contains nearly 6,000 hectares and stretches across six municipalities.

The World Conservation Union (IUCN) plans to use Schops's model of creating and funding the national park as an example for other member countries, not only in Europe but around the world. His model demonstrates how a successful public-private partnership in the use and management of nature can be an asset for local and regional development. Schops, as the director of RLKM, will oversee the management of the park and its continued development, and other conservation projects in Belgium.

<http://www.goldmanprize.org/> 21 April 2008

7.1. Vocabulary

What word is used in the text meaning:

1. bosgebieden:
2. dennenbosje:
3. afnemen:
4. grenzen aan:
5. natuurbehoud:
6. inkomsten:
7. belanghebbende:
8. duurzaam:
9. wandel-, fietspad:
10. toegang:

7.2. Comprehension

1. Describe the historical background of the creation of the RLKM.
2. When was the RLKM founded, by whom and what was its goal?
3. Why does the IUCN want to use the Belgian model as an example for other member countries?



7.3. Assignments

1. Write a short text on the Goldman Prize and some of its recipients
www.goldmanprize.org/
2. Nature is one of the main tourist attractions in many countries. Present a particular landscape or an area of outstanding beauty to your fellow students. (See example)

Grand Canyon



The Grand Canyon is among the earth's greatest on-going geological spectacles. Its vastness is stunning, and the evidence it reveals about the earth's history is invaluable. About 65 million years ago in the earth's shifting, a huge area of land was lifted a mile and a half above sea level, forming what is now the Colorado Plateau. For the last 5-6 million years, the Colorado River has been slowly carving its way down through the many layers of rock. The river and its tributaries, together with the erosive forces of rain, snow, heat and cold, have formed a spectacular gorge one-mile

deep and at some points 18 miles across. The colorful strata of the canyon walls reveal the rock formations of the earth's evolution from nearly 2 billion years ago. The river continues to carve into the earth's surface.

<http://whc.unesco.org/en/list>

<http://www.unep-wcmc.org/sites/wh/grandcan.html>

<http://www.bobspixels.com/kaibab.org/home.htm> (Grand Canyon)

8. Common trees

BOTAN.	NL	ENGLISH	FRANCAIS	DEUTSCH
betula	berk	birch	bouleau	Birke
fagus	beuk	beech	hêtre	Buche
cedrus	ceder	cedar	cèdre	Zeder
cupressus	cipres	cypress	cyprès	Zypresse
pinus	den	pine	sapin	Kiefer
quercus	eik	oak	chêne	Eiche
alnus	els	alder	aulne	Erle
fraxinus	es	ash	frêne	Esche
acer	esdoorn	maple	érable	Ahorn
carpinus	haagbeuk	hornbeam	charme	Hagebuche
corylus	hazelaar	hazel	noisetier	Haselnussbaum
castanea	kastanje(tam)	chestnut	marronnier	Kastanie
aesculus	paardekastanje	horse chestnut	châtaignier	Roskastanie
cydonia	kwee	quince tree	cognassier	Quittenbaum
sorbus	lijsterbes	beam tree	alisier	Vogelbeerbaum
tilia	linde	lime/linden tree	tilleul	Lindenbaum
larix	lork	larch	mélèze	Lärche
juglans	walnoot	walnut tree	noyer	Nussbaum
ulmus	olm	elm	orme	Ulme
platanus	plataan	plane	platane	Platane
populus	populier	poplar	peuplier	Pappel
picea	spar	spruce	pin	Tannenbaum
salix	wilg	willow	saule	Weidenbaum

8.1. More than just trees

*Stand still.
The trees ahead and bush beside
you are not lost
(Albert Einstein)*

Fill in the names of the trees and vocabulary (1 – 6).

Fill in the names and find more information (7 – 10).

Find more information on:

- cultural significance – mythology – in literature
- medicinal use or other uses



1.

- The wood of this tree is hard, (“soepel”) and very strong. It is extensively used for making bows, tool handles, baseball bats, snooker cues, etc.
- In Norse mythology, the World Tree Yggdrasil is commonly held to be one.

2.

- They produce fragrant and nectar-producing flowers and are very important honey plants for beekeepers.
- The t..... (wood) of these trees is soft and easily worked. In North America it is known in the trade as ‘basswood’.
- A highly symbolic and h..... (highly venerated) tree to the Germanic peoples, even after Christianization. The tree of Freya.



3.

- The fruit of this tree is a nut called “acorn”. The wood is very dense, strong, hard, and very resistant to insect and fungal attack because of its high tannin content.
- It is used for furniture, timber frame buildings, wine and whisky barrels, corks, etc.
- A sacred tree in Celtic, Norse, and Greek mythology.

4. (.....)

- They are found mostly on moist soils in cold and temperate regions of the Northern Hemisphere. The male and female flowers appear as catkins on different trees. They (wortel schieten) readily from cuttings and are planted on the borders of streams so that their interlacing roots may protect the banks. Also used for wicker baskets.
- They are quite prevalent in folklore and myths; one of the nine sacred trees in wicca and witchcraft.





5.

- Closely (“verwant aan”) the beech and oak family. It is regarded as a pioneer species, rapidly colonizing open ground. The wood is used for v..... (“fineerhout”) and plywood, printing paper, loudspeakers (natural resonance), (“brandhout”), etc. The sap is consumed as a refreshing beverage in Russia and other countries.
- It is a national tree of Russia. It often appears in Russian and Baltic folklore and superstition.

6.

- Grows as a s..... (“struik”) or small tree. The berries are a valuable food resource for many birds, and the berries are used to make wine, brandy, jam, pies, herbal tea, syrup (usually diluted with water), soft drinks, etc.
- In folklore it was supposed to (“afweren”) evil, mend injuries, etc. It is associated with the cross of Jesus, with Judas, etc.



7.

.....

.....

.....

8.

.....

.....

.....



9.

.....

.....

.....

10.

.....

.....

.....



Find information:

- a [Wikipedia](#)
- a <http://www.whats-your-sign.com/celtic-meaning-of-symbolic-trees.html>
- a <http://www.mystical-www.co.uk/trees/index.htm>

9. "Water, water, everywhere" (S.T. Coleridge)

9.1. Vocabulary

Fill in the words as indicated.

1. The small town of St Amands commands a magnificent view of the Scheldt, which here forms a wide m..... (fanciful bend in a river, etc) between lush green b..... (land along the sides of a river). Enjoy a pleasant stroll or bicycle ride along the d..... ('dijken'). A f..... ('overzetveer') will take you to Moerzeke on the opposite b..... Don't forget to tip the f.....



Sint-Amands aan de Schelde



Castle of Marnix of St Aldegonde, Weert

2. The picturesque village of Weert is situated in a m..... (swampy) area of poplars, willows and reedland, with orchards and fields bounded by drainage d..... ('grachten'). Asparagus-growing and basket-weaving are the principal activities of these w..... (marshlands/swamplands).
3. The landscape around the Donk Lake grew from a f..... (overflowed/covered or filled with water/inundated) area of the Scheldt River. A part of the river has suffered from sanding and the forming of peat around an al..... (made of soil or sand put down by rivers, lakes, floods, etc) dune or 'donk' in the course of the centuries. The word 'donk' is deviated from the Germanic word 'dunga', which means 'sandy dune in a m..... (swampland).
In the 18th – 19th C, p..... ('turf') was exploited as fuel. Later, the pits of Berlare and Overmere Broek gradually filled with water. In 1862 and after World War I, Berlare Broek was emptied. It was afforested with w..... ('wilgetenen', 'wilgetakjes', 'rijs') for the production of w..... (the same word as the last one) baskets. After the Second World War, poplar trees were planted here for the production of matches. The Donk Lake itself is quite s..... (not

deep). You can visit the duck d..... (a large rectangular pond with a tentacle in each of its corners, ending in a bow net, which is arranged for trapping wild ducks).

4. During the Middle Ages the rivers around Ghent flowed in an area where a lot of land was periodically in..... (flooded). These richly grassed w..... m..... ('meersen', a word related to the English 'marsh' but not meaning exactly the same since a 'meers' is not permanently under water) were ideally suited for herding sheep, the wool of which was used for making cloth.



Donk Lake, Overmere



A boat lift at the Canal du Centre

5. The Canal du Centre was constructed between 1882 and 1917 to link the Meuse b..... (an area of land from which water runs down into a river/a valley) with that of the Scheldt and create a direct line of communication between Germany and France. The greatest problem was reducing the 90m difference in height.

This was finally resolved by the building of four canal l..... or b..... l..... (a construction for lifting boats) and six l..... (stretch of water closed off by gates so that the water level can be lowered or raised to move boats up or down), all of which are still operational. In 1998 this magnificent example of industrial archaeology was placed on UNESCO's World Heritage List.

6. Between La Roche-en-Ardenne and Liège, the Ourthe m..... (flows slowly, with many turns) through a delightful, tranquil valley. The tiny settlement of Durbuy, which lies among magnificent forests, is one of the most attractive holiday places in the Ardennes. Given borough status in 1331, it was the world's smallest town with fewer than 400 inhabitants until it was merged with other communities in 1977.
7. Antwerp, one of Europe's great p..... (a town with a harbour or docks, on a sea coast or on a river), is Belgium's second city. It is sheer pleasure to wander along the narrow streets and spacious squares, or to stroll along the w..... (part of a town near a stretch of water, especially

when used as a port). Tourists can go on a guided tour of the d..... (where ships are loaded and unloaded), which total up to 1,400 ha. Seven locks connect the docks with the Scheldt. The Berendrecht lock, opened in 1988, is the biggest in the world. On the Left Bank (Linkeroever), near the pedestrian and cyclist tunnel, are a m..... (a small harbour for pleasure boats, yachts) to the north and a b..... l..... (a lake where you can go boating) to the south.

8. The 70 km of straight s..... / c..... (the land along the edge of a large area of water, such as a sea, ocean or lake) is the only part of Belgium which borders the sea. On the beautiful b..... of fine white sand you can get a sun tan while l..... (people who are employed on a beach or at a swimming pool to help/rescue swimmers in danger) watch over the children playing with their wakeboards in the s..... (white water formed by the waves on the sea when they come in towards land). The coast has developed beyond recognition since the Middle Ages and is now bounded by sea w..... / b..... / e..... / d..... (walls or dams built alongside the edge of the sea to keep it from overflowing) with promenades; coastal d..... (“duinen”); b..... (thick walls built out into the sea to lessen the force of the waves); p..... (bridgelike structures of wood, built out into the sea) and s..... (situated along the sea) towns like Ostend, De Haan, Seabrugues, etc
9. The Danube r..... (begins) in Germany, in the Black Forest and r..... (flows) east. It passes nine European countries and four capital cities. After 2,820 km it f..... (discharges into) the Black Sea. Here the Danube b..... o..... i..... (divides into) three river arms or d..... . Its e..... (mouth) has created the second biggest d..... (an area of low land shaped like a Greek letter in the form of a triangle, where a river divides into branches towards the sea) in Europe, a true wildlife paradise. For centuries this river (together with the Rhine) formed the boundary of the Roman Empire.
10. From Ghent onwards the Scheldt becomes a t..... river (in Dutch ‘getijrivier’). At its l..... r..... (in Dutch ‘benedenloop’) the difference between e..... (low tide) and f..... (high tide) may be as much as 5 metres.



9.2. Some questions and assignments

1. In Dutch we sometimes talk about 'rieten mand' when we mean 'wilgetenen mand'. This may lead to confusion since in English there is a clear distinction between 'reed' and 'wicker'.
How would you translate this 'rieten mand'?
2. Is there a difference between an English 'pier' and a Flemish 'pier'?
3. What's the difference between a ship / a boat / a vessel / a ferry / a barge / an ocean liner / a cruise ship / a fishing boat / a trawler / a cargo ship or freighter / a container ship / etc
4. The Danube is the second biggest/longest river in Europe. Which is the biggest/longest river?
And worldwide?
5. Write a short text like the one on the Danube (9) and use the appropriate vocabulary :
Scheldt, Meuse, Rhine, Volga, etc

9.3. Songbook

A good idea for a song is the traditional *'The Peat Bog Soldiers'* which is sung in England, Flanders (Rum) and Germany (Liederjan).

9.4. Spa, from health-giving natural water to Formula 1 racing

The 18th century aristocratic health resort of Spa is located in the eastern Ardennes, 38 km southeast of Liège. Though now somewhat faded it still has a certain elegant allure. Not far away, the Cantons de l'Est is a curious German-speaking region which once belonged to Prussia. The region has many good country hotels and local restaurants offering smoked Ardennes ham and delicious game in the autumn.



Spa Casino



Pouhon Peter the Great

The springs at "Sparsa Fontana" have been celebrated since Roman times. Pliny the Elder wrote of the springs in his *Natural History*. Its fame spread throughout Europe in the 16th century after Augustino, the Venetian physician of Henry VIII of England published a book containing case histories of people cured by mineral waters. The resort was later visited by Henry III of France, Marguerite de Valois, Charles II of England, Christina of Sweden and Peter the Great of Russia . Not all the visitors were equally enchanted. 'We arrived at the nasty Spa and have begun to drink the horrid sulfur water', Sir Ralph Verney grumbled in his 17th century memoirs.

The long list of distinguished visitors led Joseph II to describe Spa as the 'Café of Europe'. By the 18th century, many people came here for the casino founded in 1763 as much as the waters. The visitors became known as bobelins from the Latin word bibulous (heavy drinker). The first modern style horse races on the Continent were held at the Hippodrome outside Spa in 1773, and the first car rally in Belgium was run in 1896 on a course near Spa. By the end of the 19th century the town was mobbed by 15,000 visitors a year. The numerous 19th century British visitors led to street names such as the Boulevard des Anglais, the Avenue du lawn Tennis and the route de Balmoral.

Spa was briefly the scene of dramatic events in 1918 as the First World War drew to a close. The German General Headquarters was established at the Hôtel Britannique in March. The Kaiser moved into the Château de Neuboïs, 2 km east of Spa. There he ordered Ludendorff's dismissal on 26 October. The Kaiser later moved to La Frainese where he learned on the afternoon of 9 November that the chancellor Prince Max von Baden, had on his own initiative announced the Kaiser's abdication in Berlin. Early the next morning, the Kaiser left for the Netherlands from Spa station. After the Armistice was signed, a German military mission remained in Spa for a few months to confer with the allies.

The waters of Spa



Rich in iron and bicarbonate of soda, the waters of Spa are prescribed for heart and respiratory problems and rheumatism. The springs are known as pouhons, from the Walloon word for a healing spring. The chief springs are Pouhon Pierre-le-Grand in the town centre, and the Tonnelet, Sauvinière, Groesbeek, Géonstère and Barisart springs. The Spa monopole water bottling plant is near the station.

One of the highlights of a 19th century trip to Spa was a carriage tour of the springs. The same route can now be followed by tourist train or on foot with a map from the tourist office.

See also:

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spa%2C_Belgium

9.5. Assignment

Some items related to Spa deserve further elaboration:

- the British in Spa (cf. "Barry Lyndon" Thackeray / Kubrick)
- gambling / casinos
- the Grand Prix at Francorchamps
- brand of mineral water (active in Benelux, France and UK (<http://www.spadel.com/>))

10. Big in Belgium

10.1. Belgian and Flemish draught/draft horses



The Belgian draught-horse (also, Belgian Heavy Horse, Belgium Heavy Draught, or Brabant) comes from the West-Brabantian region of Belgium and is one of the strongest of the heavy breeds. It has evolved from 4 local types: the Flemish horse, the Dender bay horse, the Hainaut grey horse, and the colossal Méhaigne horse. The Flemish horse almost disappeared in the 20th C but managed to survive in America. In 2005 it was once again officially recognized as a cold-blooded horse. These horses are called “(Old) Belgians” in the USA, whereas the Belgian draught horse is called “The New Type Belgian”.

Find more information for an oral presentation or paper on the Belgian and Flemish draught-horse.

Here are some ideas:

- Distinguishing features; colour (chestnut, sorrel, red and blue roan, black and grey, flaxen mane); height (in ‘hands’); weight; studbook; hot blood/blooded (and thoroughbred), cold blood, warm blood etc.
- Origin and use (military horses, working horses or farm horses, show horses, trail riding horses); Oude Dikke van Wijnhuize (1835 – 1858)
- Records (Radar, Brooklyn Supreme)
- Other heavyweight horses: Ardennes horse, Percheron, Frisian horse (= ‘Belgian Black’ in Britain), Shire horse, Clydesdale, etc.
- Flemish draught horses (or (Old) Belgians). What do the Amish, Richard the Lion-Hearted, Henry VIII and Ivanhoe have in common? Answer: their appreciation of the Flemish horse.



Free-roaming Mustangs

Find more information (or make a quiz) on these items, well-known to any horse-lover: Przewalski – Arabian – Palomino – Pinto – Appaloosa – Quarter horse – ponies (Shetland, Dartmoor, Connemara, etc.) – Tinker (or Gypsy Vanner) – Mustang – Lusitano – Lipizzan(er) – (Norwegian) Fjord – Falabella – four basic gaits: walk, trot or jog, canter or lope, gallop; + pace – three types of horse racing: flat racing, steeple chasing, and harness racing (sulky) – races: Grand National at Aintree, Velká Pardubická, Prix d’Amerique, Waregem Koerse – gymkhana – eventing (comprising: dressage, cross-country, and show-jumping) – mounted police – famous horses: Red Rum, Ourasi, Seabiscuit, Pharlap, etc – horses in literature: Trojan Horse, Rocinante, Black Beauty, etc.– Crazy Horse – ...

Find information:

- Wikipedia / horse /
- <http://www.vlaamspaard.be>
- <http://www.palmbreweries.com> (Diepensteyn Stud Farm)
- <http://www.easternctdrafthorse.com/draftbreeds.html>



‘Belgians’ in the USA

10.2. Master builders

The beaver is back! About ten years ago, the “genius architect of rivers”, the “developer of territory”, the “regulator of water”, the “maintenance engineer of the riverbanks” and the “guarantor of biodiversity” was re-introduced into Wallonia, 100 years after it had become extinct in Belgium. Find more information for an oral presentation or paper on the comeback of the beaver in Belgium. Here are a few things to focus on:



- Who brought them back to Belgium? Where? When? How? Why?
- When and how did they disappear?
- Use (meat, fur, mucus used as aspirin).
- It strongly marked our culture. Cf the toponymy of rivers, woods, localities, villages and towns (e.g. Beverlo, Beveren, Strombeek-Bever, Beauvechain, Bièvre, ...). Tales, legends.
- In the 16th C a group of Walloon refugees (from Ohain, Brabant) and some Flemish fled to Holland and the New World (Manhattan, Pierre Minuit, Nova Belgica, a beaver in their coat of arms, New Amsterdam, New York).
- Beaver dams are water purification plants; they create natural lagunes, which in turn stimulate biodiversity and regulate the water.
- What does a beaver do?
- Etc.

Find information:

- <http://www.paysdescastors.be/index-en.php>
- <http://www.scotsbeavers.org/tourism.html>
- De Buren Knagen! DeTerugkeer van de Bever, an interview with Olivier Rubbers in Humo (15 January 2008) and <http://lvb.net/item/5935#58712> (Belgische bevers hebben stuwdam in de maag)

11. Off the beaten path ... cycling

In Belgium, and especially in Flanders, cycling is not only a national sport but also a favourite pastime. In the 'Insight Guide Belgium', Helmut Müller-Kleinsorge writes :

It holds a place in the national soul comparable to that of baseball in America, cricket in England, bull-fighting in Spain, or ice hockey in the Soviet Union and Canada. Cynics maintain that its popularity represents an escape from the boredom of a Belgian Sunday. Hardly a day goes by on which there is no cycling race somewhere or other, and they are always supported by thousands of enthusiastic spectators; a classic cycling race from Liège to Bastogne and back, for instance, will be lined by throngs of spectators all along the route. But it isn't just the cycling that people come to see. A rally is also a social event. Friends meet, drink a beer together, become carried away by the speed at which the cyclists race past, and enjoy listening to the results on the radio later on. In addition, cycling events are invariably attended by fairs and other attractions appealing to younger family members. Speculation as to why this enthusiasm for cycling should have grown up in Belgium usually cites the topography of the land. One ideal precondition is without doubt the flatness of the countryside. Except in the hilly eastern provinces, Belgium – like the Netherlands – makes the bicycle the most convenient and inexpensive mode of transport. Children organise impromptu races on the way to school, and farmers' wives use their ancient bone-shakers to reach the nearest village.

Although farmers' wives probably take the four-wheel drive to get to the nearest village nowadays, this pretty well evokes the Belgians' love for the bicycle.



11.1. Assignments



1. 'Here they come!'

It may be a good idea for visitors to go and watch a bicycle race. Do a presentation on, or write a paper about the 'Tour of Flanders', the annual classic bicycle race which is broadcasted live on TV : history / spectators / Flemish Ardennes (Is Flanders really as flat as Helmut M-K suggests?) / a favourite with foreign racers / cycling museums / bunch finish = mass finish = field sprint / etc

2. 'I want to ride my bicycle, I want to ride my bike ...!' (Queen, 'Bicycle Race')

Every weekend and on feast-days, from spring till autumn, people can take part in cycling tours all over Flanders and Belgium. These are organized by a whole range of organizations (MTB clubs, youth movements, football clubs, etc). It is a unique way of getting to know Belgium off the beaten track, and great fun on top. What may you expect when you participate in such an event?

- Is it free of charge?
- Do you have to bring your own bicycle? Can you rent a bike? Where? What kind of bike do you need?
- Distances? Condition of the roads? A lot of traffic? Also for children?
- Do you have to take a picnic? Can you eat something along the road?
- Is it safe? What about an insurance?
- Websites?

- What can you see on a tour like this? : the countryside / farms and fields / little country chapels and small wayside shrines / meadows with cows, horses, sheep, etc / orchards / brooks / trees / plants and flowers / wild birds / dovecots / a variety of architectural styles (ugly or not?) / sheds and shacks / etc

3. 'Ferry cross the Scheldt'

A cycling tour which links 7 ferries between Temse and Schellebelle takes the cyclist along the banks and inner and outer dikes of the Scheldt, past wetlands, water meadows and reed land. Bicycles can be rented at various stops along the route. Find more information and make a paper or presentation. Do the same for the Lys (or another river).



4. 'Take Me To The River'

Follow the river Scheldt from its source, northwest of the provincial town of St-Quentin, all the way to its estuary off Vlissingen. Make a brochure : route / map / places and objects of interest (e.g.the Menhir of Brunhilde/ Brunehault, the little church of Esquelmes, the little village of Les-Rues-des-Vignes with replicas of Carolingian and Merovingian houses, St Amands, etc) / distances / etc

5. 'The Bike Whisperer'

Isabelle Maenhout has invented the *Storyteller* ('Verhalenfluisteraar'), a GPS-operated audio guide which is mounted on the handlebars of a bicycle and 'tells stories' about the things that the bike-rider sees (a church, a building, the scenery, etc). Isabelle Maenhout is now the CEO of Navitell, a high tech company which produces the two audio systems *Storyteller* and *Twintraveller*. Find more information.

Note : Some of these assignments (or all of them) may be combined into one big project : Make a brochure on cycling tourism in Flanders/Belgium. You can include other items (bicycle taxis, MTB routes, cycling aficionados, etc).

Ideas for songs and poems :

- 'Bicycle Race' (Queen)
- 'Going Down Hill On A Bicycle: A Boy's Song' (Henry Charles Beeching)

File 12

Belgian economy

1. Belgian economy

Belgium, a highly developed market economy, belongs to the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), a group of leading industrialized democracies. With a geographic area about equal to that of Maryland, and a population of 10.4 million, Belgian per capita GDP ranks among the world's highest. In 2006, the per capita income (PPP) was \$33,000. The federal government has managed to present balanced budgets in recent years, but public debt remains high, at 94% at the end of 2005. GDP growth in 2006 was 3%.

Densely populated Belgium is located at the heart of one of the world's most highly industrialized regions. The first country to undergo an industrial revolution on the continent of Europe in the early 1800s, Belgium developed an excellent transportation infrastructure of ports, canals, railways, and highways to integrate its industry with that of its neighbors. One of the founding members of the European Community (EC), Belgium strongly supports deepening the powers of the present-day European Union to integrate European economies further.

With exports equivalent to over two-thirds of GNP, Belgium depends heavily on world trade. Belgium's trade advantages are derived from its central geographic location and a highly skilled, multilingual, and productive work force.

The Belgian industrial sector can be compared to a complex processing machine: It imports raw materials and semi-finished goods that are further processed and re-exported. Except for its coal, which is no longer economical to exploit, Belgium has virtually no natural resources. Nonetheless, most traditional industrial sectors are represented in the economy, including steel, textiles, refining, chemicals, food processing, pharmaceuticals, automobiles, electronics, and machinery fabrication. Despite the heavy industrial component, services account for 74.6% of GDP. Agriculture accounts for only 1.4% of the GDP.

Belgian Economy in the 20th Century

For 200 years through World War I, French-speaking Wallonia was a technically advanced, industrial region, while Dutch-speaking Flanders was predominantly agricultural. This disparity began to fade during the interwar period. As Belgium emerged from World War II with its industrial infrastructure relatively undamaged, the stage was set for a period of rapid development, particularly in Flanders. The postwar boom years contributed to the rapid expansion of light industry throughout most of Flanders, particularly along a corridor stretching between Brussels and Antwerp (now the second-largest port in Europe after Rotterdam), where a major concentration of petrochemical industries developed.

The older, traditional industries of Wallonia, particularly steelmaking, began to lose their competitive edge during this period, but the general growth of world prosperity masked this deterioration until the 1973 and 1979 oil price shocks sent the economy into a period of prolonged recession. In the 1980s and 1990s, the economic center of the country continued to shift northward to Flanders.

Foreign investment

Foreign investment contributed significantly to Belgian economic growth in the 1960s. In particular, U.S. firms played a leading role in the expansion of light industrial and petrochemical industries in the 1960s and 1970s. The Belgian Government encourages new foreign investment as a means to promote employment. With regional devolution, Flanders, Brussels, and Wallonia now have substantial autonomy in courting potential foreign investors, as each deems appropriate.

Foreign direct investment totaled more than \$36.7 billion in 2005. U.S. and other foreign companies in Belgium account for approximately 11% of the total work force, with the U.S. share at about 6%. U.S. companies are heavily represented in the chemical sector, automotive assembly, and petroleum refining. A number of U.S. service industries followed in the wake of these investments—banks, law firms, public relations, accounting, and executive search firms. The resident American community in Belgium now exceeds 20,000. Attracted by the EU 1992 single-market program, many U.S. law firms and lawyers have settled in Brussels since 1989.

Monetary

On May 1, 1998, Belgium became a first-tier member of the European Monetary Union. Belgium switched from the Belgian franc (BF) to the Euro as its currency after January 1, 2002.

Trade

About 75% of Belgium's trade is with fellow EU member states. Given this high percentage, Belgium seeks to diversify and expand trade opportunities with non-EC countries. Belgium ranks as the 11th-largest market for the export of U.S. goods and services. If goods in transit to other European countries are excluded, Belgium ranks as the 12th-largest market for U.S. goods.

Bilaterally, there are few points of friction with the U.S. in the trade and economic area. The Belgian authorities are, as a rule, anti-protectionist and try to maintain a hospitable and open trade and investment climate. As a result, the U.S. Government focuses its market-opening efforts on the EU Commission and larger member states. Moreover, the Commission negotiates on trade issues for all member states, which, in turn lessens bilateral trade disputes with Belgium.

Employment

The social security system, which expanded rapidly during the prosperous 1950s and 1960s, includes a medical system, unemployment insurance coverage, child allowances, invalid benefits, and other benefits and pensions. With the onset of a recession in the 1970s, this system became an increasing burden on the economy and accounted for much of the government budget deficits. The national unemployment figures mask considerable differences between Flanders and Wallonia. Unemployment in Wallonia is mainly structural, while in Flanders it is cyclical. Flanders' unemployment level equals only half that of Wallonia. The southern region continues a difficult transition out of sunset industries (mainly coal and steel), while sunrise industries (chemicals, high-tech, and services) dominate in Flanders.

Belgium's unemployment rate was 8.5% in 2006. A total of 4.4 million people make up Belgium's labor force. The majority of these people (73%) work in the service sector. Belgian industry claims 25% of the labor force and agriculture only 2%. As in other industrialized nations, pension and other social entitlement programs have become a major concern as the "baby boom" generation approaches retirement.

<http://www.state.gov/r/pa/ei/bgn/2874.htm>

Vocabulary

OECD

Per capita GDP

Balanced budget, budget deficit

Public debt

GNP

Sunset and sunrise industries

Structural and cyclical unemployment

Unemployment insurance

1.1. How is it said?

1. in the centre:
2. make more powerful:
3. forms of wealth supplied by nature:
4. represent, stand for:
5. mainly:
6. difference, inequality:
7. between the wars:
8. transfer of power to the regions:
9. lengthen in duration:
10. regard, consider:
11. surpass, be greater than:
12. row, rank, class:
13. start, beginning:
14. benefit:
15. withdrawal from one's occupation:

1.2. Comprehension

1. Without any natural resources Belgium manages to rank among the richest countries in the world. Explain the role of location, infrastructure, work force, trade ...
2. Explain the different economic history of Flanders and Wallonia. Describe the current situation.
3. What characterizes Belgian trade?
4. What elements of the social security system are mentioned?

2. Flanders' economy, science and technology

Flanders is a key economic region within Europe. It owes this position to its central location in the middle of the Western European industrial area. The economy of Flanders is characterised by its high productivity. It produces high quality products at the right price. Those products are mostly exported to the international market. An important advantage is the high level of education and multilingualism among the professional population. What's more, Flanders has an extensive system of social consultation at its disposal.

Throughout history, Flanders has always been a very important link in the European economy. The Flemish textile industry was crucial for the economic well-being of the Low Countries through the ages. Nowadays the textile and carpet industry still plays a prominent part, together with the petrochemical, car assembly, diamond and metalworking industries.

Flanders has an excellent transport network. Next to a vast motorway and railway network, Flanders has miles of navigable waterways. Without the river Scheldt for example, the port of Antwerp would never be what it is today. The port possesses one of the biggest docklands of Europe. Next to the port of Antwerp, the seaport of Zeebrugge is also of major economic importance.

Brussels International Airport at Zaventem ensures Flanders is easily accessible for the traveller. Furthermore, Flanders also has regional airports, for example those at Deurne, near Antwerp and Oostende.

Flanders works continuously at maintaining an innovative information economy. Every year, Flemish universities turn out qualified professionals and first-rate researchers. The top Flemish priority is an on-going co-operation between university centres, the government and trade and industry. Flanders is a leader in its field when it comes to biotechnology, micro-electronics, multimedia or information technology.

As a matter of fact, Flemings like popular science. The amount of visitors at Technopolis, the Flemish science centre in Mechelen, bears this out. On the other hand, multiple seasons of – award winning – popular scientific shows have been running on the Flemish Radio and Television (Boys and Science, How's that?) for many years.

The Flemish Government wants to turn the Flemish economy into a 'Creative Economy'. A new initiative has been set up: Flanders, District of Creativity. With this project the Flemish Government wants to set up space for creative entrepreneurship. The aim of the initiative is to strengthen the Flemish economy. Internationally, this means working with foreign regions on political and economic issues. The goal is to eventually arrive at concrete business opportunities.

<http://www.flanders.be/>

Automotive industry

Historically the automotive industry has always been at the heart of the Belgian economy. Belgium owes its international reputation as an automotive country to the presence of an important assembly and supply industry cumulating to a total added value of € 1.9 billion (Source NBB). Four renowned car makers have major production and assembly units here: Ford in Genk, Opel in Antwerp, Volvo Cars in Ghent and Volkswagen in Brussels. Their 23,757 direct employees yield an average annual output of 883,548 vehicles (2003 figures), worth a total of around € 10,6 billion. As a result, Belgium is still one of the world leaders in terms of per capita production. More than 96% of output is for export, further emphasizing the international character of this industry. The parent companies have all confirmed their confidence in Belgium by means of ongoing and sustained capital expenditure programs aiming at extra capacity (Volvo Ghent; +80% as of mid 2004) or additional platform flexibility (Ford and Opel).



Manchester United uses Van Hool bus



1929 Minerva (Crawford Cleveland Ohio)

More than 300 automotive suppliers in Belgium employ 70,000 people in the sector. These companies are active across a full range of services including production, logistics, engineering, R&D, ICT, services, etc. for a total added value worth € 3.3 billion (Source NBB). Their ability to adapt rapidly to new supply rules has put Belgian suppliers among the world leaders. Belgium also has a worldwide reputation for its production of trucks, buses and trailers. Names like Van Hool, Volvo Europa Truck, Stokota, Atcomex and Jonckheere Bus and Coach are just some of the first-rate players on the international automotive scene. Over 10,000 workers in the sector help generate an annual turnover of € 2.7 billion.

http://www.aiib.be/automotive_industry.asp

<http://www.agoria.be> (federation for the technology industry)

Antwerp, diamond centre of the world



Diamond studded tennis racket

Antwerp World Diamond Centre is not just a slogan. "Antwerp quality" and "Antwerp cut" are international trade terms synonymous with perfect processing and flawless beauty.

Antwerp has a long and magnificent tradition as a diamond city. Since the 15th century the city has played an important role in the diamond trade and industry. After the port, the diamond industry is the second pillar of commercial activities. Some 1,500 diamond companies are concentrated in the city centre. In less than one square kilometre, nearby Central Station, more than half of all cut diamonds pass through a network of diamond cutting

shops, diamond bourses and selling centres. Of the 25 diamond exchanges worldwide, 4 operate in Antwerp. Elegant showrooms offer the visitor fascinating tours and the opportunity to visit interesting exhibitions.

- More than 50% of the world's production of rough, polished and industrial diamond passes through Antwerp.
- 8 in 10 of all rough diamonds in the world are handled in Antwerp
- 1 in 2 of all cut diamonds passes through Antwerp
- Antwerp has the most renowned diamond cutters in the world
- The highest international mark of approval for polished diamond is the "Cut in Antwerp" label.
- The Antwerp diamond sector has an annual turnover of 39 billion U.S. dollars.
- The diamond trade is responsible for 8% of Belgian exports, and 12% of the Flemish region's exports.
- 30,000 people are directly or indirectly employed by the Belgian diamond sector.

The figures speak for themselves. Antwerp has created an international commercial platform upon which producers, manufacturers and traders from all over the world can meet.

Antwerp is the world's diamond capital but there are other large centers such as the Indian production hubs of Mumbai and Surat; Israel is a complementary trade centre, mainly supplying North America. Dubai is the regional distribution centre for the Middle East. New York is the primary port of entry into the United States, and the largest market for diamonds in the world.

Carpetland Flanders



The textile and clothing industry has been confronted with a drastic reduction in the number of people employed in the last 40 years: from ca. 250,000 to 65,000. Flanders realises more than 80% of the employment, mainly in Ghent, Kortrijk and the region in between. Textile and clothing become more and more an export product: export represents 80% of the total sales of the sector.

The sector has reacted to the shift in its competitive advantage (as a result of the high labour costs and increasing competition of less developed countries) by concentrating on automated processes, fashion design, synthetic carpets etc. Carpets are a special success story as Flemish carpets conquered world markets during the eighties and the nineties : Beau-lieu, De Poortere, Balta, Osta Carpets, Associated Weavers, Lano.

<http://www.antwerpen.be/eCache/BEN/16/392.cmVjPTE1NzU3.html>

<http://www.hrd.be/index.php?id=20>

2.1. Comprehension

1. What assets does Flanders dispose of according to the introductory paragraph?
2. Name the key sectors of Flemish industry.
3. Education and innovation are crucial. What are the aims of Flanders Creative District in this respect?
4. The automotive industry not only comprises car assembly. What other players are involved?
5. Give a short outline of the importance of the diamond business for Antwerp / Flanders.
6. Where is the Flemish textile industry situated and how did it react to high labour costs and increased competition?



2.2. Assignment

Write a short text like the one on automotive, diamond, textile on another vital sector of our economy. (steel and non-ferro, chemical industry, food, cement, glass, paper, services)

Useful sites

<http://www.investinlanders.com/en/home/>

<http://www.flandersinvestmentandtrade.com/>

<http://www.vlam.be/> (agriculture)

<http://www.flanders-brilliant.be/>

http://www.khulsey.com/jewelry/history_gem_cutting_antwerp.html (diamonds)

<http://www.febeltex.be/engels/sitemap.html> (textile)

<http://www.flandersdc.be/view/nl/2082161-Home.html> (Flanders District of Creativity)

3. Antwerp, European Main Port

The Port of Antwerp plays a leading role in international trade. The world's ships are not merely turned round in Antwerp's docks, there are lots of specialists who attend to the warehousing, packing and repacking, distribution and forwarding of the cargoes carried in them. This concentration of activities has enabled Antwerp to become an essential element of the European Union's import and export trade. Antwerp is far more than merely a Belgian port. After all more than half of the cargo it handles is either destined for or comes from other European countries.

Multipurpose port

The port of Antwerp handles more than 182 million tonnes of cargo per year (55% incoming and 45% outgoing traffic). This volume makes Antwerp the second largest port in Europe and the fourth largest in the world. A little under half of Antwerp's goods traffic consists of bulk such as coal, ores, fertilisers, grains and so on. Antwerp also handles large quantities of break-bulk. The various port operators have invested heavily in specialised handling installations for trades such as iron and steel, fruit, forest products, cars, dangerous goods and sugar. It thus comes as no surprise that Antwerp is a market leader in many of these trades.

Antwerp has responded positively to the unitised load phenomenon. Nowadays 78% of all general cargo is packed in containers. Antwerp's container terminals pride themselves on their productivity and low costs, outdoing many of their European competitors. Not surprisingly Antwerp offers the best quality to price ratio of all North Sea ports.

Container port

In 2005 the volume of containerised goods came to 74.6 million tonnes, or 6.5 million TEU. Over the last 10 years container tonnage has risen by 42.5 million tonnes or 164.7%. At present 78% of all general cargo is containerised. In 2004 the nine principal ports of the Le Havre-Hamburg range jointly handled 28.4 million TEU, or a total tonnage of 298 million tonnes. In terms of tonnage as well as of TEU Antwerp is the third largest container port in the range, after Rotterdam and Hamburg, and has a market share of 21.3%.

Container trade by geographical region in 2005	
Total: 74.6 million tonnes	
Europe	19.7%
Near East	20.3%
Mid and Far East	19.2%
North and Central America	24.2%
South America	5.7%
Africa	9.2%
Other regions	1.7%

Source: Antwerp Port Authority

Infrastructure and equipment

Antwerp's port sprawls over 13,057 hectares of land, north of the city centre. There are 150 km of berths, about half of which are suitable for deep draught ships. Antwerp has two sets of docks, one on each bank of the Scheldt. These docks are entered via sea locks.

The majority of the terminals is located in the docks. However, since the late eighties Antwerp has also been investing in riverside infrastructure. Two container terminals have been built next to the approaches to the Berendrecht and Zandvliet Locks, whereas on the Left Bank the first terminal of the Deurganck dock was opened on July 6th 2005. Both the Antwerp Port Authority and the cargo handling companies have invested huge sums in port equipment, much of which makes use of the latest technology. By far the greater part of the port's superstructure is owned by private sector companies. Antwerp can boast of excellent handling rates compared to competing ports.

Cruise port



Ever since Antwerp has a modern automatic gangway, the cruise ship owners have been finding their way back to the city on the Scheldt. Cruise ships can reach the Antwerp roads in one night from Dutch ports such as Amsterdam and Rotterdam, from English ports like Dover and Portsmouth and from Dunkirk in Northern France. The demand for interesting ports is mounting as a result of the growing success of cruises and the strong increase in numbers of European cruise tourists. By mooring barely 300 metres from the historic city centre, Antwerp's role as a cruise city is guaranteed.

Houston on the Scheldt



Antwerp is the largest petrochemical complex in Europe and worldwide second only to Houston, Texas. This is one of the findings of a survey, based on an analysis of 39 chemicals. Houston is the biggest producer for 24 of these 39 products. Antwerp is clearly in second position. On the other hand, Antwerp produces a much wider variety of chemical products, leaving even Houston behind it. The explanation for these concentrations lies in the cluster effect. The possibility of continuous on-line exchanges of raw materials and commodity products means that the industry tends to choose locations close to existing chemical and petrochemical plants and refineries, creating a cluster. The bigger the cluster, the more attractive to new locations.

<http://www.portofantwerp.be/html>

Vocabulary

Breakbulk: material stacked on wooden pallets

Draught: depth of a vessel's keel below the water line,

Berth: a space for a ship to dock or anchor

3.1. Comprehension

1. What activities - apart from (un)loading goods – take place in the port of Antwerp?
2. What three forms of packaging are mentioned?

3.2. Assignments

1. Compare Antwerp with its main rival Rotterdam.

<http://www3.ntu.edu.sg/CEE/program/pdf/NTU-Notteboom-Public%20Lecture-March07.pdf>

http://www.havre-developpement.com/upload/BenchmarkFinal03_2006.pdf

2. Investigate the link between Antwerp and the BRICs and other rapidly growing economies.

4. Demography

Population:	10,403,951 (July 2008 est.)	
Age structure:	<i>0-14 years:</i>	16.3% (male 864,287/female 828,435)
	<i>15-64 years:</i>	66.3% (male 3,476,802/female 3,416,383)
	<i>65 years and over:</i>	17.5% (male 751,745/female 1,066,299) (2008 est.)
Median age:	<i>total:</i>	41.4 years
	<i>male:</i>	40.2 years
	<i>female:</i>	42.7 years (2008 est.)
Population growth rate:	0.106% (2008 est.)	
Birth rate:	10.22 births/1,000 population (2008 est.)	
Death rate:	10.38 deaths/1,000 population (2008 est.)	
Net migration rate:	1.22 migrant(s)/1,000 population (2008 est.)	
Sex ratio:	<i>at birth:</i>	1.04 male(s)/female
	<i>under 15 years:</i>	1.04 male(s)/female
	<i>15-64 years:</i>	1.02 male(s)/female
	<i>65 years and over:</i>	0.71 male(s)/female
	<i>total population:</i>	0.96 male(s)/female (2008 est.)
Infant mortality rate:	<i>total:</i>	4.5 deaths/1,000 live births
	<i>male:</i>	5.06 deaths/1,000 live births
	<i>female:</i>	3.92 deaths/1,000 live births (2008 est.)
Life expectancy at birth:	<i>total population:</i>	79.07 years
	<i>male:</i>	75.9 years
	<i>female:</i>	82.38 years (2008 est.)
Total fertility rate:	1.65 children born/woman (2008 est.)	
Nationality:	<i>noun:</i>	Belgian(s)
	<i>adjective:</i>	Belgian
Ethnic groups:	Fleming 58%, Walloon 31%, mixed or other 11%	
Religions:	Roman Catholic 75%, other (includes Protestant) 25%	
Languages:	Dutch (official) 60%, French (official) 40%, German (official) less than 1%, legally bilingual (Dutch and French)	
Literacy:	<i>definition:</i>	age 15 and over can read and write
	<i>total population:</i>	99%
	<i>male:</i>	99%

<https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/be.html>

5. Social Security in Belgium

Belgium has a very extensive social security system. Foreigners also are entitled to certain allowances and to social services. The benefits which you may enjoy as a foreigner are strictly dependent on the conditions under which you are resident on Belgian soil.

Social security

The Belgian social security system is based on the payment of social contributions on your income from work. These social contributions serve to finance the social security system.

Each month the employer pays between 30 and 40% on top of your salary into the social security fund. The employee also pays a proportion of his gross salary in social security contributions. This fund is then used to pay social security:

- allowances in the event of sickness
- unemployment benefits
- allowances in the event of incapacity for work through sickness or invalidity
- allowances in the event of accidents at work
- allowances in the event of industrial disease
- family allowances
- pensions

The self employed can also claim social security. The self employed therefore pay a social contribution. This contribution is a lower percentage than the joint contribution of employers and employees, but gives fewer rights. However, the self employed may pay extra voluntary contributions which give them additional rights in certain cases. At the beginning, the self-employed pay “provisional contributions”.

For civil servants there are a number of rules which differ from those for employees and the self employed. Employees who work under contract for a government department may claim social security for employees.

There are also supplementary support systems. These supplementary support systems are not paid on the basis of contributions made, but are financed with government resources. To receive these forms of support you must meet strict legal conditions. As a rule these forms of support are dependent on your available income. Foreigners cannot always claim Social Security and support to the same extent as Belgians.

The supplementary support systems are:

- income support
- the income guarantee for the elderly
- the guaranteed family allowance
- payments for people with a handicap
- payments for help to the elderly

Social services

Everyone in Belgium is entitled to social services from the public social welfare centre, CPAS/OCMW.

They provide social services so that everyone can live with dignity. They investigate what help is most appropriate given the personal or family circumstances, and offer the appropriate means to meet people’s needs.

For asylum seekers and people without legal residence there are limits to these services. For asylum seekers the government also subsidises a special reception structure in place of the usual CPAS/OCMW service. For people without legal residence the service is usually restricted to urgent medical help.

http://www.belgium.be/en/family/social_security_in_belgium/index.jsp

5.1. Assignment

1. On the site below different aspects of our social security system are explained (e.g. family allowance, annual paid holiday, health care, work incapacity benefits, maternity and paternity etc.)
Pick out a few and explain in your own words.

<http://diplobel.fgov.be/en/policy/policynotedetail.asp?TEXTID=49097> (July 2008)

2. Foreigners are also interested in the tax system. How does Belgium compare internationally?

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tax_rates_around_the_world

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tax_Freedom_Day

File 13

Guiding and tourleading on a daily basis

1. How To Be a Tour Guide

Being a tour guide is a pretty horrendous business, and not something to voluntarily engage in unless you are financially desperate. This may sound excessively pessimistic, but look at the facts:

- Tour guides are considered by all other employees to be a lower form of life. They are routinely ignored, spat at, and otherwise derided - often by members of their own group.
- Tour guides say the same things many hundreds of times a day to the same bored-looking people. This may seem obvious to you now, but wait until you've done it for a few days. Or hours.
- It is a tour guide's fault if anything at all goes wrong during a tour: a child falls over, it begins to rain, someone receives a parking fine. Anything.

Tour Guides Must Know Everything

From Day One you must attempt to learn everything - from the maximum temperature of a gas-fired kiln to the average number of pots produced by two men working flexible shifts in four calendar months. You must also be aware of obscure monarchs, even more obscure artists and be prepared to answer questions on that statue in the corner of the square hidden by the shrubbery.

Tour Guides Must Make Things Up



Sounds dishonest, but let's face it - the last thing you want if your little girl asks a bizarre question is for the guide to say 'Er, I dunno'. An example:

Small Boy: 'Scuse me - how many tons of clay have been dug up since the beginning of time?

Tour Guide (pretending to do complicated calculations): Well, we can't be sure but we think it's something like 4.5 thousand million metric tons.

Small Boy: Really?!

Tour Guide: Oh yes. Quite definitely, as a matter of fact.

Statues of obscure kings and queens often become Henrys I to VI or Anne Boleyn or Anna of Cleves.

Tour Guides Must Speak Loudly

This is not to prevent people asking you to speak up. They never do. A dozen senior citizens will prefer to wait right until the end of the tour, just before you are due to have a lunch break, and then ask you to repeat to them, individually if possible, every word you've said in the last half hour.

Tour Guides Are Not Entertainers

Your astonishing theatrics are unlikely to be entertaining; your gag-cracking at the expense of 19th Century clay merchants at a crucial point in the tour will be met with silence. Just speak up and sound interesting, for pity's sake.

Tour Guides Must Work Out the Nationality of Their Visitors

If they speak the same language you do, that's dandy. Unfortunately, you will find visitors from another country to be somewhere on a sliding scale from total fluency to utter incomprehension. Speak very slowly (assuming the latter), unless they look at you with the 'How dare you patronise me?' glare. And whatever you do, don't attempt to speak in their language if you don't know it, as that just adds insult to injury.

And never confuse Americans with Canadians or Australians with New Zealanders.

<http://www.bbc.co.uk/dna/h2g2/A378317>



1.1. Assignments

1. Talking from your own experience what extra advice would you give fellow students about "traps" to be avoided at all cost.

2. Irony aside, what truth is there in the article above?
Use the subtitles to exchange views on what it is like to be a professional tour guide.

2. Complaints and Resolutions in the Hotel Industry



The Burj al Arab, a wonder of the Middle East

How to deal with a “could care less” Management and Ownership staff at a local hotel? If you’re in a similar situation, where the management does not respond, you should do several things - during and after the stay.

First, don’t threaten by saying “What’s your name?” when talking to any service staff or supervisor. Still, honey goes a lot longer way than vinegar. Kill them with kindness. In the end, you’ll get your due, I promise.

Some advice:

- 1. Approach the front desk.** Address them with respect and see if they can help you. In some hotel situations, the Guest Services staff is empowered to solve problems, because the management staff is skeletal, at best - this especially applies to Limited Service properties, like Motel 6, Super 8, Rodeway Inn, Comfort Suites... where the Hotel’s Assistant General Manager is also the Front Desk Manager, Head Housekeeper, as well as HR Director, Accountant, and On-site Manager. A title is just a title. Action is what you’re seeking.
- 2. An empowered agent.** Simple Front Desk Clerks often have more management and problem-solving skills than their superiors. Use them fully. Wait until their hands are tied by Management before proceeding up the Management ladder.
- 3. Start the documentation process.** Write down times the incidents happened, as well as the details of the incident. You may have to fire off a letter or two. This also helps you remember who you dealt with and who was good in customer service and who you probably want to avoid.
- 4. Do not make a scene.** It only hurts your cause, it doesn’t help it. You’ve now turned it into ME VS. THEM instead of Me and them in a situation. Managers will instantly get defensive when you accost them in their own lobby. It’s akin to holding a gun in their face and telling them to give you a free room. Plus - it’s rude and unprofessional. You won’t get good results.
- 5. When tensions get high.** Take the Manager to a place (preferably his office) where you can air your grievances. If you have an additional traveler, take them with you. Again, don’t make it US Vs. Them, but Us with them. Ask, plead, and even beg if necessary, and try to get a resolution that suits you.

6. **Some problems cannot be fixed.** An overrun toilet from the floor above or broken Air Conditioners or a pest (mouse variety) or Cable/WiFi service interruptions are somewhat out of the Management's control. At this point, don't expect them to fix the problem, just reimburse you for your difficulties.
7. **Go outside.** If the Management at the hotel is non-responsive, it's time to take the complaint higher. Don't ask the GM of a property for "his Manager." His manager is likely 100s of miles away and won't respond to your issue. When you get home, contact the hotel brand's Customer Service Line. This is what they do for a living. - handling elevated complaints (insider talk for Complaints that go beyond the Property GM).
8. **One problem many solutions.** Even if your car was stolen from the Hotel's Parking Lot. What you need is both short-term and long-term solutions. Have the on-site manager fix what can be fixed now.
9. **Late resolutions.** Often, in the case of "things beyond the Management's control," the process will be long and drawn out. Regional Managers and National Customer Service Centers will respond more quickly to your complaint, if it's a reasonable expectation. They go into a mini-arbitration with the Hotel and you will be refunded part or all of your stay cost, plus any incidental damages which are reasonable for that situation.
10. **Word of mouth.** I always recommend that you spread the word about bad service - like Reviews to travel sites, but more importantly, reward good service with a review too. I've worked at a few Columbus area hotels that have bad reviews and I think they were unjust. In some cases, a bad hotel is a bad hotel. In some cases, it's just a bad turn of events. Mete out your options fairly and regularly.

<http://www.tripadvisor.com/>

2.1. Assignments

1. Class conversation: exchange awkward travel experiences. Describe the problem and the ultimate solution.
2. Role play: in pairs enact a conversation between a desk clerk and a tour operator.
Possible points at issue:
 - category rating of hotels
 - photo of room in brochure does not correspond with actual situation
 - room with (sea)view, size of (single) room
 - noisy room
 - meals (courses, buffet ...)
 - safe ...

<http://www.hotel-assist.com/hotel-complaints.html>

3. Special forms of tourism

For the past few decades other forms of tourism, also known as niche tourism, have been becoming more popular, particularly

- Adventure tourism: tourism involving travel in rugged regions, or adventurous sports such as mountaineering and hiking (tramping).
- Agritourism: farm based tourism, helping to support the local agricultural economy
- Ancestry tourism: (also known as genealogy tourism) is the travel with the aim of tracing one's ancestry, visiting the birth places of these ancestors and sometimes getting to know distant family.
- Armchair tourism and virtual tourism: not travelling physically, but exploring the world through internet, books, TV, etc.
- Audio tourism: includes audio walking tours and other audio guided forms of tourism including museum audio guides and audio travel books.
- Bookstore Tourism is a grassroots effort to support independent bookstores by promoting them as a travel destination.
- Creative Tourism is a new form of tourism that allows visitors to develop their creative potential, and get closer to local people, through informal participation in hands-on workshops that draw on the culture of their holiday destinations.
- Cultural tourism: includes urban tourism, visiting historical or interesting cities, and experiencing their cultural heritages. This type of tourism may also include specialized cultural experiences, such as art museum tourism where the tourist visits many art museums during the tour, or opera tourism where the tourist sees many operas or concerts during the tour.
- Dark tourism: is the travel to sites associated with death and suffering. The first tourist agency to specialise in this kind of tourism started with trips to Lakehurst, New Jersey, the scene of the Hindenburg airship disaster.



Memorial stone at Lockerbie



Auschwitz



Père Lachaise Paris

- Disaster tourism: travelling to a disaster scene not primarily for helping, but because it is interesting to see. It can be a problem if it hinders rescue, relief and repair work.
- Drug tourism: travel to a country to obtain or consume drugs, either legally or illegally.
- Ecotourism: ecological (sustainable) tourism.
- Educational tourism: may involve travelling to an education institution, a wooded retreat or some other destination in order to take personal-interest classes, such as cooking classes with a famous chef or crafts classes.
- Extreme tourism: tourism associated with high risk.
- Free Independent Traveler: a sector of the market and philosophy of constructing a vacation by sourcing one's own components e.g. accommodation, transport.
- Gambling tourism, e.g. to Atlantic City, Las Vegas, Palm Springs, California, Macau or Monte Carlo for the purpose of gambling at the casinos there.
- Garden tourism: visiting botanical gardens famous places in the history of gardening, such as Versailles and the Taj Mahal.

- Heritage tourism: visiting historical (Rome, Athens, Cracow) or industrial sites, such as old canals, railways, battlegrounds, etc.
- Health tourism: usually to escape from cities or relieve stress, perhaps for some ‘fun in the sun’, etc. Often to sanatoriums or “health spas”.
- Hobby tourism: tourism alone or with groups to participate in hobby interests, to meet others with similar interests, or to experience something pertinent to the hobby. Examples might be garden tours, amateur radio DX-peditions, or square dance cruises.
- Inclusive tourism: tourism marketed to those with functional limits or disabilities. Referred to as “Tourism for All” in some regions. Destinations often employ Universal Design and Universal Destination Development principles.
- Medical tourism, e.g.:
 - for what is illegal in one’s own country, such as abortion or euthanasia
 - for advanced care that is not available in one’s own country
 - in the case that there are long waiting lists in one’s own country.
- Perpetual tourism: wealthy individuals always on vacation; some of them, for tax purposes, to avoid being resident in any country.
- Pilgrimage Tourism: pilgrimages to ancient holy places (Rome and Santiago de Compostela for Catholics, temples and stupas of Nepal for the Hindus and Buddhist, Mount Athos or Painted churches of northern Moldavia for the Orthodox), religious sites such as mosques, shrines, etc.
- Pop-culture tourism: tourism by those that visit a particular location after reading about it or seeing it in a film.
- Sex tourism: travelling solely for the purpose of sexual activity, usually with prostitutes
- Solo Travel: travelling alone
- Sport travel: skiing, golf and scuba diving are popular ways to spend a vacation. This could also include travelling to a major international sporting event such as the FIFA World Cup or following a tour such as the Ashes or British and Irish Lions.
- Space tourism: traveling in outer space or on spaceships.
- Vacilando is a special kind of wanderer for whom the process of travelling is more important than the destination.
- Wine tourism: the visiting of growing regions, vineyards, wineries, tasting rooms, wine festivals, and similar places or events for the purpose of consuming or purchasing wine.

http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Introductory_Tourism

<http://www.gdrc.org/uem/eco-tour/eco-tour.html> (sustainable (eco))

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sustainable_tourism

3.1. Vocabulary

Give the English term for:

1. ramptourisme (2):
2. roots (voorouders):
3. erfgoedtourisme:
4. minder/andersvaliden:
5. permanent op reis:

3.2. Assignment

Niche tourism offers new opportunities for the travel industry. For example agritourism.

Agritourism is a style of vacation which is normally on farms. This may include the chance to help with farming tasks during the visit. Agritourism is often practiced in wine growing regions in Italy and Spain. In America, agritourism is wide-spread and includes any farm open to the public at least part of the year. Tourists can pick fruits and vegetables, ride horses, taste honey, learn about wine, shop in farm gift shops and farm stands for local and regional produce or hand-crafted gifts, and much more.

People are more interested in how their food is produced and want to meet the producers and talk with them about what goes into food production. Children who visit the farms often have not seen a live duck, or pig, and have not picked an apple right off the tree. This form of expanded agri-tourism has given birth to what are often called "entertainment farms." These farms cater to the pick-your-own crowd, offering not only regular farm products, but also food, mazes, open-pen animals, train rides, picnic facilities and pick-your-own produce.

Dude ranches offer tourists the chance to work on cattle ranches and sometimes include cattle drives. Agritourism is developing into a large part of the tourism industry and will soon be one of the largest sectors of tourism.

What new form of tourism would fit your region? What could be the role of a guide in this respect?

<http://www.armchairtourist.blogspot.com/>
<http://www.armchairtravel.co.uk/>



Sir Richard Branson: thumbs up for space tourism

www.virgingalactic.com/

Sir Richard Branson said last week that in 18 months he plans to launch his parents and children on the world's first space tourism flight in SpaceShipTwo, built with the help of the team behind SpaceShipOne, which became the first privately manned spacecraft three years ago, lofted to around 70 miles.

Also inspired by SpaceShipOne, the European company Astrium has unveiled what it says is a revolutionary new vehicle for space tourism at a special VIP event last night in Paris ahead of the Le Bourget Airshow. (Telegraph 14/06/2007)

4. The job of a tourleader in the course of a trip

Apart from passing on correct information, the success of a tour depends as much on social and creative skills and the helpfulness which form the surplus a good tour guide provides.

4.1. At the airport (railway station)

4.1.1. Before the arrival of the group

It's important to

- welcome your fellow travellers in a calm and confident manner, showing your authority, and
- have your administration completed beforehand. Check: tickets, (place of) embarkation and check-in, reservations (block-seating, VIP-seating, spouses together, etc.), general airport information (toilets, telephones, ...) etc.



Assignment

Check the internet for information on your time of departure/ arrival at the airport, location of toilets, newspaper stands, terminals ...

4.1.2. Welcoming the group

Do realize that first impressions are important when you are getting acquainted with your travelling companions. A tour guide is not a machine dispensing documents and spitting information. Check: names on the list, luggage, labels, special wishes concerning rooms, meals etc.; seats; first-time flying experience etc.

4.1.3. Check-in and luggage

For scheduled flights the check-in opens 2 to 3 hours before departure and closes 30 minutes before take off. For charter flights this may vary. Check in the people yourself and keep an eye on: passports, luggage labels and numbers, seating (sometimes changed into alphabetical order by the airline company), "fragile"-stickers etc. When the seating has been changed, insist that this is put right.



Assignments

- 1 Write / enact a dialogue between the tour guide and a check-in official, stationmaster. (questions, arrangements, special demands by some tourists, arrangements for disabled travellers: special seats for tall persons, medical problems, information on gate, time of embarkation and take off; tax-free shopping; location of lounges, rooms for smokers, transfer procedures at the next airport etc.

Be sure to check: hand luggage (weight, size, medication), "dangerous" objects are not to be carried in hand luggage; other things (like lighters, matches, poisonous



substances, etc) are not to be put into the “registered luggage”.

2. Do a role play between the guide, speaking on behalf of a passenger who doesn't speak English, and a security officer/official rejecting some items from his luggage. Try to find solutions, avoid confiscation and loss of property. Diplomacy! Find information (brochures) on security regulations and changing rules.

The guide always assists at the check-in:

- Stick luggage labels on the passenger's ticket.
- Hand out the (first) boarding card together with the passport. Sometimes passengers will also need their (second) boarding card for tax-free shopping. See to it that they don't get lost. Before handing out the boarding cards, and certainly before leaving the departure hall, check whether the right coupons have been removed from them.
- Keep the masters of the tickets with you. They are your responsibility at all times. Don't give in to people who want to hold on to these master tickets themselves. If you have an e-ticket or if the group is electronically registered, you will still receive the masters but not the tickets. Passengers will then be able to check in with their identity cards. Keep the printed confirmation with you.

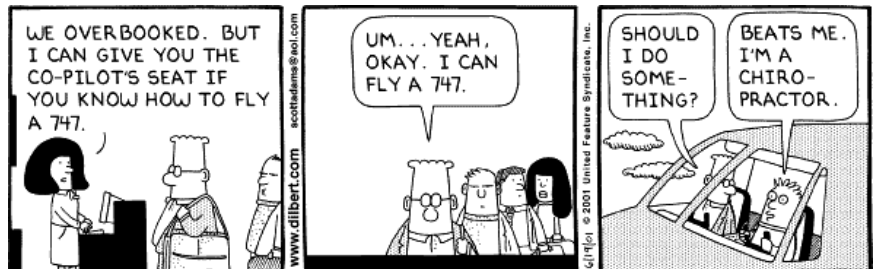
4.1.4. If a passenger doesn't show up

- Wait as long as possible at the meeting point and look for “lost” passengers.
- If a passenger doesn't turn up, check cancellations, and inform the tour operator or booking agency.
- Put the passport and ticket in a sealed envelope, with the passenger's name and address on it, and leave it at the tour operator's desk. Never take the passport through passport control.

5.1.5. Overbooking



Lost luggage



Overbooking

A group travel only has “OK” tickets, which means that the airline company guarantees the transport. If not enough seats are available it's their responsibility to provide an alternative (another flight, hotel accommodation, etc.)

Here are some guidelines:

- Demand to see the airline company's station manager.
- Notify the tour operator and ask for a written confirmation.
- The group never takes off without you. It's everybody or nobody.
- If your group is split up, always stay with the group facing the more difficult flight connection.
- Refer to the legal regulation mentioned above and inform them that a claim for damage will be submitted.
- Ask for the EU brochure in case of boarding refusal or delay.



4.1.6. Assignment

Enact a discussion between a tour guide and the check-in official. One or more persons don't have a seat on the plane. The tour guide will do everything to try and get them aboard. When/If this fails, he will negotiate the best deal (transfer to a good hotel, free meals, arrangements for a later flight, etc.).

Reference material: legal regulations (EU and international).

4.1.7. Passport and Customs control, boarding

First, guide the passengers through passport control (passports and boarding cards). After a safety check of the luggage you come to the tax-free zone. Urge your companions to be ready at the departure gate in time. Inform them about EU import and export regulations etc.

4.1.8. Loss of / damage to luggage

When somebody's luggage is lost on arrival, the tour guide accompanies this person to the *Lost Luggage Department - Lost and Found* to register the loss. A document will be filled in and a photocopy of the travel ticket is made. It must be clear now that luggage labels are everything.

Here are a few tips:

- If all the luggage labels have been attached to one ticket, count them meticulously when checking in and keep them safe.
- If the luggage labels have been attached to the individual tickets, only hand over the ticket concerned.
- Inform the official about your travel route, addresses of hotels and restaurants, etc.
- Inquire about compensations.

The passenger is always entitled to an emergency set (toilet set, etc). If the lost luggage doesn't arrive within 24 hours the passenger can buy some essential items (underwear, toothbrush, razor; etc.) at the airline's expense. Although every company is obliged to do this, negotiations are sometimes more difficult than expected. It might be a good idea to have an extra set at hand.

When luggage gets damaged, report this to the "handling agent" of the airline company.

4.1.9. Assignment

One or more pieces of luggage are missing on arrival. The tour guide helps the victim to fill in the forms at the Lost Luggage department (one form for each piece lost).

Ask for information (means of contact, telephone numbers, how will the lost luggage get to the hotel?)

What if the group has already travelled on to another destination? Compensation etc.

4.1.10. Abroad

Although many companies have dispensed with the reconfirmation of the return flight, the guide must always check whether a reconfirmation of the seats for the return flight is necessary (72 hours before departure for scheduled flights, from 48 hours before take off to ... for charter flights).

Make a list of the desired seats and pass it on to the airline's agent.

Follow the same procedures for the return flight check-in as in 1.3. Extra airport taxes (local currency, credit card or US dollars) have become exceptional. They are never at the expense of the travellers, and have to be registered in the file. Have enough (local) currency ready, not every departure hall will have an exchange office.

4.2. Place of destination

4.2.1. Acquaintance

Tactfully introduce your companions to each other. You can do this on the first evening, on the first bus ride or when waiting. NEVER mention somebody's job or civil status. This could be a violation of the law safeguarding individual privacy. Some people may feel ashamed of their "origin". Others might seize the opportunity to start bragging/ and step in the limelight.

4.2.2. Consultation with local guide / driver

- First check the local guide's programme with the brochure. In case of justified modifications you can communicate them (in a positive way) to the customer.
- Every night you discuss the programme of the coming day with the guide / driver: hours of departure and arrival, visits, photo stops, meals ...



4.2.3. Assignments

1. Discuss route and programme: negotiate small modifications, extra visits, possible extra costs.
2. Ask about evening-activities, check-out procedure, transfer to the airport or railway station ...
What about dinner when you had a long delay ...?

For communications with customers Dutch is used at all times. The tour guide always acts as an intermediary for a local agent / guide.

As a matter of principle a tour guide doesn't negotiate the programme with customers (the brochure is always the point of reference) and makes clear arrangements:

- (Try to) stick to the same timetable: wake-up call, breakfast, departure.
- Inform the customer about the clothes they'll have to wear (weather, visit to temple ...).
If possible inform your group via poster near the reception area.

Welcome the customers and elucidate the day's programme before arrival of the local guide.

During visits and on the bus, provide an accurate translation / summary of the guide's story. Make cross references to our culture.

4.2.4. Arrival at the hotel

Before arrival, keep all documents at hand.

Check the rooming-list and solve possible problems while the customers wait on the bus / in the lounge. (No interference of customers!)

Make arrangements about wake-up call, luggage, (access to) facilities ...

Give your room number to the customers and tell them you stay at the reception for a while to solve possible problems immediately.



4.2.5. Assignments

1. Check-in at hotel.
Communicate special requests to the desk-clerk: e.g. twin beds for brother and sister sharing room, elderly

people prefer lower floor room ...

Ask for specific facilities: laundry service, special restaurants, fitness, sauna ...

2. Dealing with complaints like: room hasn't been cleaned, dirty linen on the bed, toilet doesn't flush, leaking tap, noisy room ...
3. Confer with head waiter / chief cook about (vegetarian) meals, specialities, feast, local gastronomy

4.2.6. Leaving the hotel

On the eve of your departure: ask duty manager about

- time the rooms have to be cleared
- when and how extra expenses will be settled
- place to collect the luggage

Inform your customers in time, tell them to hand in their key at the reception.

Make sure you're at the bus 15 minutes before departure and check the luggage.



4.2.7. Assignments

1. Solve possible problems about bills (drink, laundry or other).
2. Customer has left some clothes at the hotel. Tour leader calls hotel and offers a solution. (forwarding address, next group takes them along ...)

4.3. How to avoid misunderstandings and irritation?

Unless explicitly mentioned (and funded by the tour operator) no treats are provided for honeymoon trips or birthdays.

- Make sure the participants regularly change places in the coach.
- On arrival inform about exchange-office, doctor, pharmacy, hours of mass.



4.3.1. Assignment

Tour leader accompanies customer to hospital, dentist, ...

4.4. Some practical advice

- Never criticize the tour operator in front of customers.
- Deal with misunderstandings, problems on the spot, without interference of outsiders.
- In case of complaints about the local guide / driver try to solve it with him/herself. If this doesn't help, consult the manager of the local agency. Stay polite, be diplomatic.
- In case of need, make sure to have the addresses of the Belgian embassy / consulate at hand.
- Urge customers to strictly respect timetables.
- Warn your clients for illegal money changers and never take part in any illegal activity yourself.
- Always help people with medical problems. Bring along a small supply of medicine.
- In case of serious medical problems: inform the insurance, save bills and other pieces of evidence (you might be asked to show them on leaving the country).

(After: E. Hauttekeete, *De reisleider en het verloop van de reis*)

<http://www.brusselsairport.be/en/airportinfo/attheairport/>

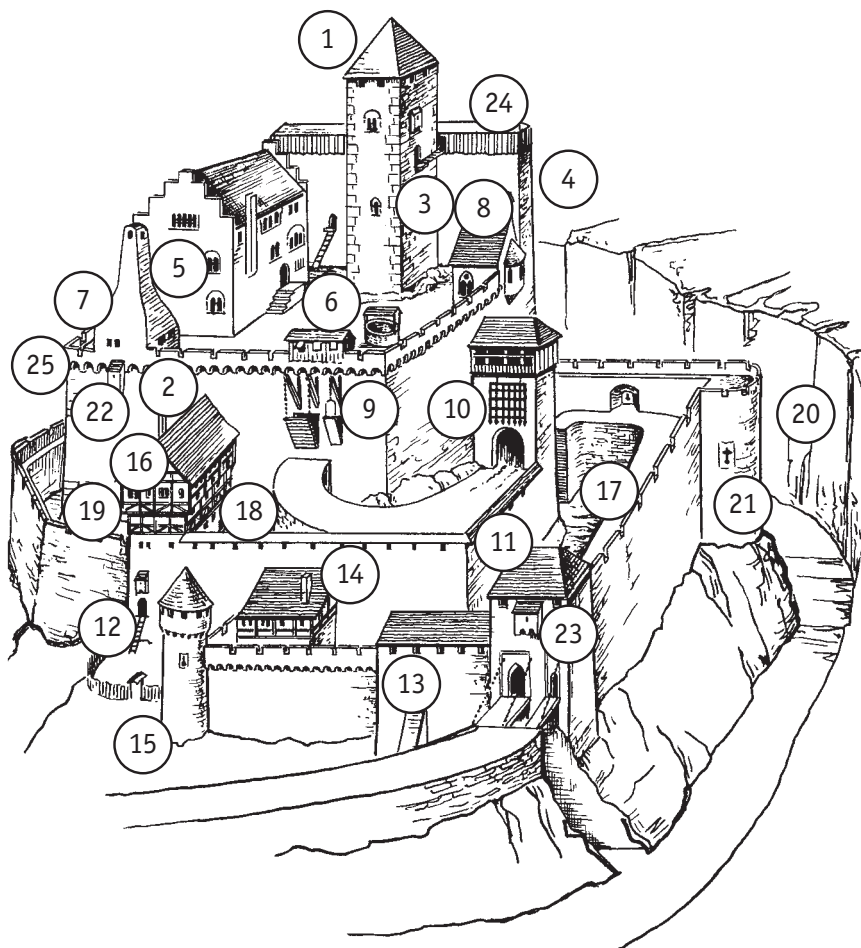
<http://www.baa.com/portal>

<http://www.tsa.gov/index.shtm> (Transport Security Administration)

Appendix

1. Vocabulary of civil architecture

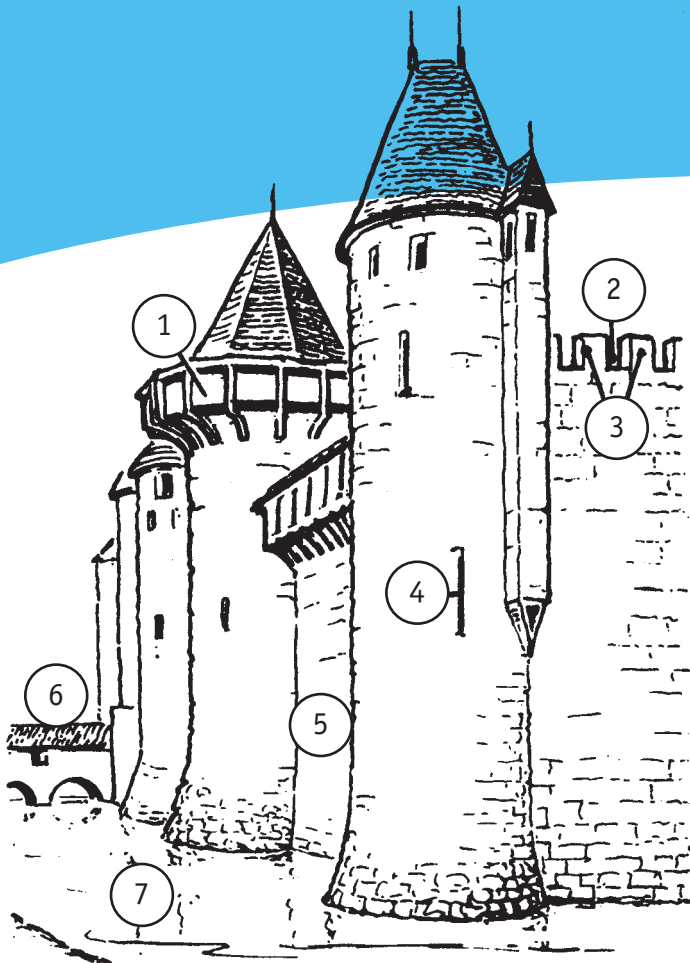
Castles and fortifications



1. donjon
2. mezenkouw, machicolis (ook werp gat)
3. ingang tot de bergvrede
4. schildmuur
5. zaalbouw
6. binnenplaats met waterput
7. keukens
8. kapel
9. hoofdpoort met ophaalbrug
10. tweede poort met valhek
11. poorttoren met ophaalbrug
12. poterne (uitvalspoortje)
13. stal
14. woongebouw voor de knechten; smidse
15. muurtoren (spietoren)

16. woongebouw voor schildknappen
17. buitenste voorburcht
18. tweede, binnenste voorburcht
19. dwingel (toegangsweg tussen twee ringmuren) ..
20. muurtoren met open achterzijde
21. schietgat
22. privaat
23. versterkte poort
24. overdekte weergang
25. open weergang op ringmuur (dwingel)

- a. servants' lodging
- b. inner gate
- c. ward
- d. gate with drawbridge
- e. kitchen
- f. entrance to keep, donjon
- g. keep, donjon, tower house
- h. slit, loophole
- i. postern, sally port
- j. barbican, defended gateway
- k. inner court with (draw-)well
- l. squires' lodging
- m. wall walk, allure, rampart walk
- n. neck
- o. machicolis, machicolation, brattice
- p. open tower (with open gorge),
semicircular tower
- q. stable
- r. latrine, privy
- s. castle hall
- t. wall tower
- u. chemise, curtain wall
- v. chapel
- w. porcullis
- x. gate house with drawbridge
- y. outer gate

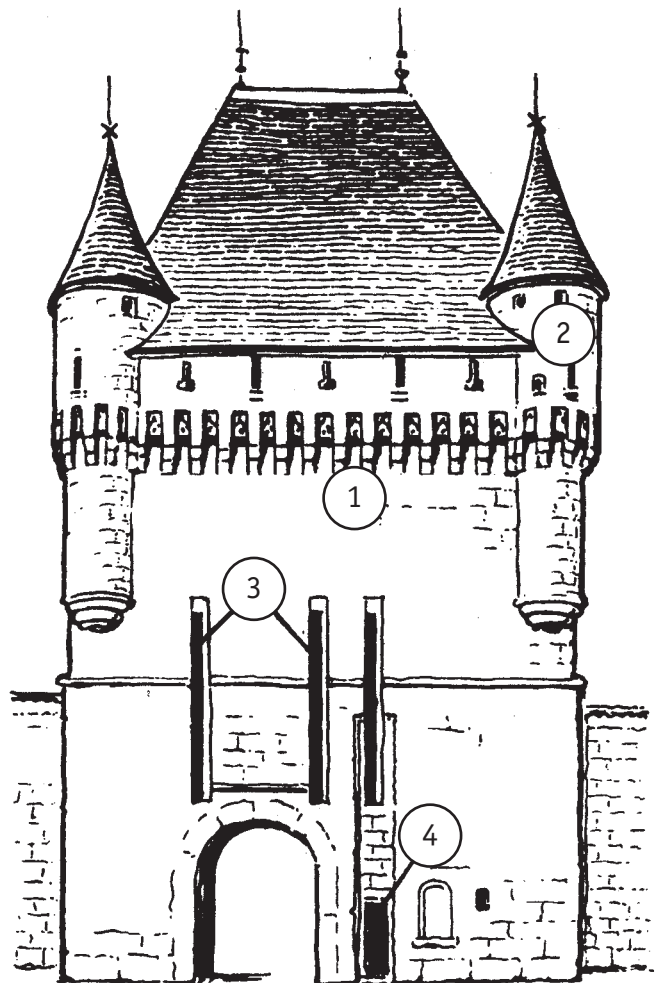


1. hordijs
2. kanteel
3. merlo(e)n
4. schietgat
5. middenwal
6. (slot)brug ↔ ophaalbrug
7. slotgracht, vest

1. machicoulis (werpgat)
2. spietoren
3. ruimte voor katrollen van ophaalbrug
4. poterne (kleine poort, gemakkelijk te verdedigen bij beleg)

- a. pulley slot
- b. machicoulis, machicolation
- c. postern, sally port
- d. tourelle (with candle-snuffer roof)

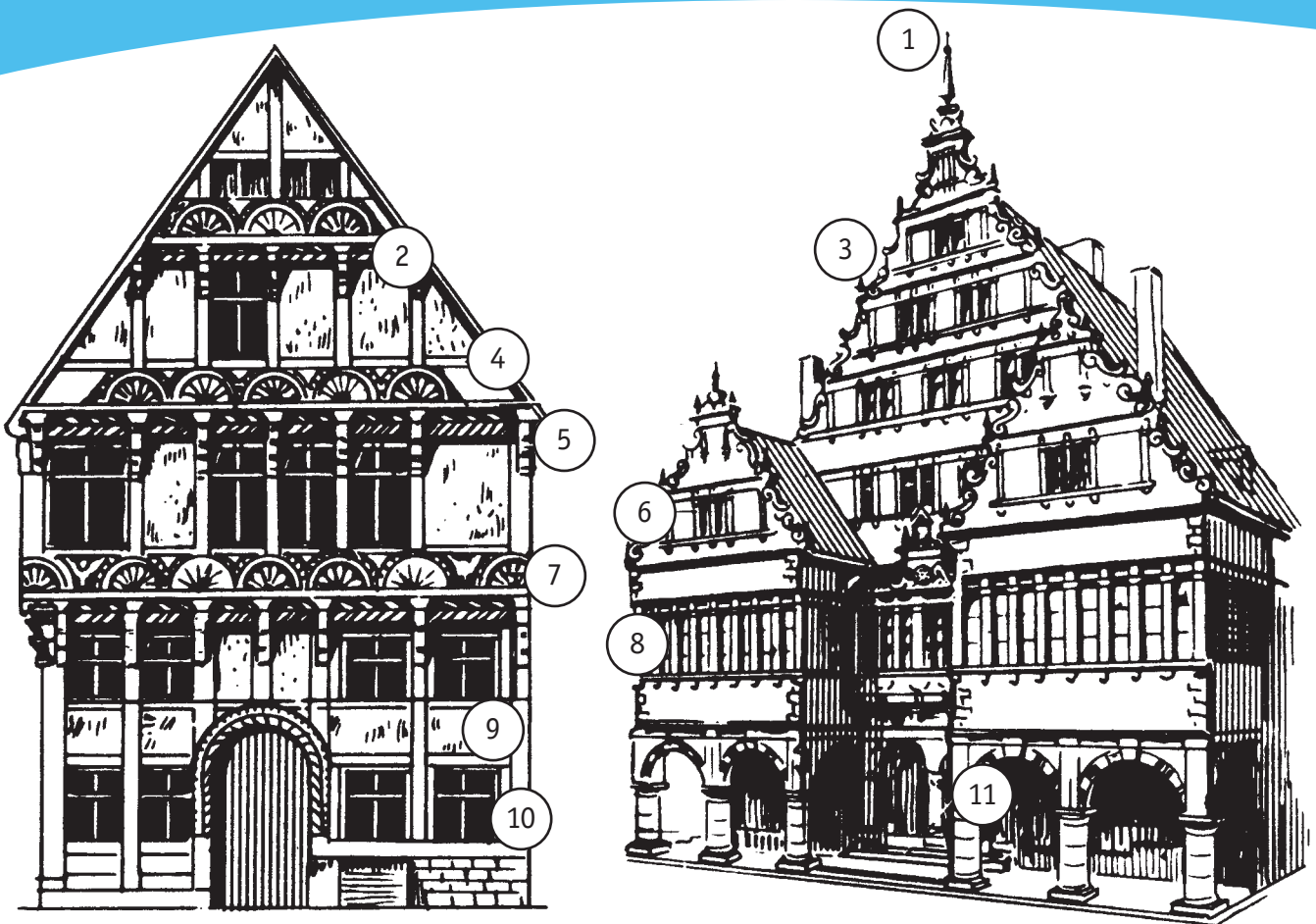
- a. liftbridge, drawbridge
- b. arrow loop
- c. castle-moat
- d. clerestory
- e. battlement, crenel, crenelle
- f. merlon
- g. bridge





1. borstwering
2. (overkragende of uitkragende) kroonlijst
3. slingers
4. Corinthische muurpijler
5. sierlijst
6. driehoekig of rondbogig fronton
(vaktaal: segmentvormig fronton)
7. Ionische muurpijler

- a. festoon, swag
- b. ornamental moulding
- c. parapet, breastwork
- d. Ionic pilaster
- e. corona
- f. triangular or segment frontispiece
- g. Corinthian pilaster



1. obelisk
2. snijwerk
3. slaper (omgekeerde console)
4. regel (bintbalk)
5. console
6. vensterkozijnen van zuiltjes
7. waaierozetten
8. doorlopende vensterstijlen
9. vak
10. stijl
11. arcadegalerij met uitstek

- a. console, corbel
- b. obelisk
- c. rosetta, patera
- d. sleeper
- e. overhanging arcade
- f. carved work, carving, fretwork
- g. column framed window
- h. panel
- i. rail
- j. continuous row of jambs
- k. jamb

slaper



console





1. obelisk
2. kroonlijst met standbeeld, ruitersstandbeeld
3. œil-de-bœuf
4. driehoekig fronton
5. rondboogfronton (ook segmentvormig fronton)
6. slingers, festoenen
7. kruisvenster
8. cartouche
9. frontonvenster
10. balkon
11. kraagsteen
12. zuil – sokkel
13. zuil – basement
14. zuil – schacht
15. zuil – kapiteel
16. zuil – impost

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. curved, round, segmental pediment | j. obelisk |
| b. pedestal, dado | k. (triangular) pediment |
| c. pediment window | l. base |
| d. cornice, equestrian statue | m. impost |
| e. festoon, swag | n. bull's eye |
| f. capital | o. balcony |
| g. cartouche | p. shaft |
| h. corbel, bracket | |
| i. pediment window | |

krulgevel

trapgevel

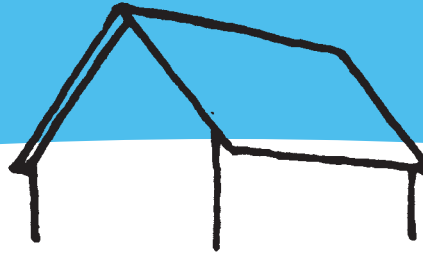
puntgevel

- a. (crow-)step(ped) gable
- b. pointed gable
- c. scroll gable

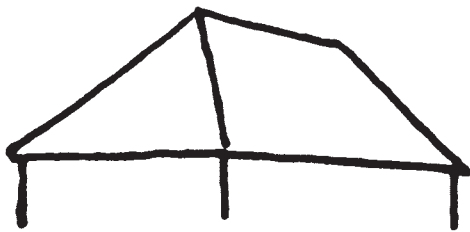
Roofs



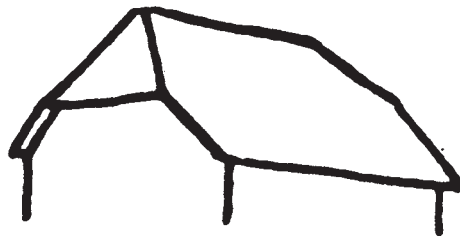
1



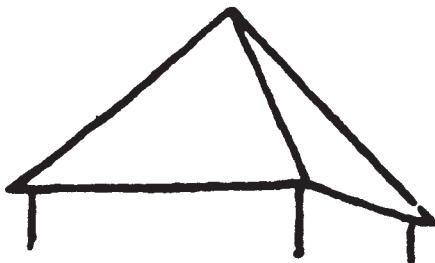
2



3



4



5



6

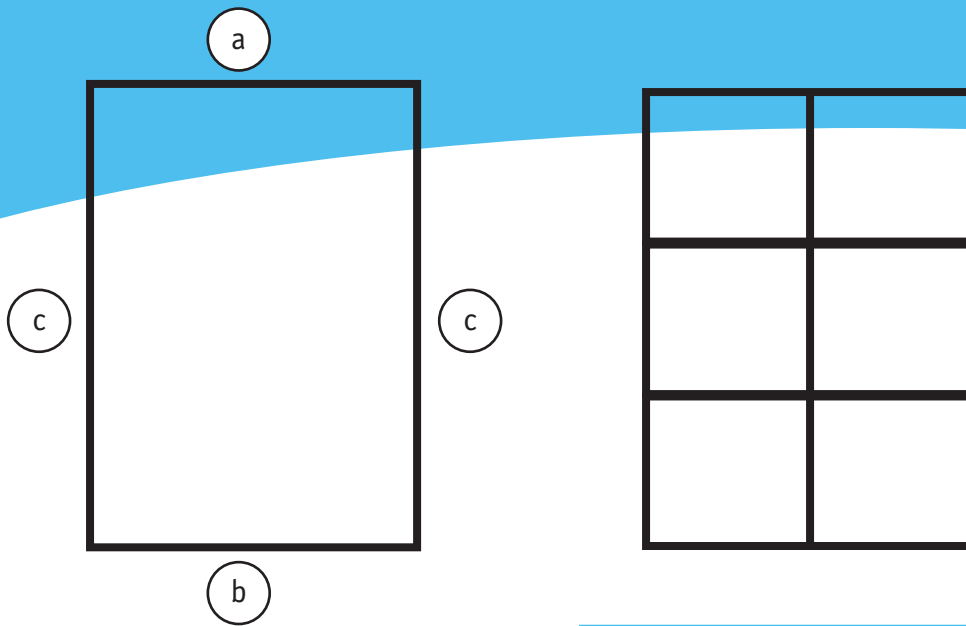


7

1. lessenaarsdak
2. zadeldak
3. schilddak
4. wolfsdak
5. tentdak
6. mansardedak
7. zaagtanddak

- a. half-hipped roof
- b. saddleback roof
- c. shed roof
- d. mansard
- e. pent roof
- f. hip(ped) roof

Windows



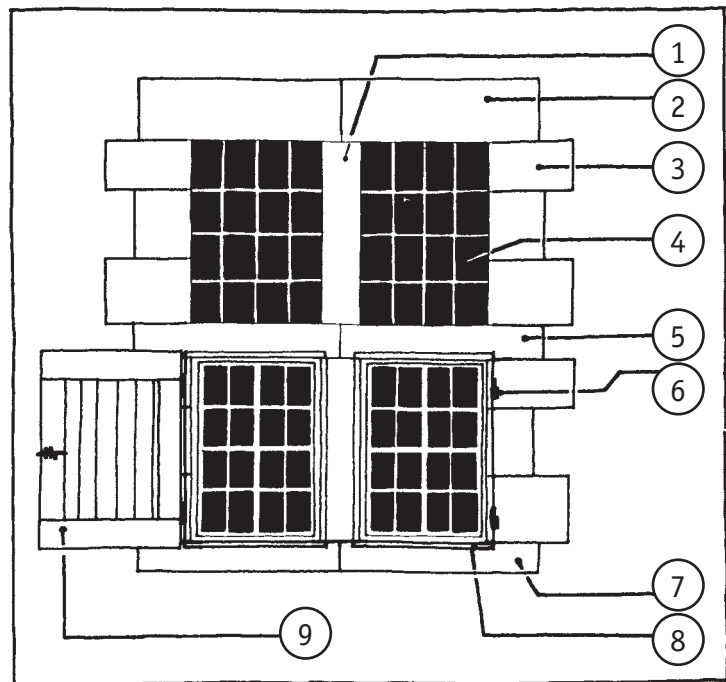
- raam/kozijn/venster-, lichtkozijn
- a. bovendorpel (bij deur ook half)
 - b. onderdorpel
 - c. stijl

- Window (-frame)
- a. stanchion, upright
 - b. window sill, ledge
 - c. lintel

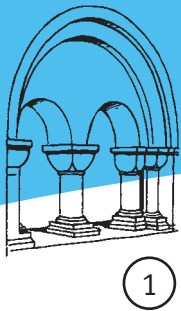
Multi-lit windows

1. middenstijl
2. latei
3. muuranker
4. glas in lood
5. dwarsbalk
6. scharnier
7. drempel
8. aanslag(lijst)
9. luik

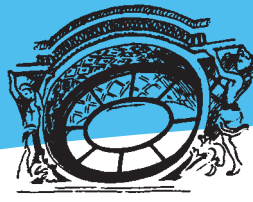
- a. cramp iron, brace
- b. shutter
- c. stop
- d. hinge
- e. mullion
- f. stained glass
- g. sill
- h. lintel
- i. crossbeam/bar, transom



Window shapes



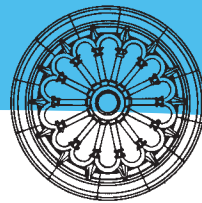
1



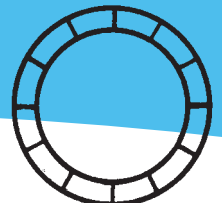
2



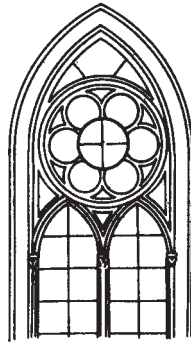
3



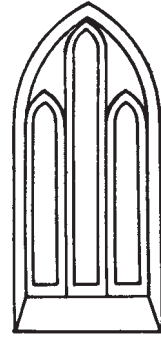
4



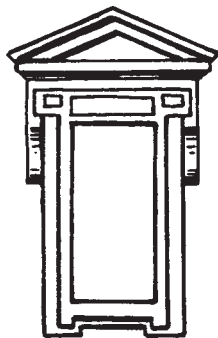
5



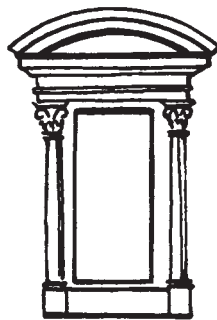
6



7



8a



8b



8c



8d



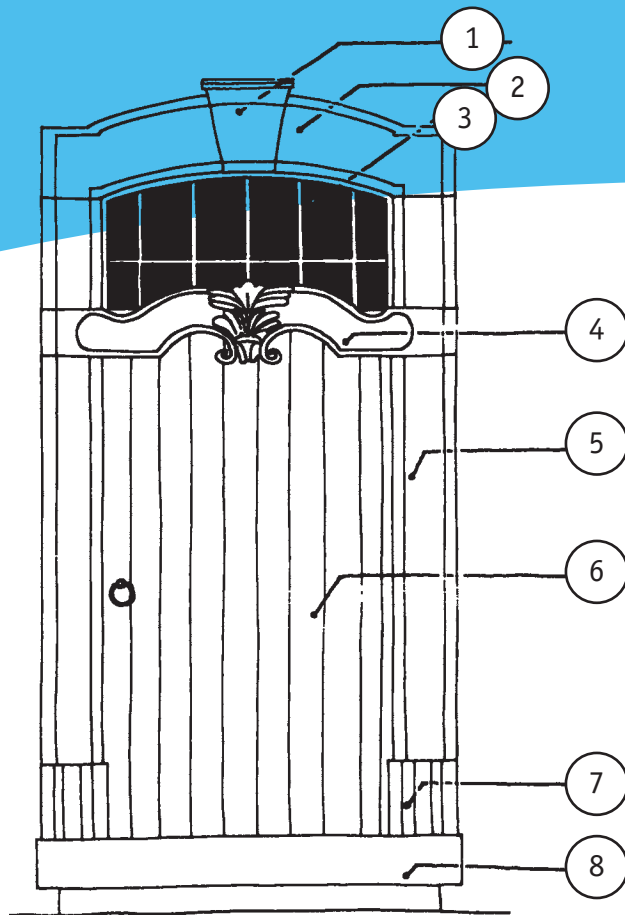
8e

1. tweelichtvenster
2. œil-de-bœuf
3. roosvenster
4. radvenster
5. rond venster
6. venster met maaswerk en roeden
7. spitsboogvenster/lancetvenster
8. vensters met fronton
- a. driehoekig fronton
- b. segmentvormig fronton/
rondboogfronton
- c. verkropt driehoekig fronton
- d. gebroken driehoekig fronton
- e. gebroken segmentvormig fronton

- a. broken triangular frontispiece
- b. tracery window
- c. frontispiece window
- d. circular window, oculus window
- e. angulated triangular frontispiece
- f. oeil-de-boeuf, oculus
- g. segment frontispiece
- h. coupled window

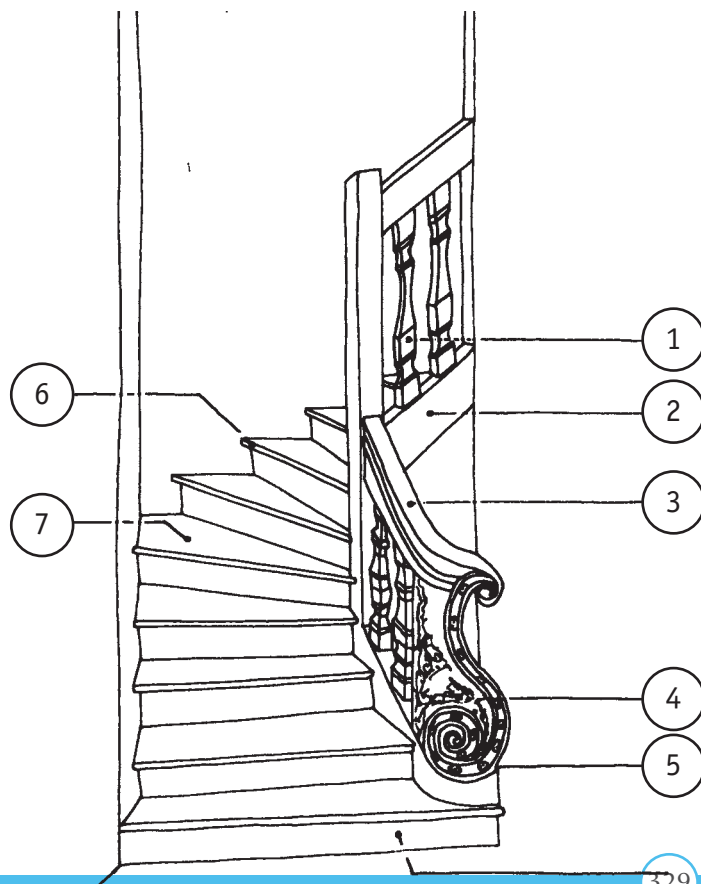
- i. broken segment frontispiece
- j. lancet window
- k. wheel window
- l. rose window
- m. frontispiece

Doors



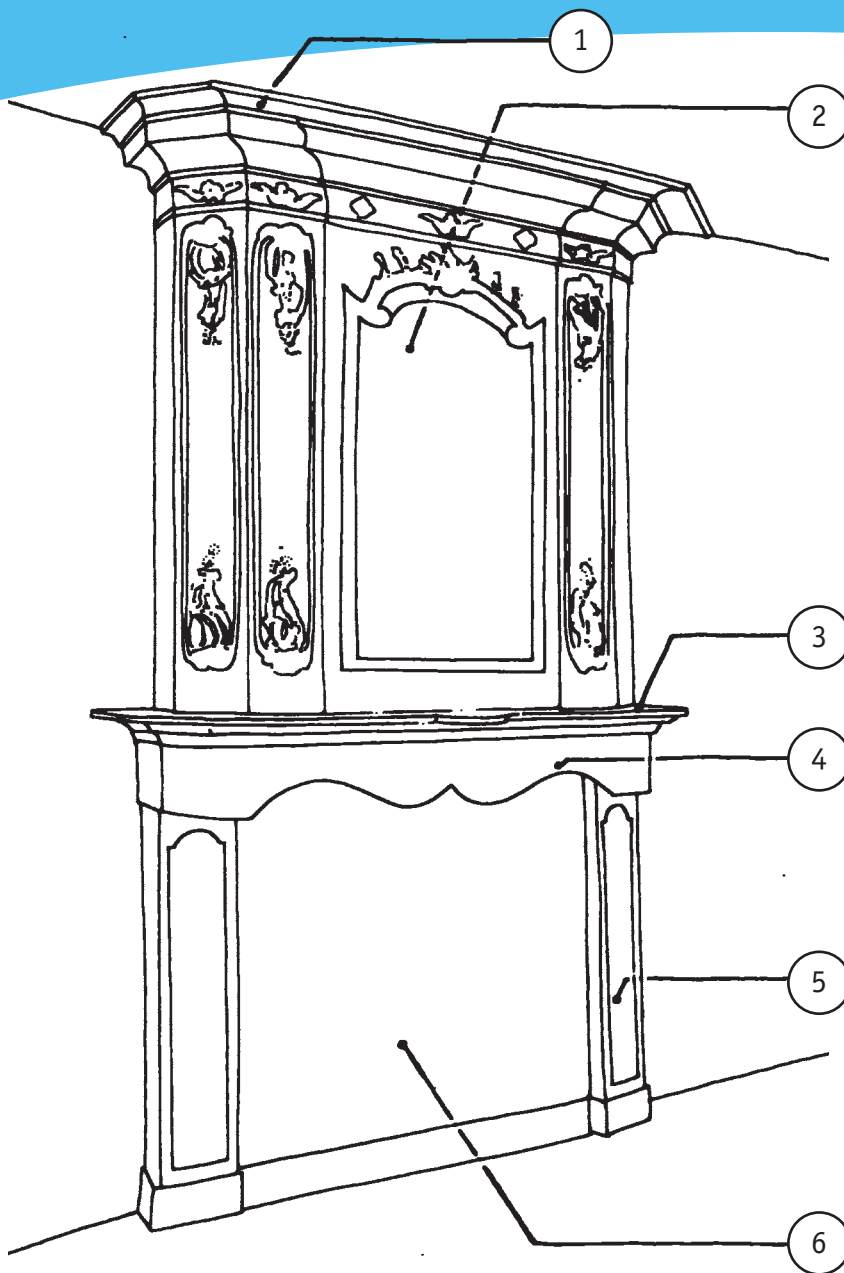
1. sluitsteen, sleutelsteen
2. latei
3. puiraam (met kleine ruitjes)
4. dwarsbalk, traverse
5. rechtstand, penant
6. deurpaneel/deurvlak/deurvleugel
7. basement
8. drempel

- a. lites
- b. threshold, door sill
- c. keystone
- d. door panel
- e. lintel
- f. door base
- g. stile
- h. rails



1. baluster
2. trapboom, trapwang
3. handlijst
4. hoofdbaluster, trappaal
5. stootbord
6. trapneus, wel
7. aantrede

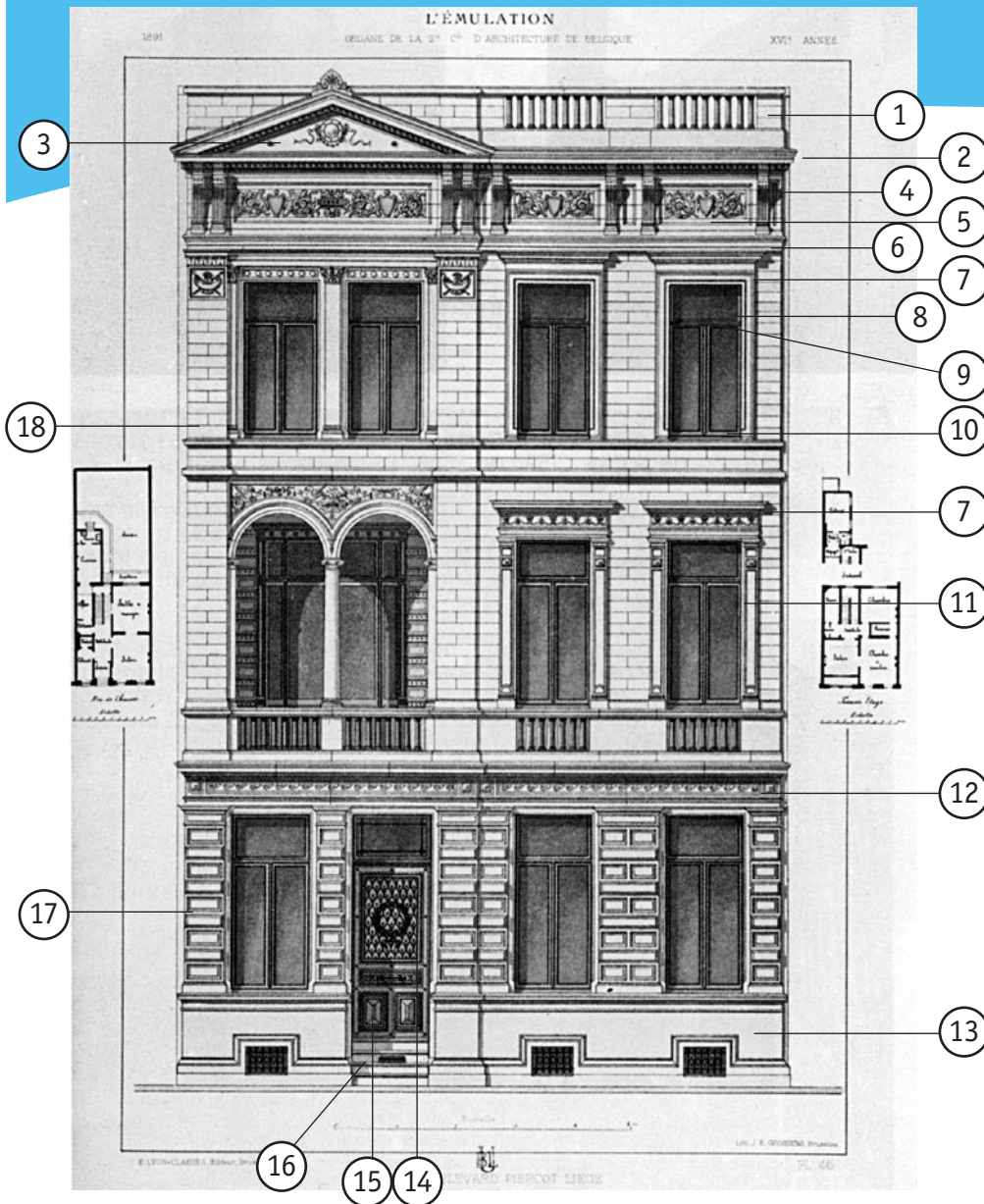
- a. riser
- b. head
- c. tread
- d. baluster, banister
- e. principal, main baluster
- f. nosing
- g. handrail



1. sierlijst
2. cartouche uit stucwerk
3. tablet
4. mantel
5. jambage/rechtstaand/penant
6. haardplaat/achterwand

- a. hearth place
- b. stucco cartouche
- c. jamb(e)
- d. ornamental moulding
- e. mantel shelf
- f. mantel

Recapitulation

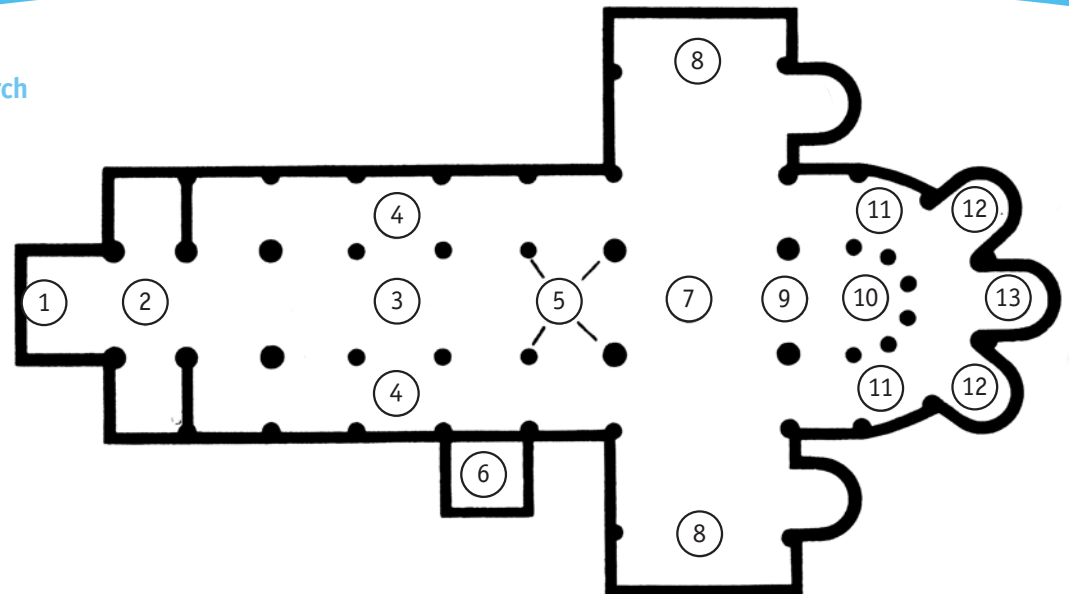


1. borstwering
2. kroonlijst (bovenlijst)
druiplijst
3. fronton
4. kraagsteen, console
5. fries
6. kordonband
7. venster-, sierlijst
8. bovenlicht
9. vensterkruis
10. raam, venster-, lichtkozijn
11. pijler
12. fries (zie 5)
13. sokkel
14. deuropening
15. deurpaneel
16. drempel
17. rustica, bossage
18. liseen

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| a. window frame | k. cornice, drip moulding |
| b. console, bracket | l. freeze |
| c. threshold, doorsill | m. door panel |
| d. parapet | n. window cross |
| e. frontispiece | o. bossage |
| f. string course, band course | p. pillar, pilaster |
| g. socle, plinth | q. doorway |
| h. cornice, drip moulding | r. freeze |
| i. skylight, fanlight | |
| j. window frame | |

2. Vocabulary of religious architecture

Groundplan of a church



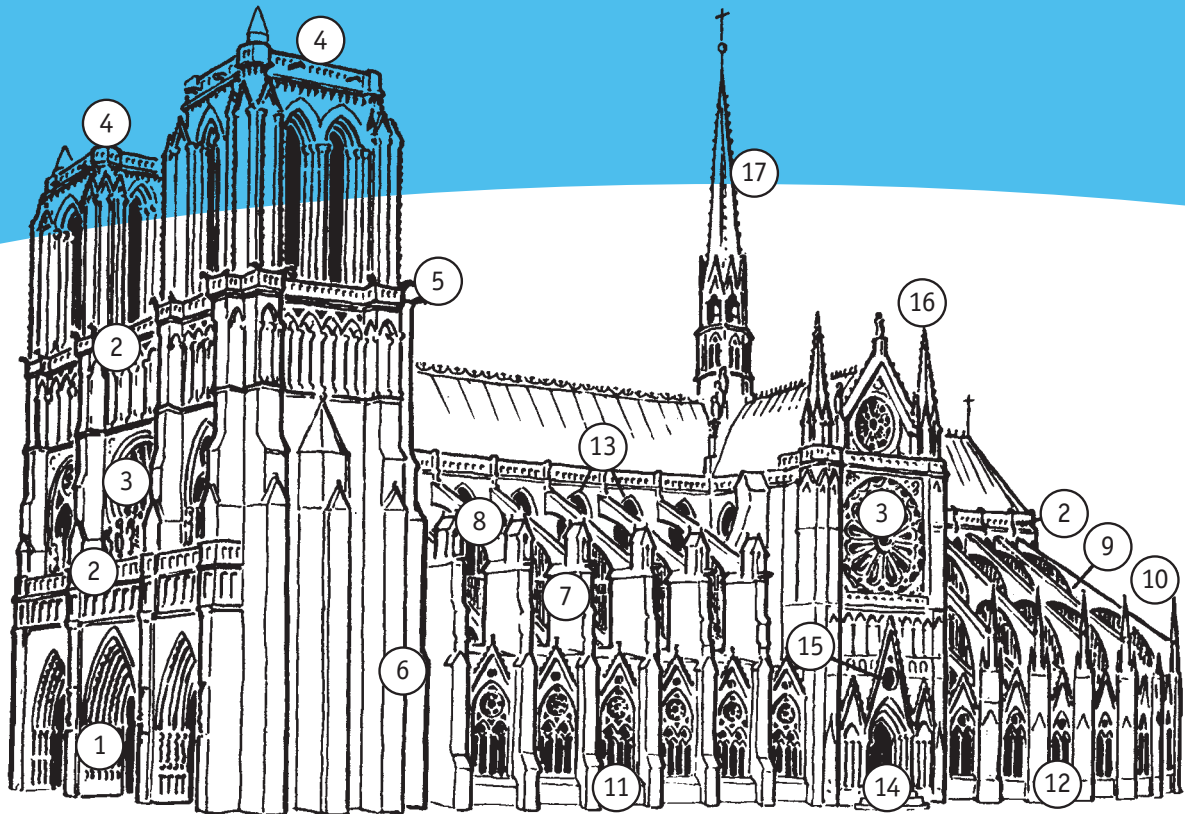
1. portaal
2. narthex
3. middenbeuk, schip
4. zijbeuken
5. travee
6. zijkapel
7. kruisbeuk of viering
8. kruisarm
- 7+8. dwarsbeuk
9. koor
10. hoogkoor of priesterkoor
11. kooromgang of deambulatorium
12. straalkapellen
13. askapel

- a. nave
- b. (transept) crossing
- c. high choir/chancel (also: presbytery or sanctuary)
- d. axial chapel
- e. narthex
- f. side chapel
- g. bay
- h. choir/chancel
- i. apsidal/absidal chapel, apse chapel, radiating chapel
- j. choir/chancel aisle, ambulatory
- k. portal
- l. north transept and south transept
- m. aisles
- b. + l.** transept

Extra :

- e. a vestibule at the west end of a Christian church, often surmounted by a gallery.
- g. the basic unit of vault structure, the space between two (or four) columns, pillars or piers, including that part of the vault or ceiling between them.
- j. a corridor, formed by an extension of the aisles around the chancel and high chancel. In pilgrimage churches it allowed the faithful to file past the relics in the apsidal chapels.
- i. a rounded chapel off the ambulatory, usually containing relics and dedicated to the saint whose remains it houses or housed. It is a favourite place of private devotion. The transept may also have chapels, called 'transept chapels'.
- d. called Lady Chapel in English cathedrals when dedicated to the Blessed Virgin.

Gothic cathedral



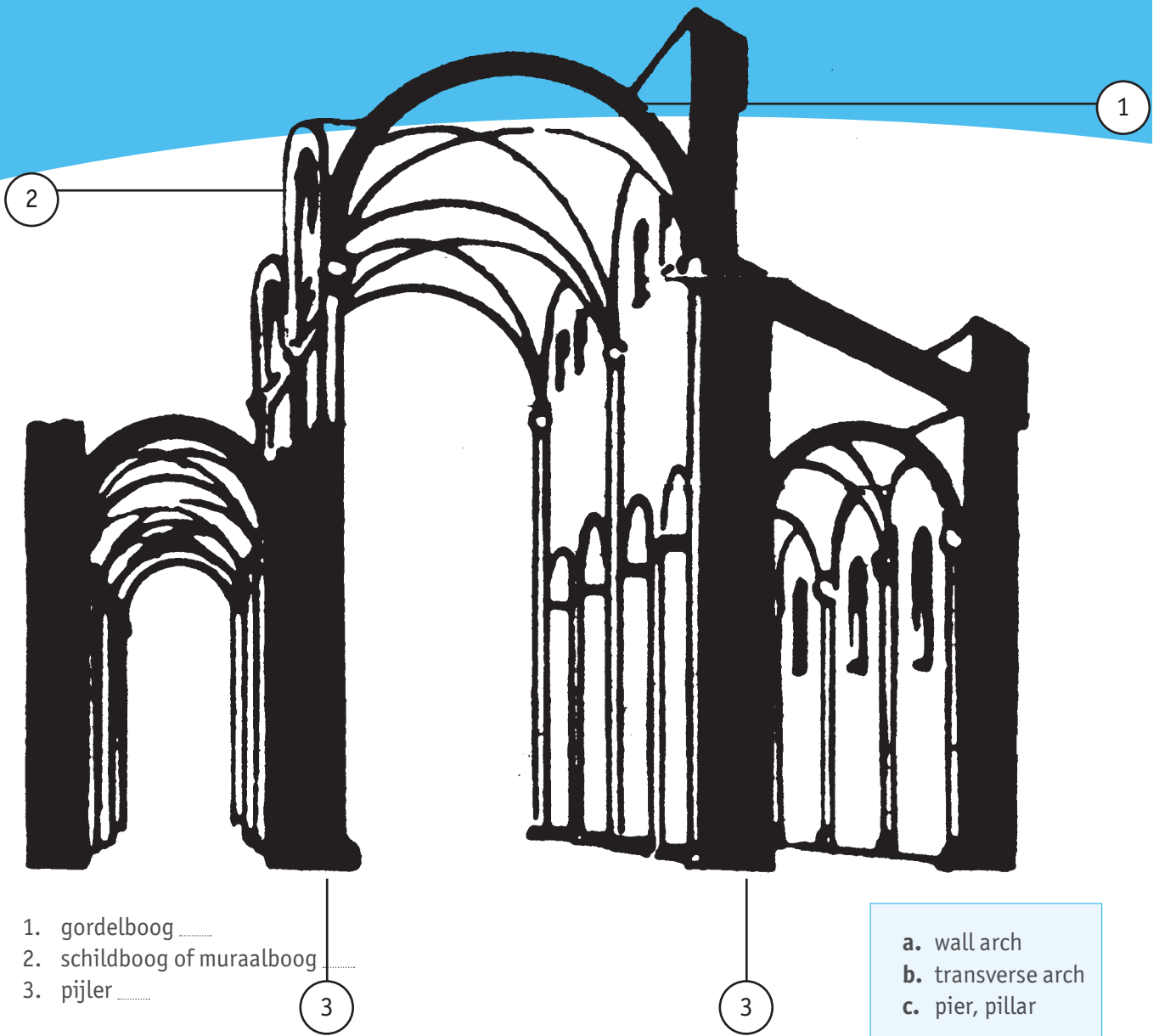
- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. portaal | 10. pinakel |
| 2. galerij | 11. zijkapel |
| 3. roosvenster | 12. straalkapel |
| 4. klokkentoren (zonder torenspits) | 13. brandglasraam |
| 5. waterspuwer (voor de afvoer van regenwater) | 14. zijportaal |
| 6. steunbeer | 15. wimberg |
| 7. luchtboogstoel | 16. kepel |
| 8. steunboog of luchtboog | 17. dakruiter |
| 9. dubbele luchtboog | |

- a. rose window
- b. pinnacle
- c. side portal, north portal or south portal
- d. gargoyle
- e. helm
- f. stained glass window (rose window when round)
- g. the pier of a flying buttress, abutment
- h. main portal
- i. Gothic gable, canopy

- j. flying buttress, arc boutant
- k. bell tower (without a spire)
- l. side chapel
- m. roof turret, ridge turret
- n. gallery (with openwork balustrade)
- o. apsidal/absidal chapel, apse chapel, radiating chapel
- p. (double) flying buttress
- q. buttress, outer pier

Extra :

- b. a pinnacle is made up of a shaft and a helm; it weighs the pier and thus counteracts the thrust of the flying arch.
- m. roof turret : a small turret (often made of wood) on a church roof, instead of a bigger tower. It was introduced by the Cistercians in the 13th C and adopted later by the Dominicans. In Gothic churches it often takes the place of the transept tower.

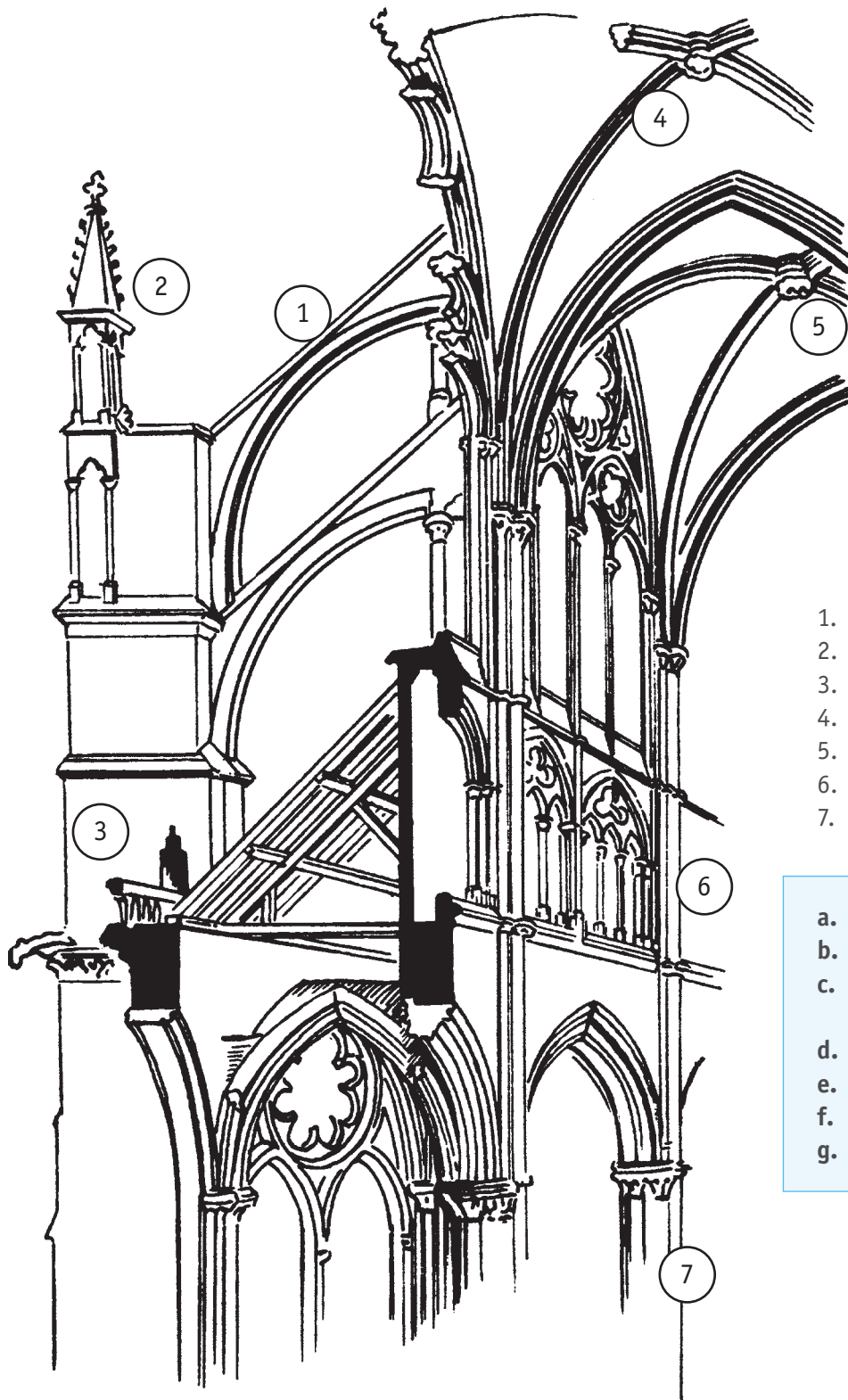


1. gordelboog
2. schildboog of muraalboog
3. pijler

- a. wall arch
b. transverse arch
c. pier, pillar

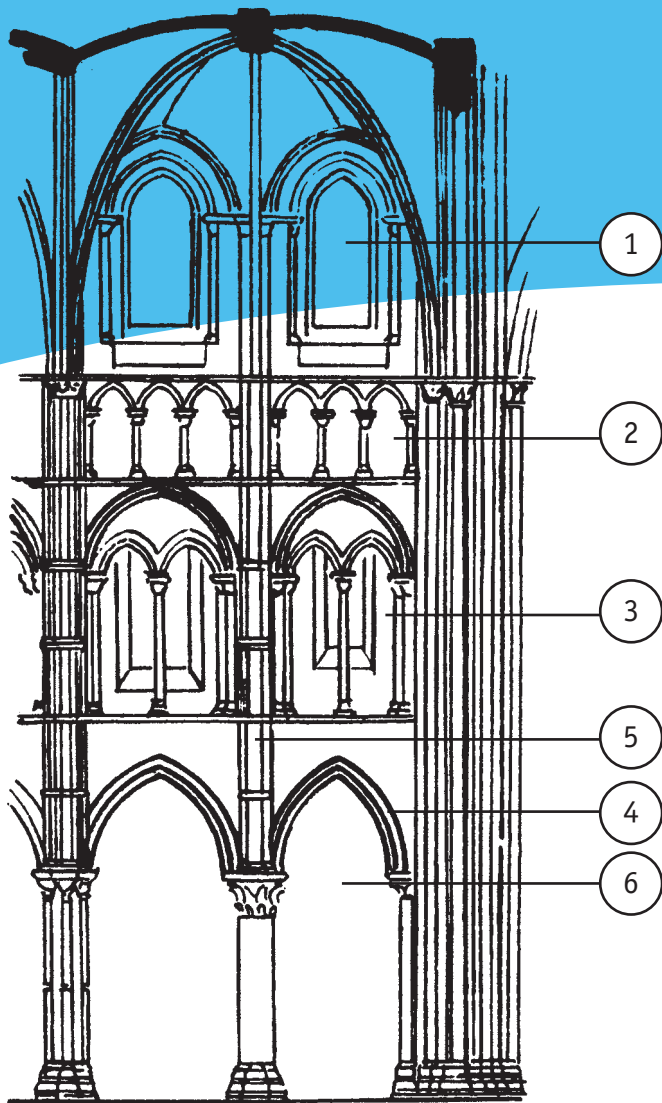
Extra :

- c. The difference between a column, a pillar, a pilaster, and a pier is a bit tricky; sometimes one is used for the other. Here's a fair try:
- a column is a general word for a solid upright stone post used in a building as a support or decoration ("kolom" or "zuil" in Dutch).
 - a pillar is a (massive) (slender) free-standing column ("pilaar" in Dutch).
 - a pilaster is a rectangular column with a capital and base, projecting only slightly from a wall ("pilaster" in Dutch).
 - a pier is the upright support for a superstructure such as an arch or bridge ("muurdam", "pijler" in Dutch). The cross section is generally square, although other shapes are possible:
 - drum pier (massive and circular)
 - cruciform pier (cross-shaped)
 - bundle pier



1. luchtboog
2. fiaal of pinakel
3. steunbeer
4. gewelfrib
5. sluitsteen
6. triforium
7. bundelpijler

- a. pinnacle
- b. vault rib
- c. bundle pier or bundle pillar
- d. flying buttress
- e. triforium
- f. boss, keystone
- g. buttress



1. rondboogvenster
2. triforium
3. tribune
4. archivolt
5. schalk
6. spitsboogarcade

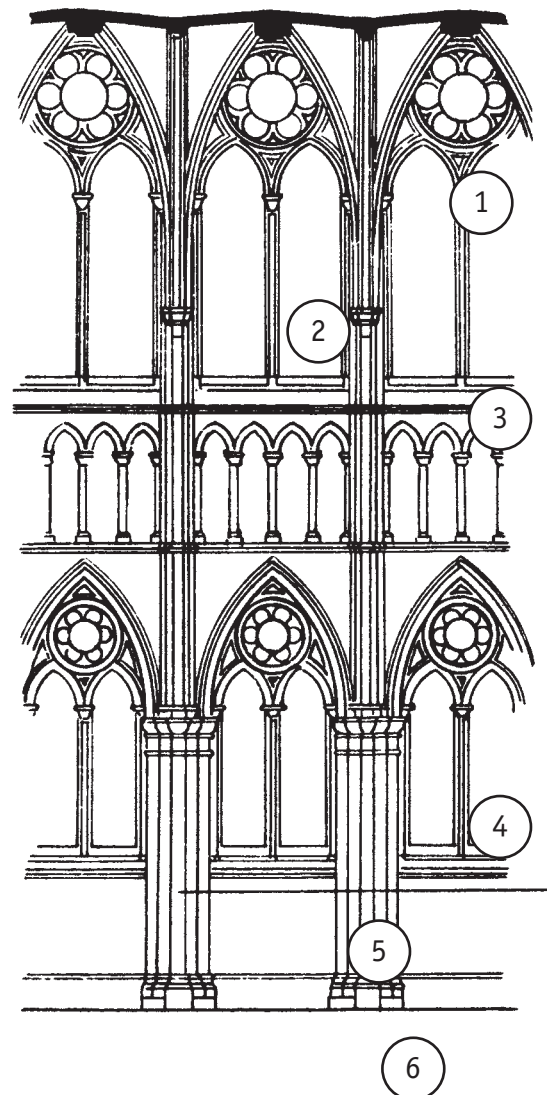
- a. gallery (inside)
- b. round arch window
- c. shaft
- d. archivolt
- e. pointed arch arcade, Gothic arcade
- f. triforium (passage)

1. maaswerk of tracering
2. lichtbeuk (bestaande uit bovenlichten)
3. tweelicht
4. spitsboogvenster
5. bundelpijler
6. basement

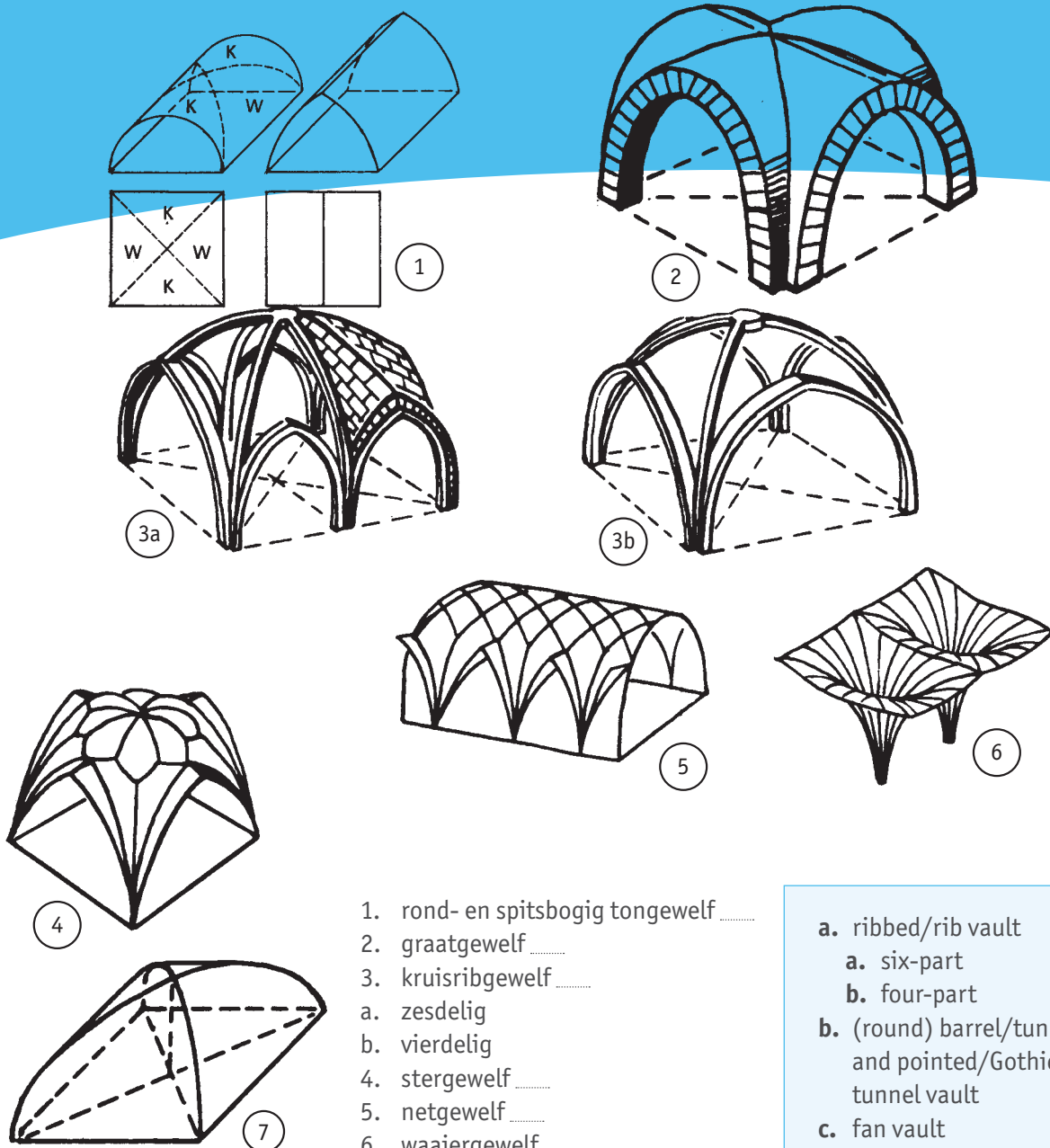
- a. clerestory/clearstory (composed of clearstory windows)
- b. lancet window (also called pointed arch window or Gothic window)
- c. coupled window
- d. base
- e. bundle pier or bundle pillar
- f. tracery

Extra :

- a. clerestory / clearstory : the highest level of the nave or chancel elevation. It is filled with windows and offers natural lighting to the vault and nave.
- d. base : the base or foot of a pillar or pier.



Vaults, vaulting



1. rond- en spitsbogig tongewelf
2. graatgewelf
3. kruisribgewelf
- a. zesdelig
- b. vierdelig
4. stergewelf
5. netgewelf
6. waaiergewelf
7. kloostergewelf

- a. ribbed/rib vault
 - a. six-part
 - b. four-part
- b. (round) barrel/tunnel vault and pointed/Gothic barrel/tunnel vault
- c. fan vault
- d. star vault
- e. cloistered vault
- f. net vault
- g. groined vault ("graatgewelf" or "kruisgewelf")

Extra :

b. barrel/tunnel vault is sometimes also called wagon vault

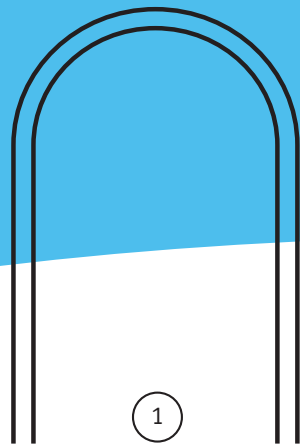
g. The Dutch translation for 'groined vault' is "graatgewelf" or "kruisgewelf".

a. + g. A rib vault resembles a groined vault but has ribbed arches (or ribs, "ribben") instead of groined arches (or groins, "graten").

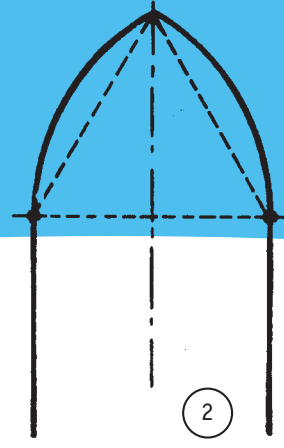
Some other types of vault(ing) are :

- domical vault ("domicaal gewelf")
- cell vault ("cellengewelf"), a special type of net vaulting
- trough vault ("muldengewelf")

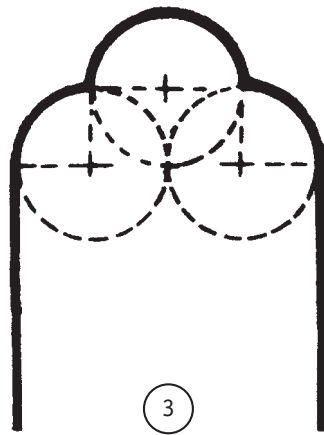
Arches



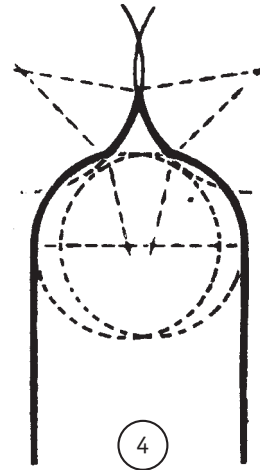
1



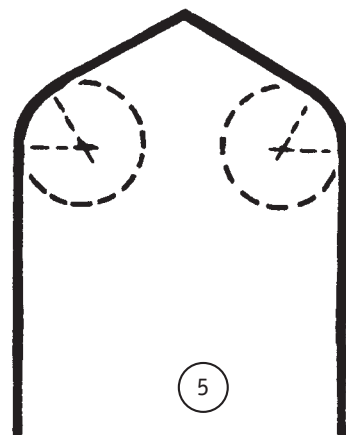
2



3



4



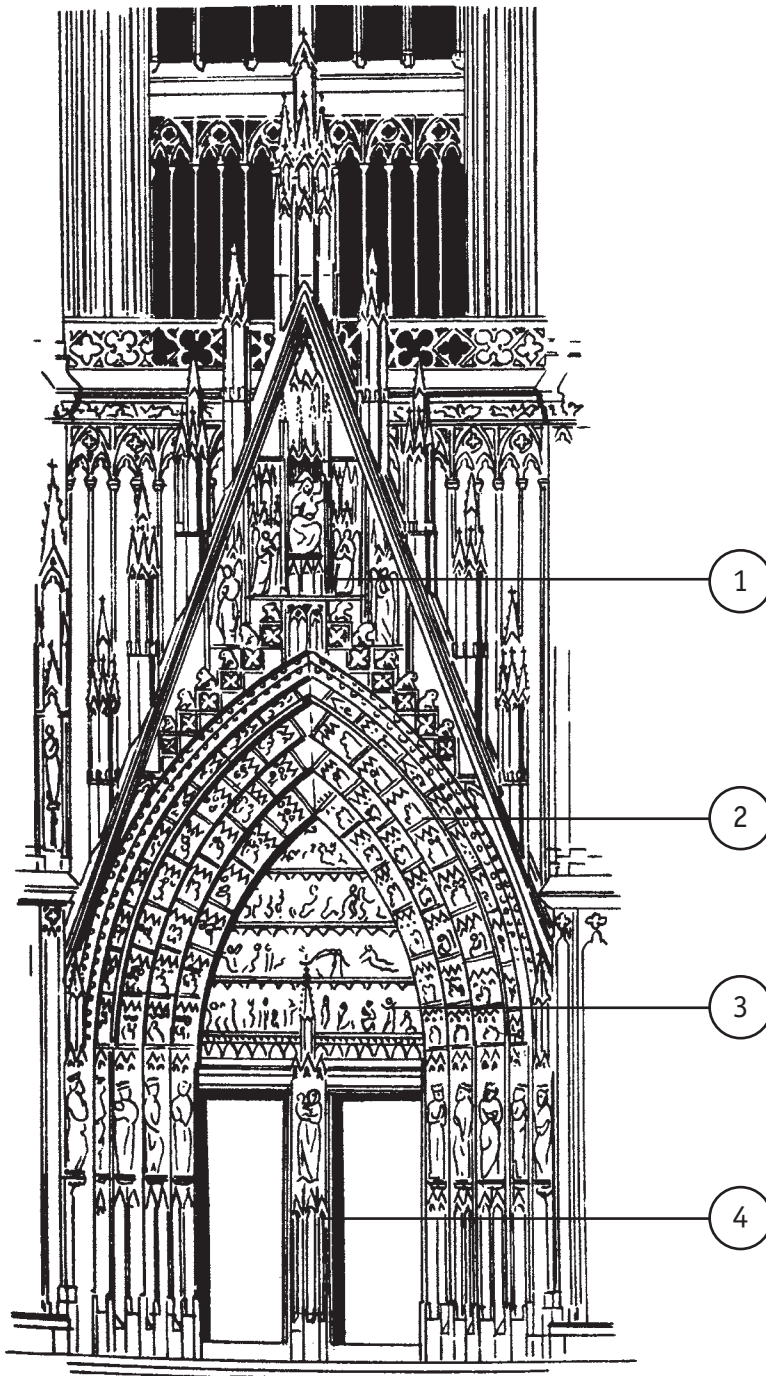
5

1. rondboog
2. spitsboog
3. klaverblad- of driepasboog
4. ezelsrugboog
5. tudorboog

- a. ogee / ogive / ogival arch
- b. pointed/Gothic arch
- c. Tudor arch
- d. round trefoil arch
- e. round/Romanesque arch

Extra : Other types of arches are :

- basket arch ("korfbog")
- flamboyant arch ("flamboyante boog")
- horseshoe arch ("hoefijzerboog")
- rampant arch ("klimmende" of "stijgende boog")
- etc.

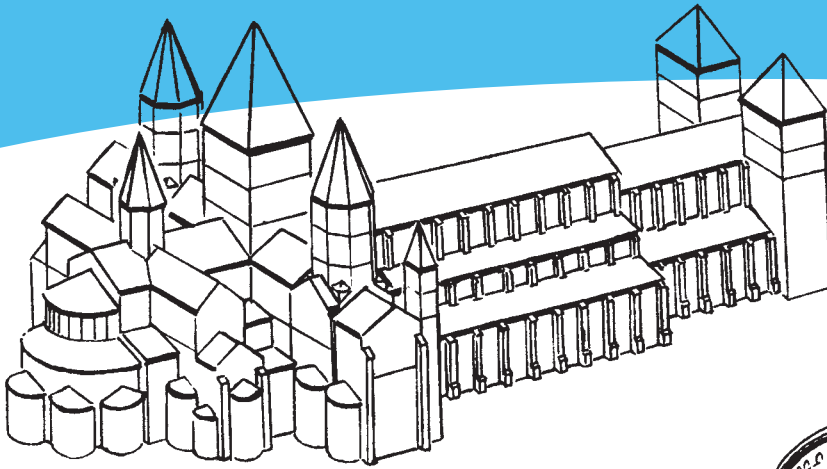


1. wimberg
2. archivolt
3. timpaan
4. middenpijler

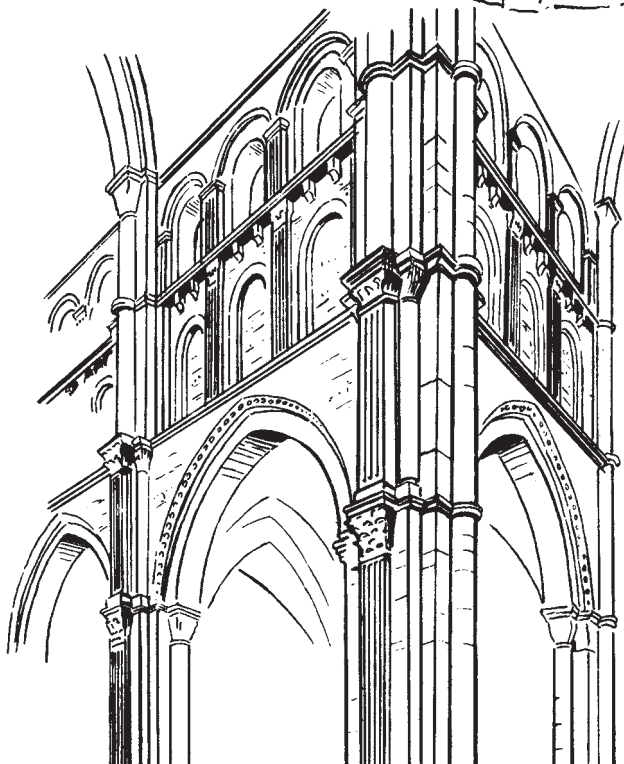
- a. trumeau
- b. Gothic gable, canopy
- c. archivolt
- d. tympanum, tympane

Recapitulation

Mention and indicate 20 architectural items or elements.



Compare your results with fellow students.



Same exercise. Mention and indicate 10 architectural elements.

Sources

- Michelin Green Guide, *Belgium / Grand Duchy of Luxembourg*, Watford: Michelin Travel Publications, 2004 (ABC of Architecture: p. 66-67)
- Glossary of Medieval Art and Architecture, <http://www.pitt.edu/medart/menuglossary>
- Lexicon of Architectural Terms, <http://titan.iwu.edu/calahan/glossaire-e-html>

3. A Short History of Western monasticism

The Monastic Orders

A monk, as the word's Greek root suggests (*monos*, alone), is a solitary figure, withdrawn from the world and from everything 'secular'. The **first monastic experiments** were conducted in the early 4th C in the Orient, notably in Egypt. Very soon two different types of monastic life coexisted, one called 'eremitic' (from *eremos*, desert) and the other labelled 'cenobitic' (from *koinos* and *bios*, life in common). An eremitic monk – or hermit – lived in the desert, in complete solitude and total asceticism, alone with God, yet also alone with the temptations of mind and body. Since not all monks were capable of joining this spiritual elite, and because other Christian values were worth cultivating, Pachomius (one of the true founders of Eastern monasticism) instituted the principles of cenobitic life: monks were expected to live in a community, to submit to a set of regulations (or 'rule') and to the hierarchical and spiritual authority of an abbot (a term derived from the Aramaic word *abba*, father).

The 4th and 5th centuries spawned many monastic experiments in East and West, notably conducted by Jerome, Augustine of Hippo in North Africa, Martin of Tours, Cassian of Provence, etc. In the East, however, one figure surpassed all others in the resonance his rule had on Greek and Slavic monasticism in the Middle Ages – Basil of Caesarea. In the West, it was **Benedict of Nursia** who received the lofty title of 'father of Western Monasticism'. He apparently lived between 490 and 560, and founded his main monastery, Monte Cassino, around 530. (Hence, St Benedict of Monte Cassino.)

The Rule of St Benedict was a book of precepts written for monks living in community under the authority of an abbot. The spirit of this rule is summed up in the motto of the Benedictine Confederation : *pax*, peace, and the traditional *ora et labora*, pray and work. The special qualities of the Benedictine Rule were fraternal obedience and charity, disciplinary moderation and realism.

Initially, monks often adopted a composite constitution by combining various customs and the Benedictine Rule complemented other rules like the **Rule of St Columbanus**. Columbanus/Columba represented the other path of Western monasticism, which originated in Ireland and was rooted in Celtic Christianity.

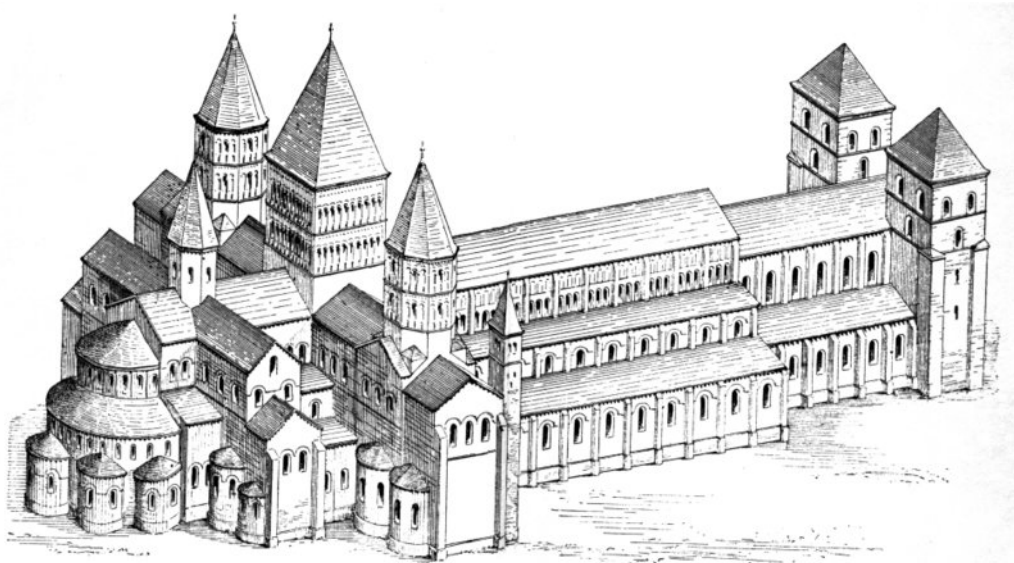
It is worth noting that Columbanus' Rule stressed corporal punishment and penitence; there was a real attachment to the cenobitic life, but the rule of strict obedience and subordination to the abbot was more important than horizontal relationships to other monks.

In the Dark Ages Christianity was flourishing in the Celtic society of Ireland. Christians had come to Ireland from Europe to spread the word of God and, since Ireland was a long way from the rest of the Roman Empire and Europe, they developed their own way of doing things. Celtic Christians loved books and learning and their monasteries produced beautiful writings like the famous 'Book of Kells'. They also believed in 'pilgrimage for the love of God'. So, **Celtic monks** left their monasteries and travelled far and wide to spread the Christian faith in Ireland, Scotland, Wales, Northern England and Europe – even going as far as Iceland and Kiev in Russia. They started monasteries like those at Iona and Lindisfarne. Celtic missionary monks included St Patrick, St David, St Columba, St Aiden and St Kentigern. The Celtic and Roman Churches became one at a meeting of Christian leaders held at Whitby in AD 664.

In the 7th and 8th C most monastic houses had adopted a mixed Columbano-Benedictine Rule and it wasn't until the 9th C that the **Benedictine Rule triumphed** over all others, playing an exclusive role in Western monasticism. The equilibrium between the two rules was broken in favour of the Benedictine Rule by two events. First, Anglo-Saxon monks, led by Saint Boniface (the 'Apostle of Germany') converted Germany and founded the powerful abbey at Fulda. They followed the Benedictine Rule since southern England had been evangelized on the orders of Pope Gregory the Great by Benedictines from the abbey of St Andrea in Rome with their prior Augustine. A second reason was that the Anglo-Saxon authorities favoured the Anglo-Saxon clergy from Augustine's houses over Celtic monks who had spread across northern Britain and Ireland. The second important event took

place at the beginning of the 9th C. During the synods of 816, 817 and 819, held at Aachen in the reign of Louis the Pious, bishops and abbots officially decided that all monks in the new 'Holy Roman Empire' should follow the same Benedictine system. One man, **Benedict of Aniane**, founder of the monastery at Aniane and a close and faithful adviser of the Frankish king, used all his influence to have the Benedictine model adopted. Finally, now, at the beginning of the 9th C the era of Benedictine unity was born – *una regula, una consuetudo*, one rule, one custom.

The broad acceptance of the Benedictine Rule and the founding of Benedictine houses, generated by the monastic charters of 816-817, should not, however, be misconstrued. The political instability of the Carolingian empire and the shock of invasions (Norsemen from the west, Hungarians from the east, Saracens from the south) led to secular and ecclesiastic interference, to worldly intrusion, to a slackening of discipline, and to an instability little suited to the monastic life envisaged by the two Benedicts. That is why it seemed necessary, as early as the 10th C, to reinvigorate Benedictine establishments. History has primarily credited this revival to the monastery of **Cluny**. The reforming efforts of the Cluniac abbots enabled them to build an entire network of close ties to monasteries all across Europe. A Cluniac abbot travelled constantly, working to have his rule and customs adopted by the monasteries he visited. Independent of both the temporal power of lords and the ecclesiastic jurisdiction of bishops, Cluny answered directly to Rome. The Cluniac family was organized hierarchically around the motherhouse of Cluny itself; first came priories, which had no abbot at their head and depended directly on the mother house; then there were daughter houses, whose abbots were subject to the centralized authority of the 'arch-abbot' of Cluny; finally, there were affiliated abbeys, which adopted the Cluniac reform but maintained their autonomy. So, at the dawn of the 12th C, Western monasticism was generally Benedictine or Benedictine-like and could be divided into two broad groups – Cluniac and non-Cluniac. (It should not be forgotten that the majority of Benedictine monasteries were not part of the Cluny system)



2. CLUNY (NO).

In the late 11th C there nevertheless arose a movement within the Benedictine family that would spread and take root everywhere, directly competing with Cluny and finally surpassing Cluniac establishments in number and influence, the **Cistercians**. The movement began in Cîteaux, near Dijon, where the Benedictine abbot Robert de Molesne founded a new monastery in 1098. Yet it was thanks to **Bernard of Clairvaux** – Saint Bernard (1090 – 1153) – that the Cistercian movement really took off. Cistercians (i.e. from Cîteaux) were Benedictine reformers who advocated a stricter reading of Saint Benedict. Like all medieval Christian reforms, the Cistercian reform viewed itself as a return to roots, to original purity. Cistercians felt that Cluny had undermined the Benedictine Rule. Cluniac monks lived in a more worldly way, like feudal lords, completely taken up with the divine liturgy (they were granted special dispensations in terms of work and food as compensation for singing all those long and wonderful services and for saying the many private masses held several times a day on various altars).

Cistercians sought to re-establish a more harmonious balance between Benedict's two mainstays of monastic life : ora, prayer, et labora, manual labour. Austerity, asceticism, and isolation were their principle guidelines. That explains the founding of vast, isolated monastic estates that rendered the monks almost completely self-sufficient. 'Lay-brothers', who did not observe the Rule, lived with the 'choir-monks' in order to perform certain tasks and to enable the latter (who were also priests) to perform the holy service. Cistercians wore a white habit, as distinct from the black habit worn by Cluniacs and all other Benedictines. Later, after the 'golden twelfth century' the Order of Cîteaux experienced a decline and there was a debate among the monks on the right interpretation of the Cistercian ideal. Two groups emerged : those who supported a more moderate monastic lifestyle, and those who pressed for strictness and penitence (or 'strict observance'). In the 17th C, Abbot de Rancé first reformed his own monastery La Trappe. Gradually, many monasteries of the Order adopted the reform until finally a new order arose, the Order of the Cistercians of Strict Observance, generally called **Trappists**. This was alongside the Order of Cistercians of Ordinary Observance.

Yet even prior to Cîteaux, there were other movements who advocated complete isolation from the world but in the end only one other movement could be said to have devised a totally new constitution, the **Carthusians**, i.e. from Chartreuse. The rule drawn up by Guigo I, who was prior from 1109 to 1136, reflects the aspirations of the order's founder, **Saint Bruno of Cologne**, who – together with six companions – founded a hermitage in 1084 in the rugged hills of La Grande Chartreuse in south-eastern France. Solitude and contemplation dominated the Carthusian lifestyle. The solitude was not only that of a monastery lost in the wilderness of an Alpine valley, but also that of an individual cell within the monastery. Monks wore white habits and beards in imitation of the earliest hermits.

Other Orders

At the same time a new influence was at work upon western monasticism. Hitherto, the monastic ideal had been essentially contemplative. Certainly, the monks had undertaken active work of many kinds, but always as a kind of accident, or to meet some immediate necessity, not as a primary object of their institute. Now, however, **religious foundations of an active type** began to be instituted :

a. The **military orders** were Catholic brotherhoods of knights that were founded for crusading, i.e. propagating and/or defending the faith (originally Catholic or Orthodox, after the reformation sometimes Protestant), either in the Holy Land or against Islam (Reconquista) or pagans (mainly Baltic region) in Europe. Many of them became secularized later. The most famous of these were :

- the Poor Knights of Christ and the Temple of Solomon (or Knights Templar, or Templars)
- the Order of the Hospital of St John (of Jerusalem) (or Hospitallers)
- the Teutonic Knights of the Hospital of St Mary of Jerusalem (or Teutonic Knights)

b. The **orders of canons** arose in the Carolingian Empire and followed the canonical Rule of Aachen, adopted at the synod of 816. Canons were not monks. In the Carolingian meaning of the word a canon was a cleric and a priest (or exceptionally, deacon) who lived with other priests alongside a large church. Together, these priests formed a chapter of canons, specified as a cathedral chapter when it was attached to a bishop's church (cathedral). They lived a communal life but there were major differences with monasticism : since a canon had taken no vow of poverty, he could receive the income from his own property or that of the community (houses, lands, fees for saying masses) in the form of a stipend known as a prebend. Life was also less ascetic (canons could notably eat meat), and much more time was devoted to offering hospitality and performing works of mercy and charity in local society. Gradually, however, the original Carolingian institution was weakened by the social disturbances of the late 10th and 11th C and by the behaviour of the canons themselves. Canons abandoned dormitories and refectories for small individual dwellings within the cloistered enclosure (originally a dispensation only for those who were old and ill). The significant appeal of the prebend (which meant that canons were almost exclusively recruited from the ranks of the nobility), plus numerous incidents of concubinage and the abandonment of all church services spurred a reform. Thus, the orders of the **canons regular** left the Aachen rule in its lax

form to the canons secular, turned to a document called the **Rule of St Augustine** and became widespread in the 11th C. At its height the Canonical Order claimed thousands of houses in Europe, most of which were quite small and resolutely defended their autonomy. Later, the name **Augustinian** (or Austin) **Canons** was commonly used instead of Canons Regular (although St Augustine didn't actually found the order). Here are some of these orders and congregations :

- the Augustinian (or Austin) Canons (or Augustinians)
- the Premonstratensian Canons (or Premonstratensians, or Norbertines, or also White Canons in Great Britain)
- the Gilbertines
- the Congregation of St Nicholas and St Bernard of Mont Joux (Great St Bernard, Switzerl.)
- the Congregation of St Maurice of Agaunum (Canton Valais, Switzerl.)

c. Originally the various **orders of friars**, which emerged in the early 13th C, could possess no fixed revenues and lived upon the voluntary offerings of the faithful. Hence their name of **mendicants**. This feature, however, became considerably modified since the Council of Trent (1545) granted all the mendicant orders – the Friars Minor and Capuchins alone excepted – the liberty of corporate possession. They are usually divided into two classes :

1. the four great mendicant orders mentioned by the Second Council of Lyons :
 - the Friars Minor, or Minors, or Franciscans
 - the Friars Preachers, or Preachers, or Dominicans
 - the Carmelite Friars, or Carmelites, or White Friars (this order is divided into two sections, the Calced and Discalced Carmelites)
 - the Austin Friars, or Augustinians, or Hermits of St Augustine
2. The so-styled lesser orders, of which the following are best-known :
 - the Capuchins (a different branch of the Franciscan Order), founded in 1525
 - the Discalced Carmelites, 1568

The Society of Jesus (or **Jesuits**), founded by St Ignatius Loyola in 1540, ranks among religious institutes as a mendicant order of clerics regular. (Indeed, it is sometimes remarked that the Jesuits, though mendicants in the strict sense of the word – following a religious rule and relying on alms for their support – are not classed as mendicants or friars but as clerics regular, since they devoted themselves, even more than the friars, to the exercise of the sacred ministry.)

Sources :

- V., R., Mouilleron, V. *Cloisters of Europe*, New York: Viking Studio, 2001
- <http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/10472a.htm> (Western Monasticism)

Tip :

<http://www.request.org.uk/main/history/celts/monks01.htm> (Celtic monks and missionaries)

4. Glossarium

aanslag(lijst)	stop
aantrede	tread
arcadegalerij met uitstek	overhanging arcade
archivolt	archivolt
askapel	axial chapel
balkon	balcony
baluster	baluster, banister
basement	door base
binnenplaats met waterput	inner-court with (draw-) well
borstwering	breastwork, parapet
bovendorpel (bij deur ook kalf)	lintel
bovenlicht	skylight, fanlight
brandglasraam	stained glass window
buitenste voorburcht	outer gate
bundelpijler	bundle pier
cartouche	cartouche
cartouche uit stucwerk	stucco cartouche
console	console, corbel
Corinthische muurpijler	Corinthean pilaster
dakruiter	roof turret, ridge turret
deuropening	doorway
deurpaneel	door panel
donjon	keep, donjon, tower house
doorlopende vensterstijlen	continuous row of jambs
drempel	sill, threshold
driehoekig fronton	triangular (segment) pediment / frontispiece
dubbele luchtboog	(double) flying buttress
dwarsbalk	crossbeam, transom, rails
dwarsbeuk	transept
dwingel (toegangsweg tussen twee ringmuren)	neck
ezelsrugboog	ogee arch
fiaal of pinakel	pinnacle
fries	freeze
fronton	frontispiece
frontonvenster	pediment window
galerij	gallery
gewelfrib	vault rib
glas in lood	stained glass
gordelboog	transverse arch
graatgewelf	groined vault
haardplaat/achterwand	hearth plate
handlijst	handrail
hoofdbaluster, trappaal	principal, main baluster
hoofdpoort met ophaalbrug	gate house with drawbridge
hoogkoor of priesterkoor	high choir/chancel (also: presbytery or sanctuary)
hordijs	clerestory
ingang tot de bergvrede	entrance to keep, donjon
Ionische muurpijler	Ionic pilaster
jambage/rechtstand/penant	jamb(e)

kanteel	battlement, crenel, crenelle
kapel	chapel
kepel	helm
keukens	kitchens
klaverblad- of driepasboog	round trefoil arch
klokkentoren (zonder torenspits)	bell tower (without spire)
kloostergewelf	cloistered vault
koor	choir, chancel
kooromgang of deambulatorium	ambulatory, choir/chancel aisle
kordonband	string course, band course
kraagsteen	corbel, bracket
kraagsteen, console	console
kroonlijst (bovenlijst) druiplijst	drip moulding
kroonlijst (overkragende of uitkragende)	corona
kroonlijst met standbeeld, ruitersstandbeeld	cornice, equestrian statue
kruisarm	projecting transept; north transept or south transept
kruisbeuk of viering	(transept) crossing
kruisribgewelf vierdelig	four-part rib/ribbed vault
kruisribgewelf zesdelig	six-part rib/ribbed vault
kruisvenster	cross window
krulgevel	scroll gable
latei	lintel
lessenaarsdak	pent roof
lichtbeuk (bestaande uit bovenlichten)	clerestory/clearstory (composed of clerestory windows)
liseen	liserne
luchtboog	flying buttress, arc boutant
luchtboogstoel	pier of a flying buttress, abutment
luik	shutter
maaswerk of tracering	tracery
machicoulis (werpgat)	machicoulis, machicolation
mansardedak	mansard
mantel	mantel
merlon, merloen (muur tussen kantelen en schietgaten)	merlon
mezenkouw = machicoulis (ook werpgat)	machicoulis, machicolation, brattice
middenbeuk, schip	nave
middenpijler	trumeau
middenstijl	mullion
middenwal	bridge
moordgat	arrow loop
muuranker	cramp iron, brace
muurtoren	wall tower
muurtoren met open achterzijde	open (semicircular) tower / tower with open gorge
narthex	narthex
netgewelf	net vault
obelisk	obelisk
oeil-de-boeuf	bull's eye, oculus
onderdorpel	window sill, ledge
open weergang op ringmuur (dwingel)	ward
overdekte weergang	wall walk, allure, rampart walk
pijler	pillar, pilaster
pinakel	pinnacle

poorttoren met ophaalbrug	gate with drawbridge
portaal	portal
poterne (uitvalspoortje)	postern, sally port
privaat	latrine
puiraam (met kleine ruitjes)	lites
puntgevel	pointed gable
raam/kozijn/venster-, lichtkozijn	window (-frame)
radvenster	wheel window
rechtstand, penant	stile
regel (bintbalk)	rail
rondbogig tongewelf	(round) barrel/tunnel vault
rondvenster	circular/oculus window
rondboog	round arch
rondboogfronton (ook segmentvormig fronton)	round arched frontispiece, segment frontispiece
rondboogvenster	round arched window
roosvenster	rose window
ruimte voor katrollen van ophaalbrug	pulley slot
rustica, bossage	bossage
schalk	shaft
scharnier	hinge
schietgat	slit, loophole
schildboog of muraalboog	wall arch
schilddak	hip(ped) roof
schildmuur	chemise, curtain wall
sierlijst	ornament, moulding
slaper (omgekeerde console)	sleeper
slingers, festoenen	festoon, swag
(slot)brug _ophaalbrug	liftbridge, drawbridge
slotgracht, vest	castle- moat
sluitsteen, sleutelsteen	keystone
smidse	forge, smithy
snijwerk	carved work, carving, fretwork
sokkel	socle, plinth
spietoren	tourelle (with candle-snuffer roof)
spitsbogig tongewelf	pointed/Gothic barrel/tunnel vault
spitsboog	pointed/Gothic arch
spitsboogarcade	pointed/Gothic (arch) arcade
spitsboogvenster/lancetvenster	lancet window
stallingen	stables
stergewelf	star vault
steunbeer	buttress
steunboog of luchtboog	flying buttress
stijl	jamb / stanchion, upright
stootbord	riser
straalkapel	apsidal/absidal chapel, apse chapel, radiating chapel
tablet	mantel shelf
tentdak	pavilion roof
timpaan	tympanum, tympane
trapboom, trapwang	head
trapgevel	(crow-) step(ped) gable
trapneus, wel	nosing

travee	bay
tribune	gallery
triforium	triforium
tudorboog	Tudor arch
tweede poort met valhek	portcullis
tweede, binnenste voorburcht	inner gate
tweelicht(venster)	coupled window
vak	panel
venster met maaswerk en roeden	tracery window
venster-, sierlijst	ornamental/decorative moulding or border
vensterkozijnen van zuiltjes	column framed window
vensterkruis	window cross
vensters met fronton	frontispiece window
a. driehoekig fronton	triangular frontispiece
b. segmentvormig fronton/rondboogfronton	segment frontispiece, round arched frontispiece
c. verkropt driehoekig fronton	angulated triangular frontispiece
d. gebroken driehoekig fronton	broken triangular frontispiece
e. gebroken segmentvormig fronton	broken segment frontispiece
versterkte poort	barbican, defended gateway
waaiergewelf	fan vault
waaierozetten	rosetta, patera
waterspuwer (voor de afvoer van regenwater)	gargoyle
wimberg	Gothic gable, canopy
wolfsdak	half-hipped roof
woongebouw voor de knechten	servants' lodging
woongebouw voor schildknappen	squires' lodging
zaagtanddak	shed roof
zaalbouw	castle hall
zadeldak	saddleback roof
zijbeuk	aisle
zijkapel	side chapel
zijportaal	side portal, north portal or south portal
zuil – basement	base
zuil – impost	impost
zuil – kapiteel	capital
zuil – schacht	shaft
zuil – sokkel	pedestal, base

